

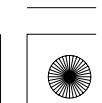
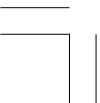


This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all versions. Therefore, you may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.
Illustrations of vehicles with diesel engine are titled Diesel model.





Introduction

Congratulations! Your selection was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several other booklets explain the warranties that protect your new vehicle. Read the Service Book/warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the schedules given in this manual or the separate service information booklet helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

Best wishes and happy motoring.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

(On German type)

1. Mounting the front licence plate:
Mount the front licence plate to the provided holder taking care that the upper edge of the licence plate does not project above the upper surface of the bumper.
2. Mounting the rear licence plate:
Mount the rear licence plate to the back of the vehicle so that its lower edge is flush with the lower end of the surface provided for mounting.



Introduction

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

Vehicle data is also gathered including crash avoidance information, such as steering operation, brake operation, and vehicle speed, etc.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

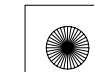
However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.



Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.






A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** — on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** — preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** — such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** — such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** — how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information — please read it carefully.





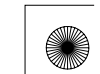
Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on paved roads. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a high centre of gravity. This means your vehicle can tip or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read “Driving Guidelines” on page 372 of this manual and the *Off-road Guidelines* section on page 421 . Failure to operate this vehicle correctly might result in loss of control or an accident.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e.g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.





Contents

Turn to the beginning of each section for a complete list of subjects.

Your Vehicle at a Glance..... 2

Driver and Passenger Safety..... 9

Important information about the proper use and care of your vehicle's seat belts, an overview of the supplemental restraint system, and valuable information on how to protect children with child restraints.

Instruments and Controls 79

Explains the purpose of each instrument panel indicator, message and symbol on the multi-information display, gauge, and how to use the controls on the dashboard and steering column.

Features..... 225

How to operate the heating and air conditioning system/climate control system, the audio system, and other convenience features.

Before Driving 351

What fuel to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.

Driving..... 371

The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park; plus what you need to know if you're planning to tow a trailer.

Maintenance 425

The maintenance schedule shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer. There is also a list of things to check and instructions on how to check them.

Appearance Care 503

Tips on cleaning and protecting your vehicle.

Taking Care of the Unexpected 511

This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and details how to handle them.

Technical Information..... 565

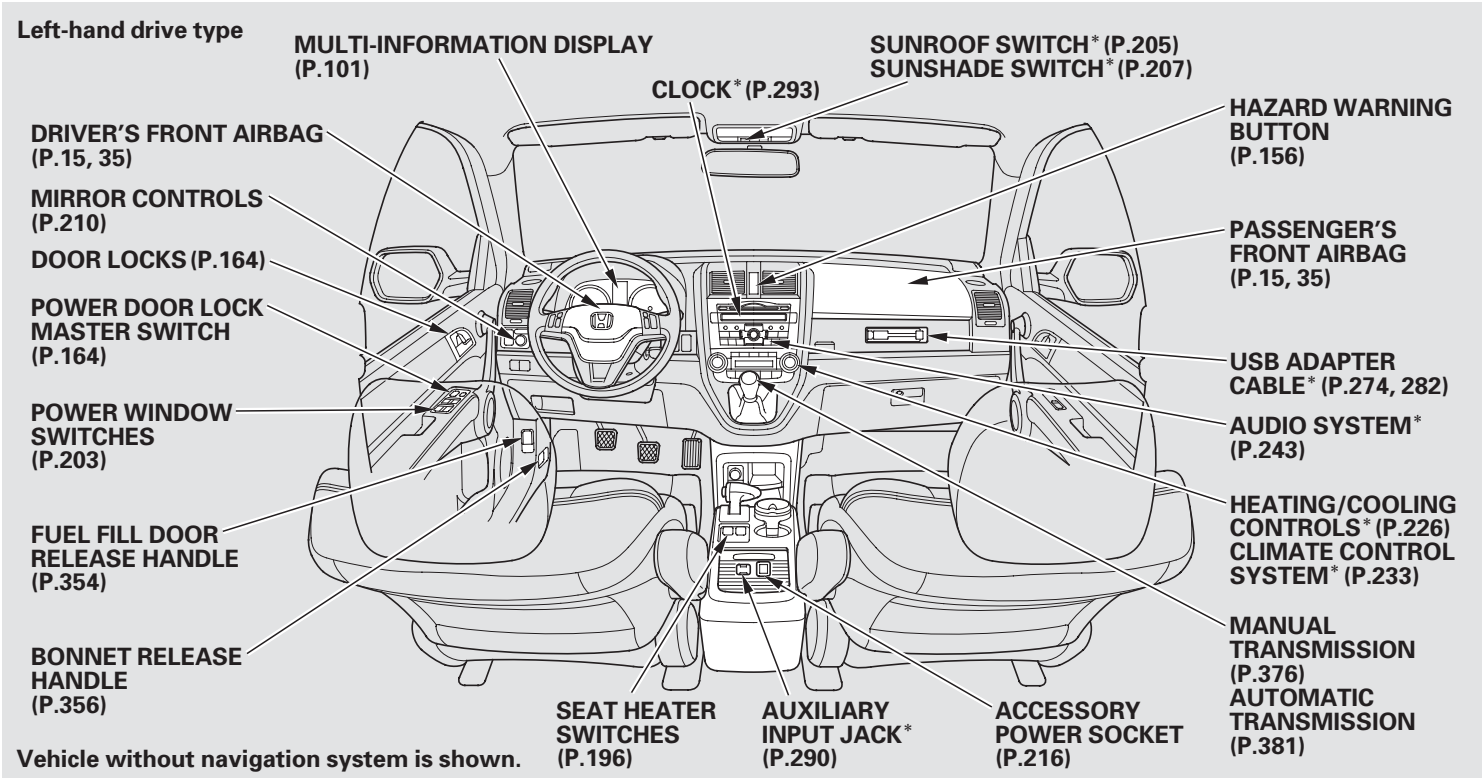
ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.

Index 581

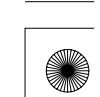




Your Vehicle at a Glance



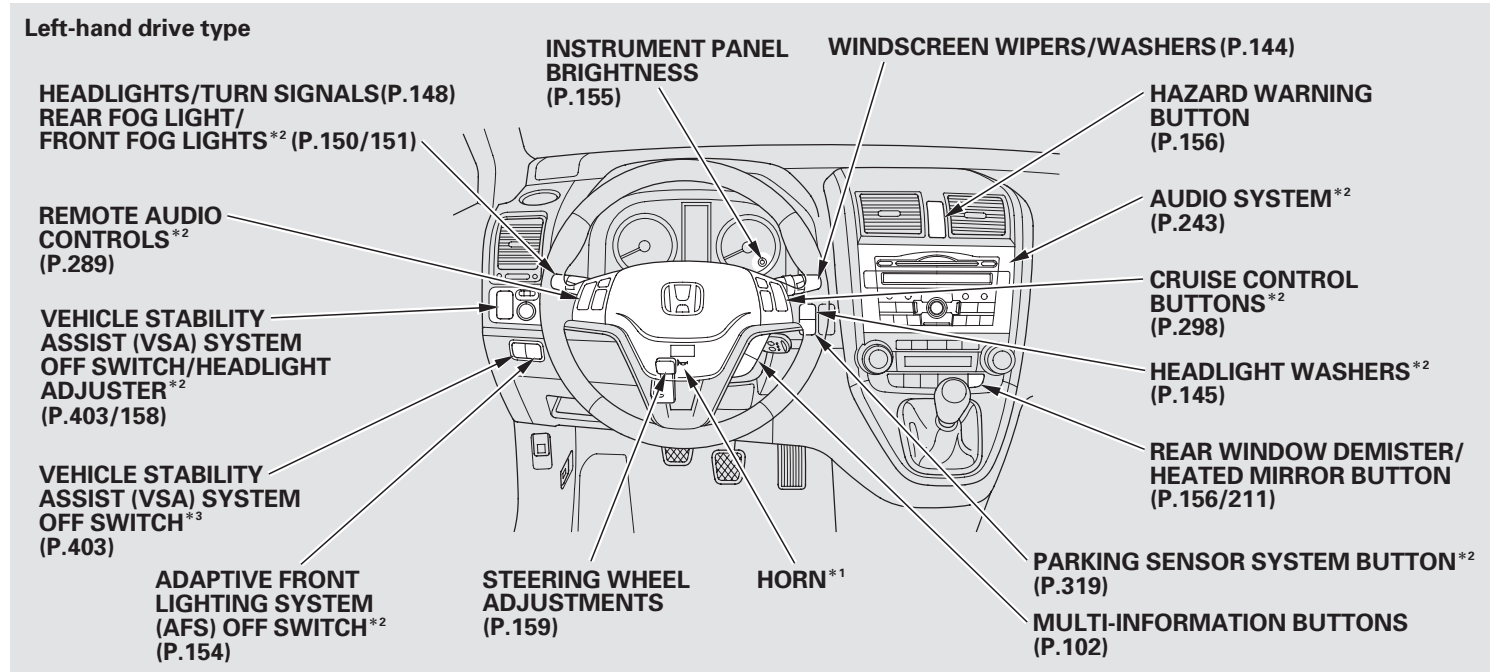
* : If equipped





Your Vehicle at a Glance

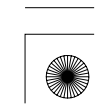
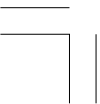
On vehicles without navigation system



* 1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

* 2 : If equipped

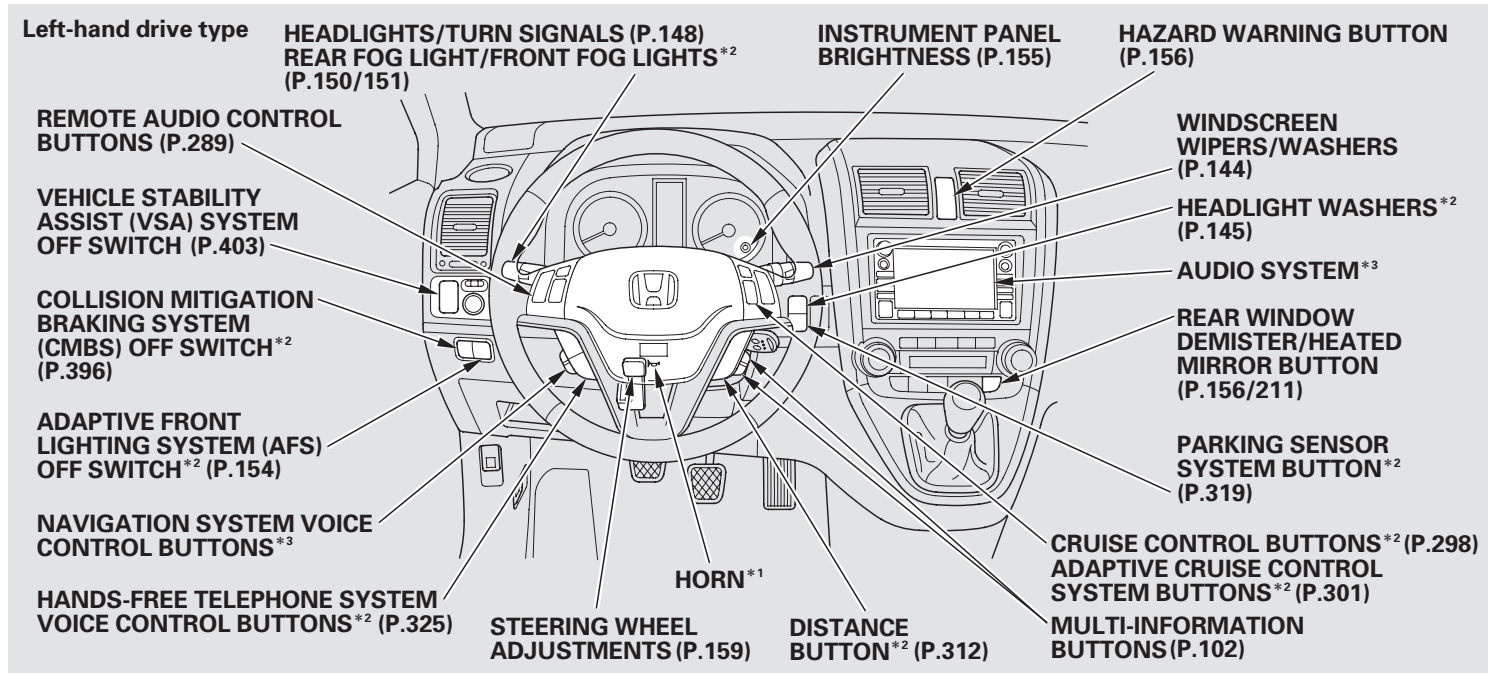
* 3 : On vehicles with headlight adjuster





Your Vehicle at a Glance

On vehicles with navigation system



* 1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

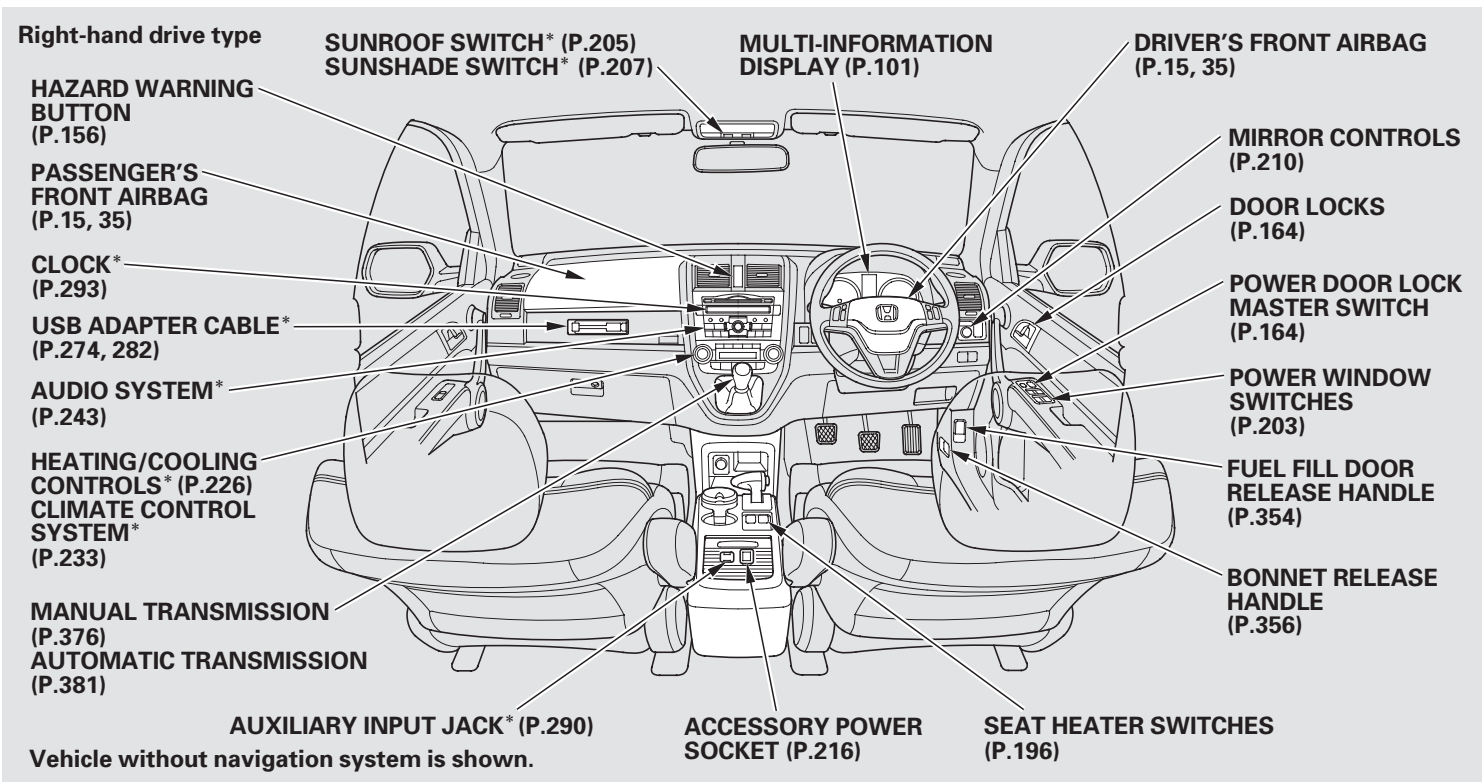
* 2 : If equipped

* 3 : Refer to the navigation system manual.

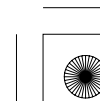
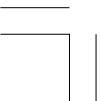




Your Vehicle at a Glance



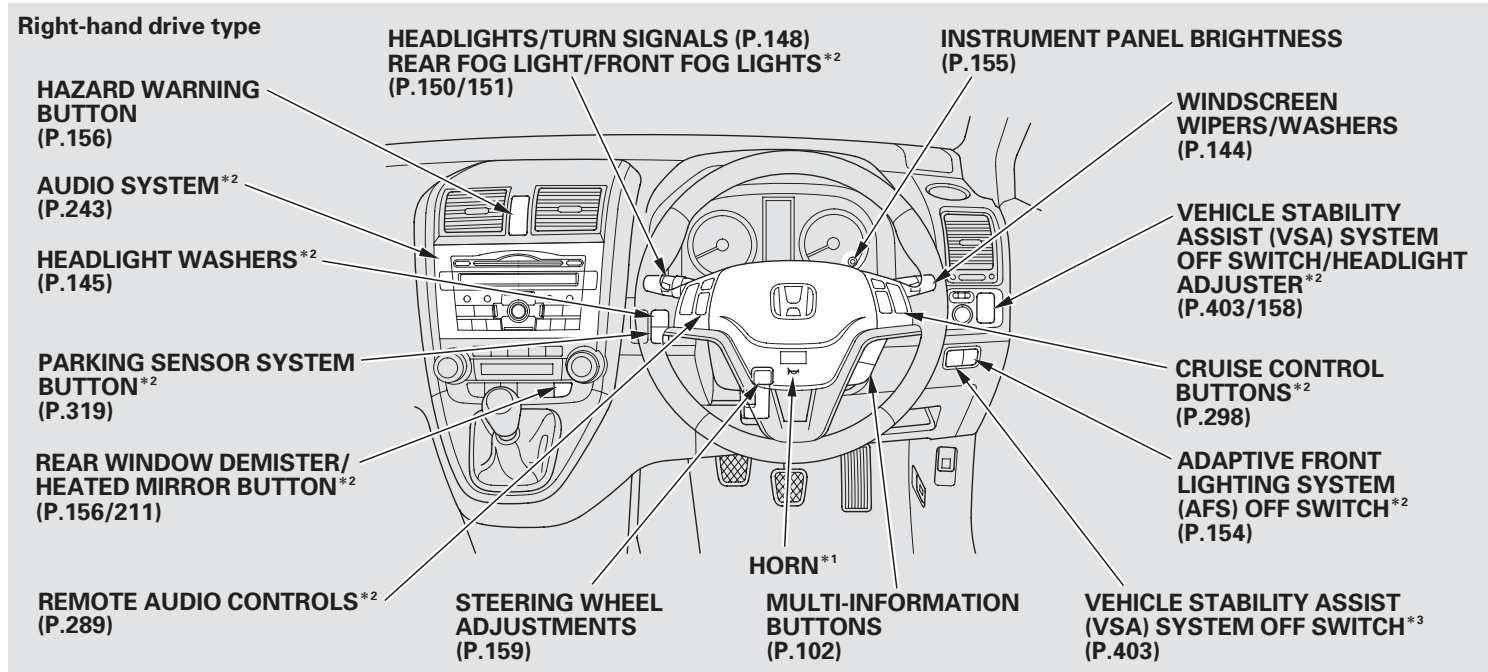
* : If equipped





Your Vehicle at a Glance

On vehicles without navigation system



* 1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

* 2 : If equipped

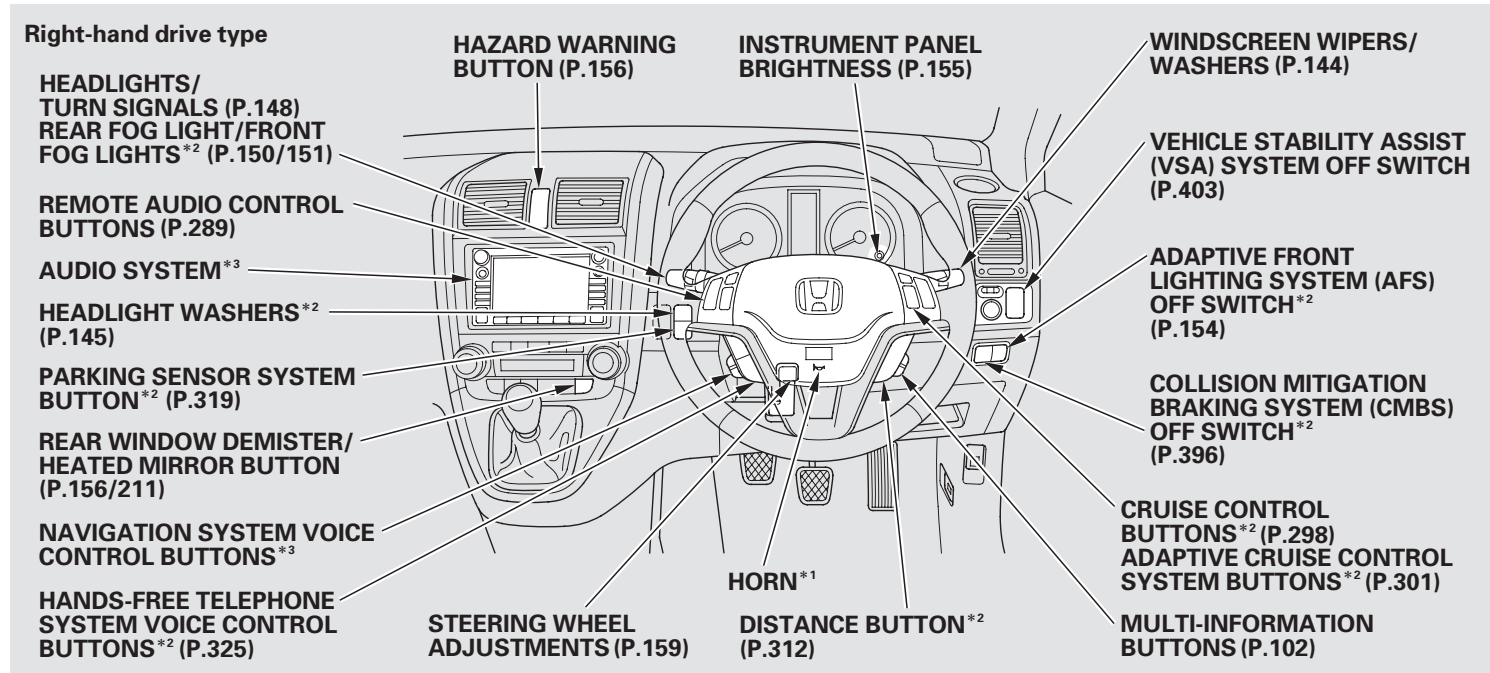
* 3 : On vehicles with headlight adjuster





Your Vehicle at a Glance

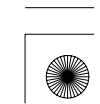
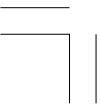
On vehicles with navigation system



* 1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

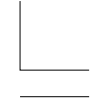
* 2 : If equipped

* 3 : Refer to the navigation system manual.

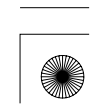
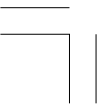




10/09/29 19:29:52 42SWAF30_013



8





Driver and Passenger Safety

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts. It explains how your airbags work. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions	10
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	12
Seat Belts	13
Airbags	15
Protecting Adults and Teens.....	17
1. Close the Doors	17
2. Adjust the Front Seats	18
3. Adjust the Seat-Backs	19
4. Adjust the Head Restraints ...	20
5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts	21
6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position	23
Advice for Pregnant Women.....	24
Additional Safety Precautions....	24
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts	26
Seat Belt System Components...	26

Lap/Shoulder Belt	29
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	31
Seat Belt e-pretensioners.....	32
Seat Belt Maintenance	33
Additional Information About Your Airbags	35
Airbag System Components.....	35
How Your Front Airbags Work.....	36
How Your Side Airbags Work....	38
How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	38
How the SRS Indicator Works...	39
Airbag Service	41
Additional Safety Precautions....	41
Protecting Children – General Guidelines.....	42
All Children Must Be Restrained	42
All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat	43
The Passenger's Front Airbag Poses Serious Risks.....	43
The Side Airbag Poses Serious Risks.....	46

If You Must Drive with Several Children	47
If a Child Requires Close Attention	47
Additional Safety Precautions....	47
Protecting Infants and Small Children	49
Protecting Infants	49
Protecting Small Children	51
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	53
Installing a Child Restraint System.....	55
Child Restraint System for EU Countries	56
With the Lower Anchorages	58
With a Lap/Shoulder Belt	63
With a Tether	68
Protecting Larger Children	71
Checking Seat Belt Fit	72
Using a Booster Seat	72
When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front.....	74
Additional Safety Precautions....	75
Carbon Monoxide Hazard	76
Safety Labels	77





Important Safety Precautions

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The following recommendations are the ones we consider to be the most important.

Always Wear Your Seat Belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly (see page 21).

Restrain All Children

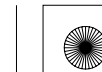
Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat (see pages 42 – 75).

Be Aware of Airbag Hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don't Drink and Drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.





Important Safety Precautions

Pay Appropriate Attention to the Task of Driving Safely

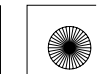
Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert attention away from driving.

Control Your Speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

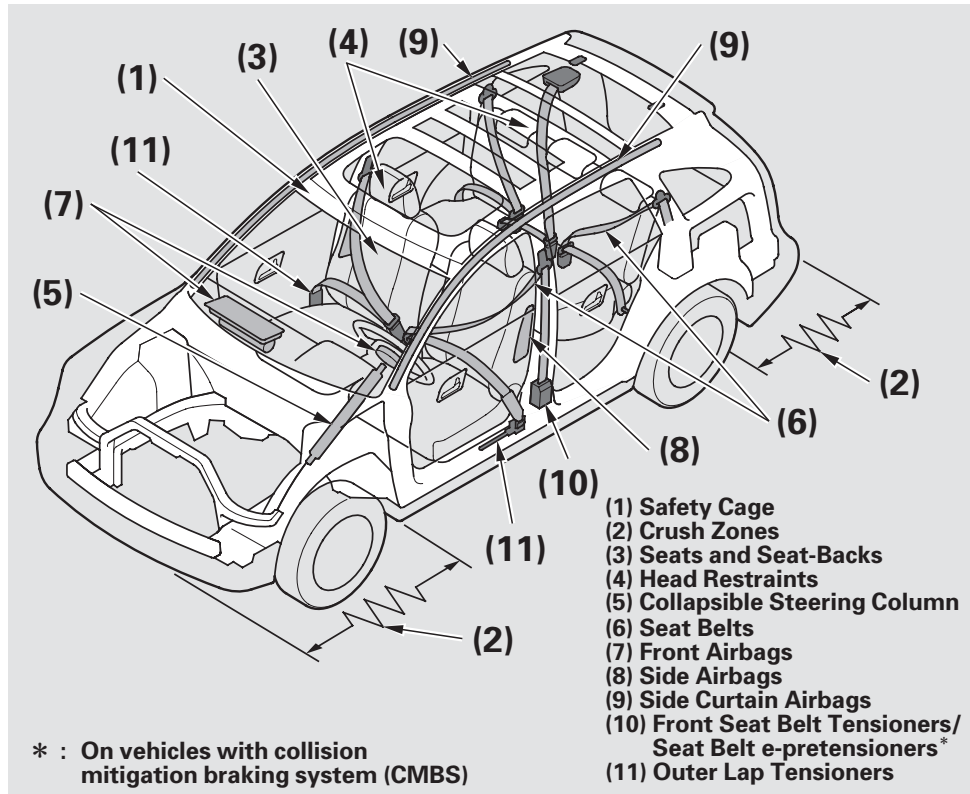
Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see page 429 , and for EU countries and South Africa, see the separate service information booklet that came with your vehicle).





Your Vehicle's Safety Features



Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a crash.

However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these features unless you remain sitting in the correct position and ***always wear your seat belts***. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following pages explain how you can take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.





Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Seat Belts

Your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.

Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

Why Wear Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child restraint systems.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In most European Countries there is a law covering the use of seat belts. Please take time to familiarize yourself with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
 - frontal impacts
 - side impacts
 - rear impacts
 - rollovers
- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

CONTINUED





Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

What You Should Do:

Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

WARNING:

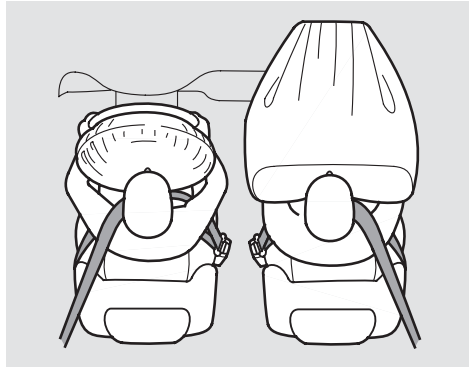
- *Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.*
- *Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.*
- *Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.*
- *Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.*



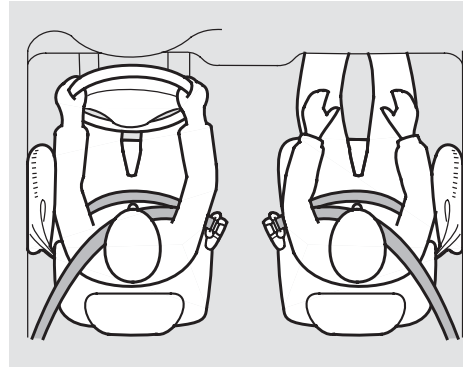


Your Vehicle's Safety Features

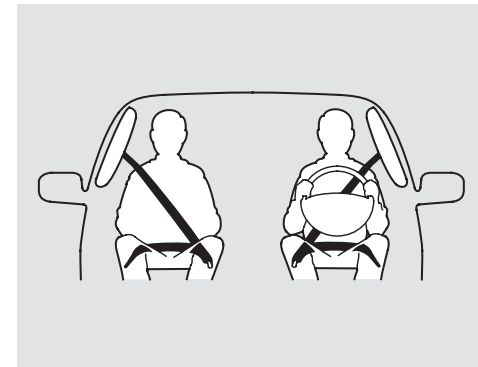
Airbags



Your vehicle has a supplemental restraint system (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 36 for more information on how your front airbags work).

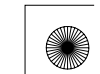


Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 38 for more information on how your side airbags work).



In addition, your vehicle has side curtain airbags to help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and passengers in the outer rear seating positions during a moderate to severe side impact or rollover (see page 38 for more information on how your side curtain airbags work).

CONTINUED





Your Vehicle's Safety Features

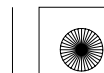
The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- ***Airbags do not replace seat belts.*** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- ***Airbags offer no protection in rear collisions, or minor frontal or side collisions.***
- ***Airbags can pose serious hazards.*** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.





Protecting Adults and Teens

Introduction

The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver, adult passengers, and teenage children who are large enough and mature enough to drive or ride in the front.

See pages 42 – 48 for important guidelines on how to properly protect infants, small children, and larger children who ride in your vehicle.

1. Close the Doors

After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors and the tailgate are closed.

Your vehicle also has a door and tailgate open indicator on the multi-information display to indicate when a specific door or the tailgate is not tightly closed. You will see the appropriate indicator(s) for each condition.

You will also hear a beep when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and each time you open any door or the tailgate with the key in the ON (II) position.



The above illustration shows that all doors and the tailgate are open.

CONTINUED

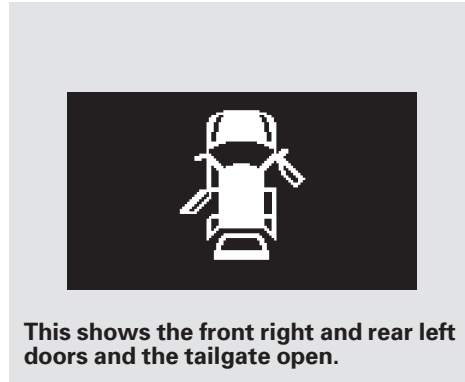




Protecting Adults and Teens



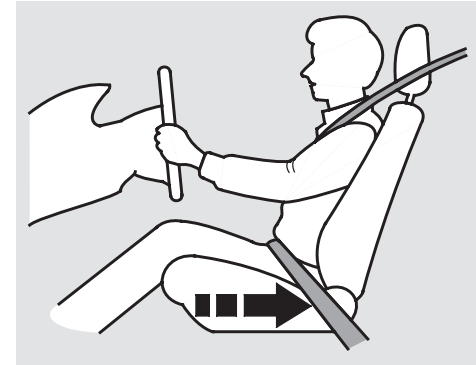
When the tailgate is not tightly closed, this indicator will come on.



This shows the front right and rear left doors and the tailgate open.

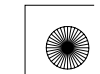
When one or more doors or the tailgate are not tightly closed, the corresponding indicator for each condition will come on.

2. Adjust the Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Have a front passenger adjust their seat as far to the rear as possible.

If you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard, you can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag, or by striking the steering wheel or dashboard.





Protecting Adults and Teens

In addition to adjusting the seat, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, and in and out (see page 159).

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.



⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

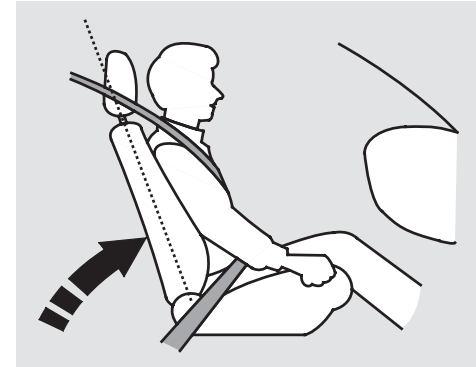
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.

On vehicles with manual adjustable seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

See page 181 for how to adjust a front seat (power adjustment) and page 182 for a manual adjustment.

3. Adjust the Seat-Backs

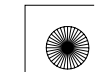


Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

Passengers with adjustable seat-backs should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.



CONTINUED





Protecting Adults and Teens

⚠ WARNING

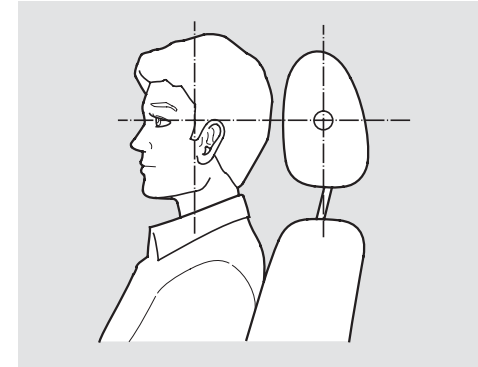
Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

See page 182 for how to adjust the manual adjustable seat-back, and page 181 for the power adjustable seat-back.

4. Adjust the Head Restraints



Adjust the driver's head restraint so the centre of the back of your head rests against the centre of the restraint.

Have passengers adjust their head restraints properly as well. Taller persons should adjust their restraint as high as possible.





Protecting Adults and Teens

When a passenger is seated in the rear seating position, make sure the rear head restraint is adjusted to its highest position.

WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page 185 for how to adjust the head restraints and how the driver's and front passenger's active head restraints work.

5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

The seat belt in the centre position of the back seat can be unlatched and retracted to allow the back seat to be folded up or down. This seat belt should be latched whenever the seat-back is in an upright position. See page 194 for how to unlatch and relatch the seat belt.

CONTINUED





Protecting Adults and Teens



Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

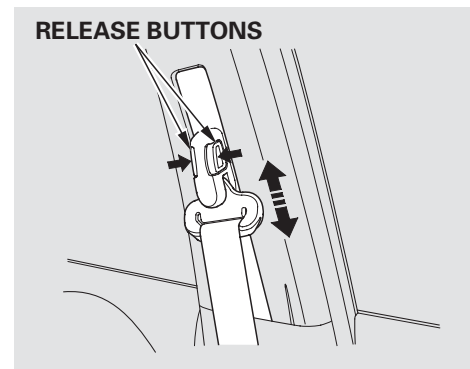
⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.

RELEASE BUTTONS



The front seats have adjustable seat belt anchors. To adjust the height of an anchor, press and hold the release buttons, and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).





Protecting Adults and Teens

Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

If a seat belt does not seem to work as it should, it may not protect the occupant in a crash.

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt. Using a seat belt that is not working properly can result in serious injury or death. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page 26 for additional information about your seat belts and how to take care of them.

6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

If a front passenger leans sideways and his head is in the deployment path of the side airbag, an inflating side airbag can strike the passenger with enough force to very seriously injure him.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.





Protecting Adults and Teens

Advice for Pregnant Women



If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

When driving, remember to sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. When riding as a front passenger, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

This will reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating front airbag.

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

Additional Safety Precautions

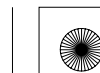
- ***Never let passengers ride in the luggage area or on top of a folded-down back seat.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Passengers should not stand up or change seats while the vehicle is moving.*** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- ***Two people should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.





Protecting Adults and Teens

- **Do not put any accessories on seat belts.** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability of the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.
- **Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.** If your hands or arms are close to an airbag cover, they could be injured if the airbag inflates.
- **Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked “SRS AIRBAG” could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.
- **Do not attach hard objects on or near a door.** If a side airbag or a side curtain airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
- **Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook.** This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbags inflate.
- **Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer.** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.





Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt System Components

Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.

On vehicles with collision mitigation braking system (CMBS), the front seat belts are also equipped with seat belt e-pretensioners.



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.


This system monitors the seat belts in all seating positions.


If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before your seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash. If your seat belt is not fastened before the beeper stops, the indicator will stop flashing but remain on.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator should not come on and the beeper should not sound.

In addition to the seat belt reminder indicator in the instrument panel, you will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” message if you do not fasten the seat belt while driving. This symbol/message remains displayed if you ignore it and do not fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is moving.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message if a front seat passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving. This symbol/message remains displayed if a passenger ignores it and does not fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is moving.





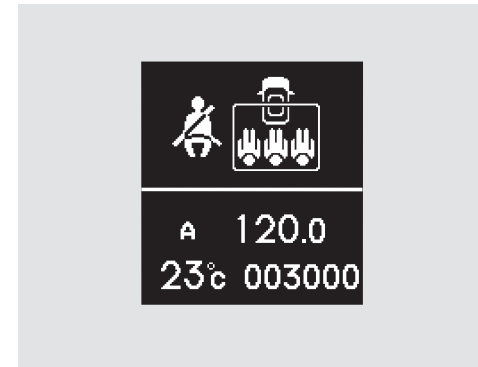
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

The front passenger's seat belt use monitoring system uses the occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat. The system may not work properly under these conditions:

- You place heavy items on the front passenger's seat.
- You place a cushion on the front passenger's seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds when there is no front passenger or there are no objects on the front seat.

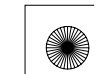
Rear Seat Belt Use Monitor



The seat belt system also monitors the seat belt use of all three rear seating positions according to the activation of each seat belt retractor.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the multi-information display shows the rear seat belt use by pressing the INFO button (i) repeatedly.

CONTINUED



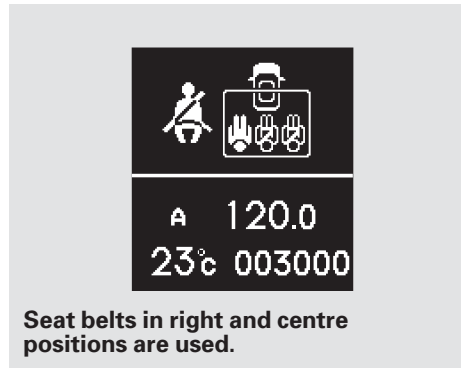


Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

The current display will be interrupted and the rear seat belt monitor will also be displayed on the multi-information display if either rear door is opened and closed, or any of the rear passengers latches their seat belt.

This monitor goes off after about 30 seconds. It will also go off when you change the display by pressing the INFO button (i) on the steering wheel.

The seat belt system detects any seat belt use of all three rear seat seating positions according to the activation of each seat belt retractor.



The system shows you how many rear seat belts are being used and reminds you and your passengers to fasten their seat belts. According to the rear seat belt use (1 through 3), you will see the indicator(s) highlighted on the multi-information display.

⚠ WARNING

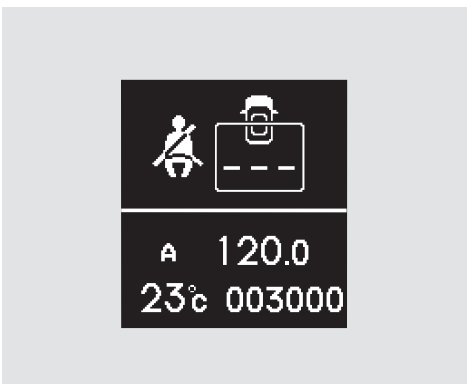
The rear seat belt monitor system judges the use of the rear seat belt based on the amount of seat belt pulled out from the retractor. It is not an indicator to show that the rear seat belt is actually latched. Correct latching of the seat belts should be confirmed whenever the indicator shows a rear seat belt is in use.

While driving, you can also confirm the rear seat belt use. Press and release the INFO button (i) repeatedly to change the display.



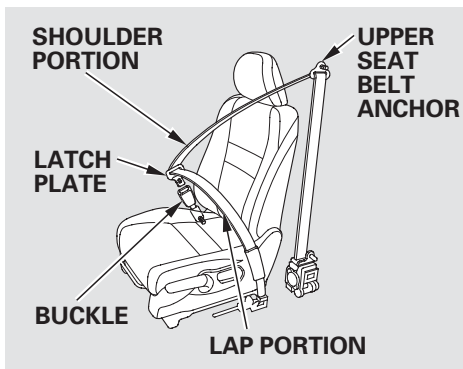


Additional Information About Your Seat Belts



If the system cannot detect the seat belt use, you will see three dashes. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position to reset the system. If this happens repeatedly, have your vehicle checked by your dealer.

Lap/Shoulder Belt



The lap and shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest, and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched (see page 21 for how to properly position the belt).

To unlock the belt, press the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body so that it retracts completely. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

CONTINUED





Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

The seat belts in all rear seating positions have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child restraint (see page 64).

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the lockable retractor will activate. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

To deactivate the lockable retractor, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the seat belt, pull it out only as far as needed.



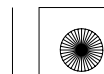
The lap/shoulder belt in the centre seating position on the rear seat is equipped with a detachable seat belt that has two parts: a small latch plate and an anchor buckle.

The detachable seat belt should normally be latched whenever the seat-backs are in an upright position. For more information about the detachable seat belt, see page 194 .

⚠ WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

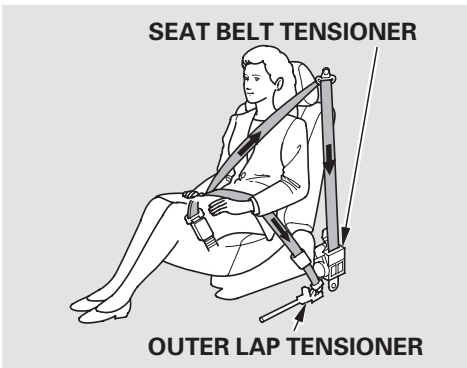
Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.





Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in position.

The tensioners are designed to activate in any collision severe enough to cause the front airbags to deploy, or if a sensor detects your vehicle is about to roll over (see page 39).

If a side curtain airbag deploys during a side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle will also deploy.

The tensioners can also be activated during a collision in which the front airbags *do not* deploy. In this case, the airbags would not be needed, but the extra tension in the seat belt could be helpful.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled.

On vehicles with collision mitigation braking system (CMBS)

If there is no passenger on the front passenger's seat and the seat belt is not fastened, the front passenger's automatic seat belt tensioner will not be activated.



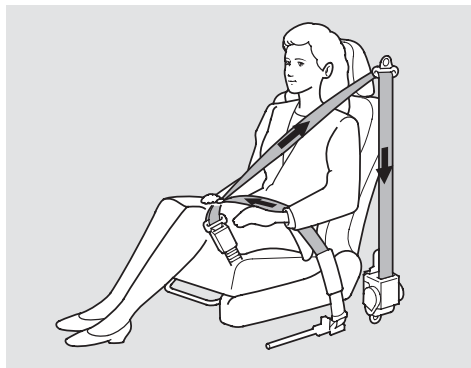
The SRS indicator will come on if there is a problem with your automatic seat belt tensioners (see page 39).





Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt e-pretensioners



On vehicles with collision mitigation braking system (CMBS)

For added safety, the front seat belts are equipped with the e-pretensioners that work in combination with the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) to maximize the restraining ability of the belts. For more information on the CMBS, see page 391.

In addition, the e-pretensioners work in combination with the brake pedal assist function (see page 388).

If your vehicle gets too close to the vehicle ahead of it in your lane, the driver's e-pretensioner slightly retracts the seat belt to alert the driver of the approaching vehicle. If a collision with the vehicle in front of you is likely, the e-pretensioners on both front seats retract the seat belts with enough force to properly restrain you and your front passenger. After they activate, the e-pretensioners release the retracted seat belts.

To get the full benefit of the e-pretensioners, you and your front passenger must sit normally in your seats and wear your seat belts properly (see page 23).

The e-pretensioners do not activate when the seat belts are not worn or when the vehicle stability assist (VSA) off indicator on the instrument panel is on.

If the automatic seat belt tensioners are activated by a collision, both front seat belts and all related components must be replaced (see page 33). If only the e-pretensioners were activated, no components need to be replaced.





Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt Maintenance

For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily. If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem (see page 509). Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

WARNING: *No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.*

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by the dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash.

The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed. If the automatic seat belt tensioners activate during a crash, they must be replaced.

WARNING: *It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.*

WARNING: *Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.*

CONTINUED





Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

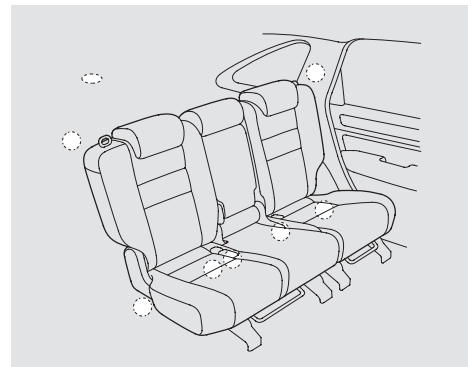
Anchorage Points

When replacing the seat belts, make certain to use the anchorage points shown in the illustrations.

(Front Seat)



(Rear Seat)



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.





Additional Information About Your Airbags

Airbag System Components

Your airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (supplemental restraint system) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG" (see page 36).
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG" (see page 38).
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling above the side windows. The front and rear pillars on both sides are marked "SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG" (see page 38).

- Automatic front seat belt tensioners (see page 31).

On vehicles with CMBS

- Front seat belt e-pretensioners (see page 32).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact, side impact, or if your vehicle is about to rollover.
- Sensors that can detect whether the driver's seat belt and the front passenger's seat belt are latched or unlatched (see page 26).
- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.

- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbags, sensors, or seat belt tensioners (see page 39).

On vehicles with CMBS

This indicator also alerts you to a possible problem with the seat belt e-pretensioners.

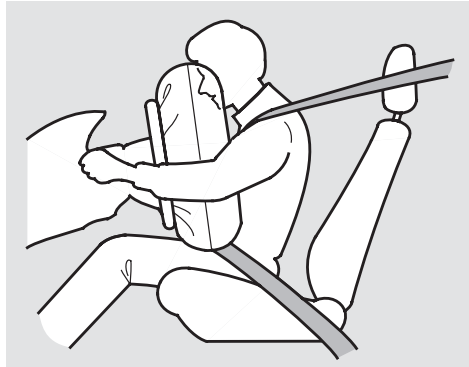
- A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags and front seat belt tensioners (see page 39).
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.





Additional Information About Your Airbags

How Your Front Airbags Work



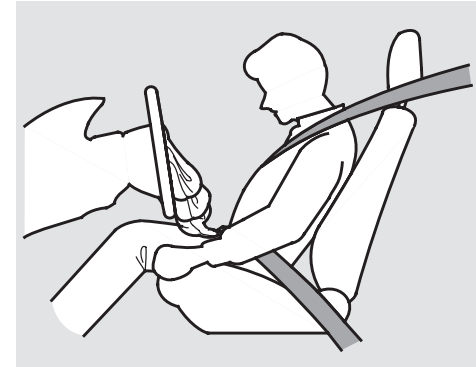
If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration.

If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the driver's and front passenger's airbags, at the time and with the force needed.

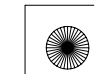
During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest.

Although both airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy.

This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.



After inflating, the front airbags immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.





Additional Information About Your Airbags

The total time for inflation and deflation is one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Dual-Stage Airbags

Your front airbags are dual-stage airbags. This means they have two inflation stages that can be ignited sequentially or simultaneously, depending on crash severity.

In a ***more severe*** crash, both stages will ignite simultaneously to provide the quickest and greatest protection.

In a ***less severe*** crash, one stage will ignite first, then the second stage will ignite a split second later. This provides longer airbag inflation time with a little less force.

Dual-Threshold Airbags

Your front airbags are also dual-threshold airbags. Airbags with this feature have two deployment thresholds that depend on whether sensors detect the occupant is wearing a seat belt or not.

If the occupant's belt is ***not latched***, the airbag will deploy at a slightly lower threshold, because the occupant would need extra protection.

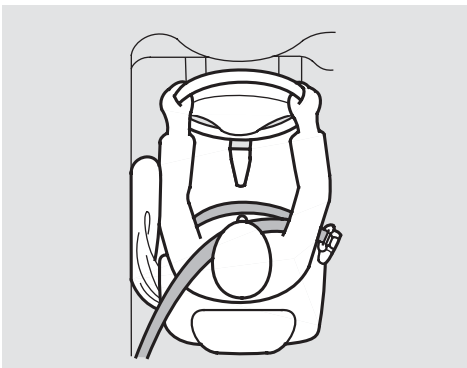
If the occupant's belt is ***latched***, the airbag will inflate at a slightly higher threshold, when the airbag would be needed to supplement the protection provided by the seat belt.





Additional Information About Your Airbags

How Your Side Airbags Work



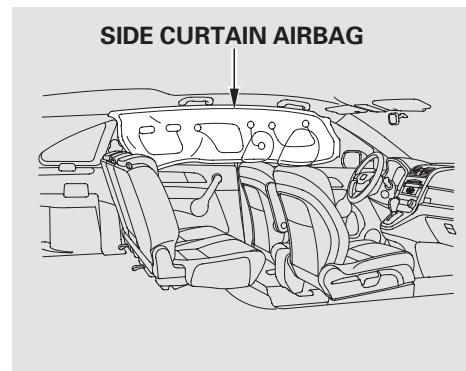
If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag.

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

If a front seat passenger leans sideways and his head is in the deployment path of the side airbag, he can be seriously injured by an inflating side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a child. For the information of the side airbags hazards, see pages 46 and 71.

How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work



In a Side Impact

In a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate the side curtain airbag and activate the seat belt tensioner on the driver's or the passenger's side of the vehicle.





Additional Information About Your Airbags

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

In a Rollover

If the rollover sensor detects your vehicle is about to roll over, it signals the control unit, which immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

The airbag on the passenger's side will deploy, and the seat belt tensioner will activate, even if there are no passengers on that side of the vehicle.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.



How the SRS Indicator Works

The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your airbags, sensors, or seat belt tensioners.

On vehicles with CMBS

This indicator also alerts you to a possible problem with the seat belt e-pretensioners.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, this indicator comes on briefly then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

CONTINUED






Additional Information About Your Airbags

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

You will also see the symbol “” or the symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If you see any of these indications, the airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when you need them.

WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.





Additional Information About Your Airbags

Airbag Service

Your airbag systems and automatic seat belt tensioners are virtually maintenance free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- **An airbag ever inflates.** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. Any seat belt tensioner that activates must also be replaced.

Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by your dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.

- **The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem.** Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly.

Handling is allowed by trained personnel only. It is prohibited to remove the airbag unit/belt-tensioner from the vehicle. In case of malfunction, shutdown or after airbag inflation/belt-tensioner operation you have to ask a qualified shop for repair or removal.

Additional Safety Precautions

- **Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.
- **Do not tamper with airbag and automatic seat belt tensioner components or wiring for any reason.** Tampering could cause the airbags and automatic seat belt tensioners to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.
- **Do not expose the front seat-backs to liquid.** If water or another liquid soaks into the seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag system from working properly.





Protecting Children – General Guidelines



Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many adults do not know how to *properly* protect child passengers.

If you have children, or ever need to drive with a child in your vehicle, be sure to read this section. It begins with important general guidelines, then presents special information for infants, small children, and larger children.

All Children Must Be Restrained
Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, traffic collisions are the number one cause of death of children age 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Infants and small children must be restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle (see pages 49 – 70).

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.

Larger children must be restrained with a lap/shoulder belt and ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits them properly (see pages 71 – 75).





Protecting Children – General Guidelines

In most countries, child restraint systems must meet the specifications of the ECE 44 regulation.

In many countries, the law requires children younger than 12 years of age and less than 150 cm (60 in) in height to be secured in an officially approved and suitable child restraint system. In those countries, officially approved and suitable child restraint systems must therefore be used in order to transport a child on any passenger seat whatsoever. Please check your local legal requirements.

All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat

According to crash statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in a back seat. It is recommended that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat.

Children who ride in back are less likely to be injured by striking interior vehicle parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating airbag when they ride in the back.

The Passenger's Front Airbag Poses Serious Risks

Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it can inflate with enough force to cause very serious injuries.

Infants

Never put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag. If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child restraint system with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

CONTINUED





Protecting Children – General Guidelines

As required by E.C.E Regulation No. 94;

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rearward facing child restraint system with great force. The rearward facing child restraint system can be dislodged or struck with enough force to cause very serious injury to the infant.

Small Children

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

Larger Children

Children who have outgrown child restraint systems are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag. Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, on a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt (see page 71 for important information about protecting larger children).

In all cases observe the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.





Protecting Children – General Guidelines

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in a back seat, your vehicle has warning labels on the windscreen, on the front passenger's doorjamb and on the front passenger's sun visor. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

⚠ WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

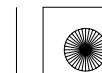
As required by E.C.E Regulation No. 94;

⚠ WARNING



DO NOT place rear-facing child seat on this seat with airbag.

DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY can occur.





Protecting Children – General Guidelines

The Side Airbag Poses Serious Risks

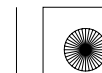
Side airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe side impact.

If any part of a child's body is in the path of a deploying airbag, an inflating side airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a child.

To remind you of the side airbags hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in the back seat, your vehicle has the safety label on each front doorjamb.

⚠ WARNING

Leaning over the front door can result in serious injury or death if the side airbag inflates.
Always sit upright with their back against the seat-back.





Protecting Children – General Guidelines

If You Must Drive with Several Children

Your vehicle has a back seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly (see page 72).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see pages 181 and 182).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 23).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 21).

If a Child Requires Close Attention

Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards in a frontal collision or a side impact, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires close physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in the back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Never hold an infant or child on your lap.*** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward and crush the child against the dashboard or a seat-back. If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms and be seriously hurt or killed.
- ***Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child.*** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- ***Never let two children use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

CONTINUED



Protecting Children – General Guidelines

- ***Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.*** If a child wraps a loose seat belt around their neck, they can be seriously or fatally injured. (See pages 64 and 66 for how to activate and deactivate the lockable retractor.)

- ***Use the childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the rear doors.*** This can prevent children from accidentally falling out (see page 173).

- ***WARNING: Use the main power window switch to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver (see page 203).***

- ***WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).***

- ***Do not leave children alone in a vehicle.*** Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in some countries, and can be very hazardous.

For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. A child left alone with the key in the ignition switch can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.

- ***Lock all doors and the tailgate when your vehicle is not in use.*** Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles.

- ***Keep vehicle keys/remote transmitters out of the reach of children.*** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition switch, and open the tailgate, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

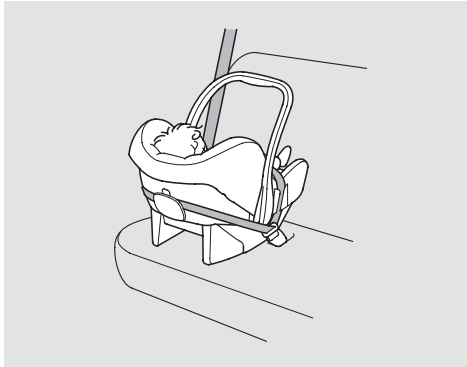
“Never let children kneel on seats or stand while the vehicle is in motion. The violent forces created during emergency braking will cause the children to be thrown forward. The children could be seriously injured or killed.”





Protecting Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants



Child Restraint System Type

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the child reaches the restraint system maker's weight or height limit for the restraint system, and the child is at least one year old.

Only a rearward facing child restraint system provides proper support for a baby's head, neck and back.

Two types of restraints may be used: a restraint system designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible restraint system used in the rearward facing, reclining mode.

For EU countries, refer to page 56 for the recommended child restraint system.

Do not put a rearward facing child restraint system in a forward-facing position. If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

Rearward Facing Child Restraint System Placement

A rearward facing child restraint system can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front. ***Never put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat.***

For EU countries, an approved rearward facing child restraint system should be placed in any seating position in the back seat (see page 56).

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the restraint with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant.

CONTINUED





Protecting Infants and Small Children

When properly installed, a rearward facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat as far back as recommended, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

In either situation, we strongly recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or you may wish to get a smaller rearward facing child restraint system.



⚠ WARNING

Placing a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rearward facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

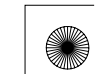
As required by E.C.E Regulation No. 94;

⚠ WARNING



Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rearward facing child restraint system with great force. The rearward facing child restraint system can be dislodged or struck with enough force to cause very serious injury to the infant.





Protecting Infants and Small Children

Protecting Small Children



Child Restraint System Type

A child one year of age or older who also meets the minimum size and weight requirements will be allowed to transition from a rearward-facing child restraint system to a front facing child restraint system. Know the requirements where you are driving and follow the child restraint system's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rearward-facing child restraint system up to age two, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rearward-facing child restraint system.

Of the different restraint systems available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

We also recommend that a small child uses the child restraint system as long as possible, until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the restraint system.

For EU countries, refer to page 56 for the recommended child restraint system.

Child Restraint System Placement

We strongly recommend placing a front facing child restraint system in a back seat, not the front.

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's airbag can be hazardous.

If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries.

CONTINUED





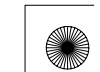
Protecting Infants and Small Children

If it is necessary to put a front facing child restraint system in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, and be sure the child restraint system is firmly secured to the vehicle and the child is properly strapped in the restraint system.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.





Selecting a Child Restraint System

When buying a child restraint system, you need to choose either a conventional child restraint system, or one designed for use with the lower anchorages and tethers.

Conventional child restraint systems must be secured to a vehicle with a seat belt, whereas lower anchorages system-compatible child restraint systems are secured by attaching the restraint to hardware built into each rear seating position in the back seat.

Since lower anchorages system-compatible child restraint systems are easier to install and reduce the possibility of improper installation, we recommend selecting this style.

We also recommend selecting a lower anchorages system-compatible child restraint system with a rigid, rather than a flexible, anchor (see page 59).

In EU countries, a child restraint system with a flexible anchor is not available.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, a lower anchorages system-compatible child restraint system can be installed using a seat belt.

Whatever type of child restraint you choose, to provide proper protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements:

- 1. *The child restraint system should meet safety standards.*** In most countries, child restraint systems must meet the specifications of the ECE 44 regulation. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not assume any responsibility for damage which would be caused by a defect inherent in the recommended child restraint system.

CONTINUED





Selecting a Child Restraint System

2. The child restraint system should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.

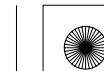
Rearward facing for infants, front facing for small children.

Make sure the restraint system fits your child. Check the manufacturer's instructions and labels for height and weight limits.

3. The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.

Before purchasing a conventional child restraint system, or using a previously purchased one, we recommend that you test the restraint system in the specific vehicle seating position or positions where the child restraint system will be used.

For EU countries, refer to page 56 for the recommended child restraint system.





Installing a Child Restraint System

After selecting a proper child restraint system and a good place to install the restraint system, there are three main steps in installing the restraint system:

1. Properly secure the child restraint system to the vehicle. All child restraint systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the lower anchorages system. A child whose restraint system is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.

Except for European models

If you use a lap/shoulder belt without an additional lockable retractor, be sure you install a locking clip on the seat belt (see page 67).

2. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured. After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

A child restraint system secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, it does not need to be “rock solid.” Some side-to-side movement can be expected and should not reduce the child restraint system’s effectiveness.

If the child restraint system is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child restraint system that can be firmly secured.

For EU countries, refer to page 56 for the recommended child restraint system.

3. Secure the child in the child restraint system. Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child restraint system according to the child restraint system maker’s instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child restraint system can be seriously injured in a crash.

The following pages provide the recommended child restraint systems for EU countries and guidelines on how to properly install a child restraint system. A front facing child restraint system is used in all examples, but the instructions are the same for a rearward facing child restraint system.





Installing a Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System for EU Countries

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass Group		Seating Position		
		Front passenger	Rear passenger	
			Outboard	Centre
group 0	Up to 10 kg	X	U* ²	Honda BABY-SAFE
group 0+	Up to 13 kg	X	IL (Honda BABY-SAFE ISO FIX) or U* ²	IL (Honda BABY-SAFE ISO FIX) or Honda BABY-SAFE
group I	9 kg to 18 kg	Honda LORD* ¹	IUF (Size class A, B1, B) or U* ²	IUF (Size class A, B1, B) or Honda LOAD
group II	15 kg to 25 kg	Honda KID or Honda KID FIX* ¹	L (Honda KID FIX) or U* ²	Honda KID or Honda KID FIX
group III	22 kg to 36 kg	Honda KID or Honda KID FIX* ¹	L (Honda KID FIX) or U* ²	Honda KID or Honda KID FIX

IL: Suitable for particular ISO FIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this table.

IUF: Suitable for front facing ISO FIX child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

For group I, the front facing genuine Honda ISO FIX child restraint system is available from your dealer.

L: Suitable for particular child restraint systems given in this table. These restraints may be of the “specific vehicle,” “restricted,” or “semi-universal” category.

U: Suitable for “universal” category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

* 1: Move the front seat to its rearmost position.

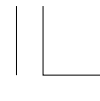
* 2: Adjust the front seat forward to 30 mm (3 notches) from its rearmost position.

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

The particular child restraints in the above table are Honda Genuine Parts. They are available from your dealer.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.





Installing a Child Restraint System

Your vehicle has the manual adjustable rear seat. To install a child restraint system in any seating position on the rear seat, slide the rear seat as far back as it can go.

WARNING

The use of any child restraint system which is not suitable for your vehicles would not properly secure the infant or child who could therefore be killed or seriously injured.

Your vehicle is equipped with lower anchorages at each seating position on the rear seat. These anchorages are only to be used with a child restraint system designed to be attached to the lower anchorages. Refer to page 58 for how to install a child restraint system to the lower anchorages.





Installing a Child Restraint System

Installing a Child Restraint System with the Lower Anchorages

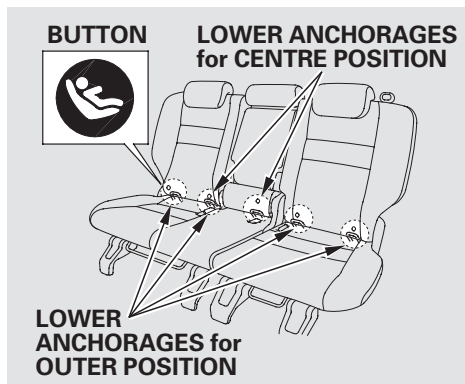
Your vehicle is equipped with lower anchorages at the rear seats to secure a child restraint system in any seating position: one in each outer seating position, or one in the centre.

The five lower anchorages are located between the seat-back and seat bottom, and are to be used only with a child restraint system designed for use with the lower anchorages.

The location of each lower anchorage is indicated by a small button above the anchorage point.

For EU countries, refer to page 56 for the recommended child restraint system.

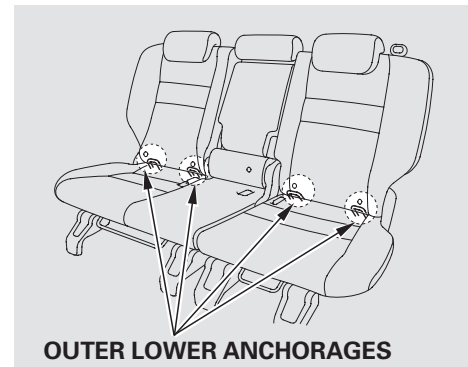
When you install a child restraint system in the rear centre seating



position, use the centre lower anchorages as shown in the illustration. To install a child restraint system in either outer seating position, use the outer lower anchorages. You can install up to two child restraint systems at a time using the outer lower anchorages.

Do not attach two child restraint system connectors to a single lower anchorage at a time.

Using the Outer Lower Anchorages



To install a child restraint system designed to be attached to the lower anchorages in either of the rear outer seats:

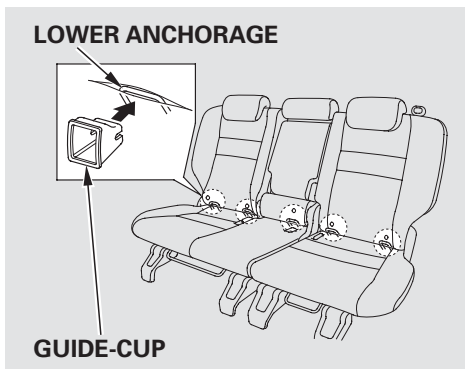
1. Store the seat belt buckle or tongue in the storage pockets.





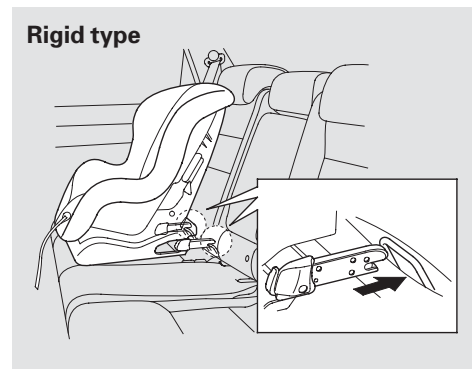
Installing a Child Restraint System

2. Make sure there are no objects near the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the child restraint system and the anchorages.
3. *On some child restraint systems*
You may use optional guide-cups that came with your child restraint system to install it to the lower anchorages without damaging the seat surface.



Attach the guide-cups to the lower anchorages as shown in the illustration.

When using the guide-cups, always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.



4. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.

Some child restraint systems designed for use with lower anchorages have a rigid-type connector as shown above.

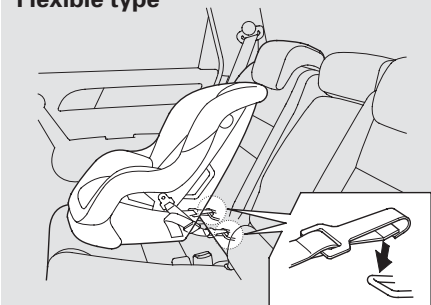
CONTINUED





Installing a Child Restraint System

Flexible type



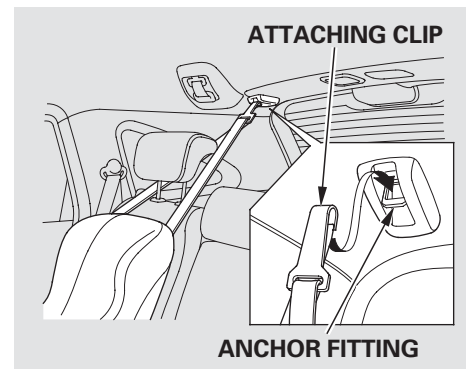
Other child restraints have a flexible-type connector as shown above.

- Whatever type you have, follow the child restraint system maker's instructions for adjusting or tightening the fit.

Flexible type child restraint system is available in some countries. In EU countries, this type is not available.

- Set the head restraint to its highest position.

- Route the tether strap over the seat-back through the outsides of the head restraint legs, then attach the attaching clip to the tether anchor fitting in the ceiling as shown in the illustration. Make sure the strap is not twisted, then tighten the strap according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.

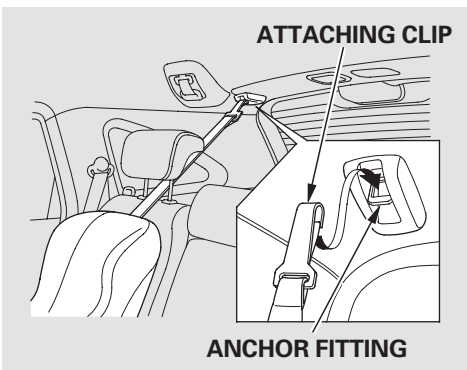


The above illustration shows how the attaching clip should be routed in EU countries.





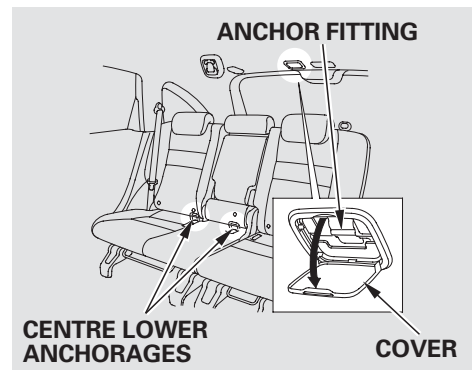
Installing a Child Restraint System



On some child restraint types, route the tether strap between the legs of the head restraint as shown.

8. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

Using the Centre Lower Anchorages



To install a child restraint system in the rear centre seating position, use the centre lower anchorages as shown above.

1. Follow step 1 through 5 as described previously to secure the child restraint system.

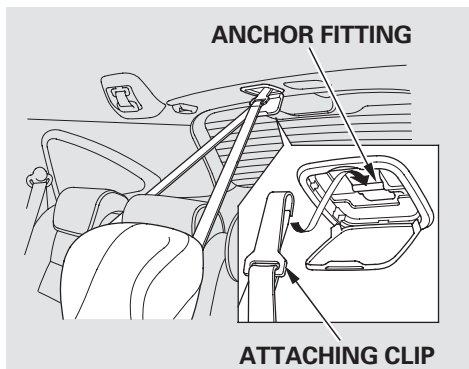
CONTINUED



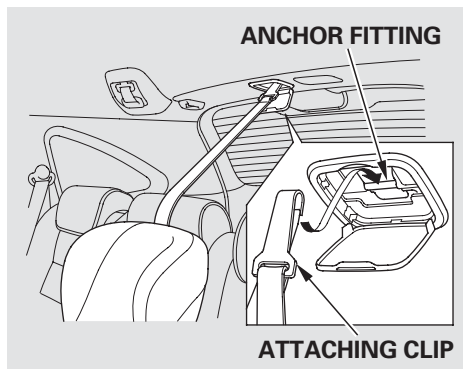


Installing a Child Restraint System

2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Pull down the cover to access the tether anchor fitting.



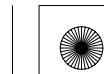
4. Route the tether strap over the seat-back, then attach the attaching clip to the tether anchor fitting in the centre of the ceiling, making sure the strap is not twisted. Tighten the strap according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.



On some child restraint systems, route the tether strap over the head restraint as shown.

5. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

The design and suitability of the child restraint systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer concerned and the seller of those systems. If you are not sure, consult your dealer before purchasing this type of child restraint system.





Installing a Child Restraint System

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Belt

When not using the lower anchorages system, all child restraint systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

In addition, the lap/shoulder belts in the back seating positions have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child restraint system.

If you intend to install a child restraint system in the centre seating position of the rear seat, make sure the detachable seat belt anchor is securely latched (see page 194).

To properly route a lap/shoulder belt through a child restraint system, follow the restraint system maker's instructions.

For EU countries, refer to page 56 for installing a child restraint system.

The procedures in the following pages are described based on a front facing child restraint system.

1. Place the child restraint system in the desired back seating position. Make sure the child restraint is positioned well back in the seat-back.

If you place the child restraint system in any rear seating position and use the tether strap for additional security, make sure to set the head restraint properly and attach the attaching clip to the anchor fitting before securing the child restraint system with the lap/shoulder belt.



2. Route the belt through the restraint according to the restraint system maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle and remove any slack from the lap portion of the belt.

CONTINUED

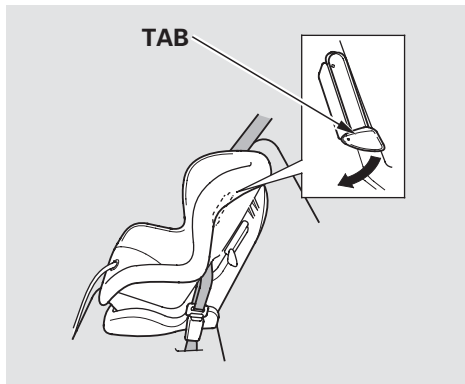




Installing a Child Restraint System

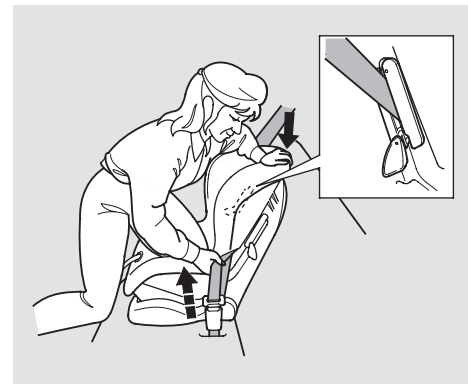


3. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops.



4. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.

5. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked, and you will need to repeat these steps.



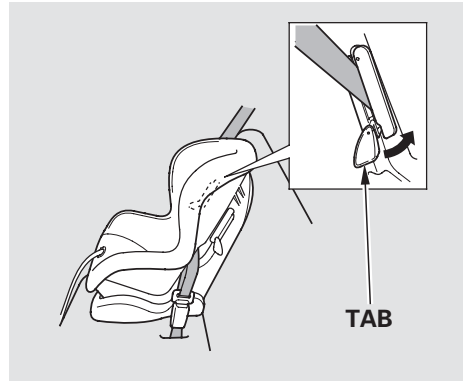
6. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child restraint system will not be secure.



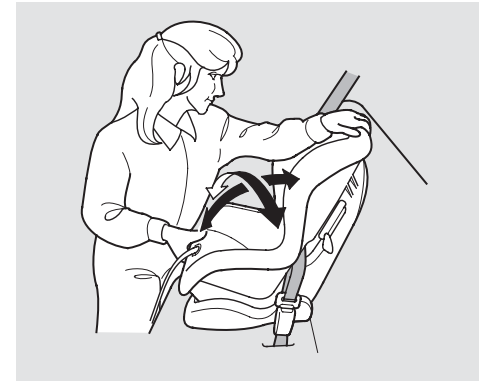


Installing a Child Restraint System

To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child restraint system, or push on the back of the restraint system while pulling up on the belt.



7. Secure the belt in the slit by pushing up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted and it is positioned properly in the slit.



8. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving manoeuvres. If the child restraint system is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

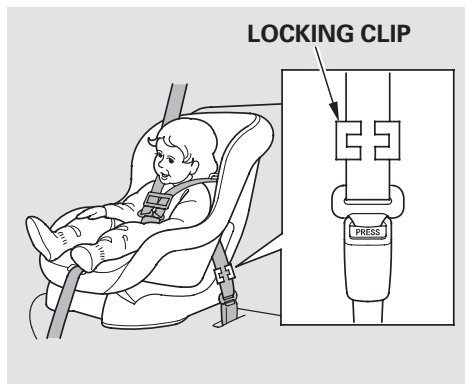
CONTINUED





Installing a Child Restraint System

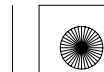
To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child restraint system, unlatch the buckle, unrout the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.



Except for European models

On vehicles without lockable retractor fitted to the seat where the child is positioned

When you secure a child restraint system with a lap/shoulder belt, be sure you install a locking clip on the seat belt (see page 67).





Installing a Child Restraint System

Using a Seat Belt Locking Clip **Except for European models**

On vehicles without lockable retractor fitted to the seat where the child is positioned

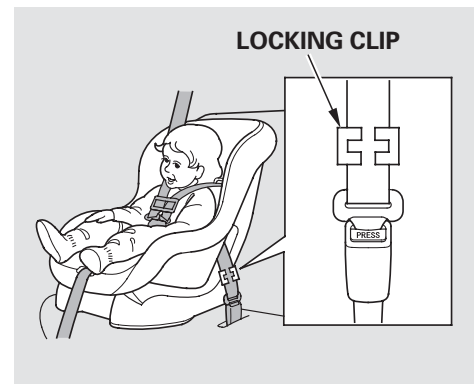
Always use a seat belt locking clip when you secure a child restraint system to your vehicle with a lap/shoulder belt. This helps prevent the restraint system from shifting position or overturning.

A locking clip is usually included with the child restraint system. If you need a clip, contact the seat's manufacturer or a store that sells child restraints.

If it is necessary to put a front facing child restraint system in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, be sure the child restraint system is firmly secured to the vehicle, and the child is properly strapped in the restraint system (see page 51).

To install a locking clip, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint in the seat with a lap/shoulder belt. Route the lap/shoulder belt through the restraint according to the seat manufacturer's instructions.
2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Pull on the shoulder part of the belt to make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.
3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they won't slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.



4. Install the locking clip as shown. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Push and pull on the child restraint system to verify that it is held firmly in place. If it is not, repeat these steps until the restraint is secure.

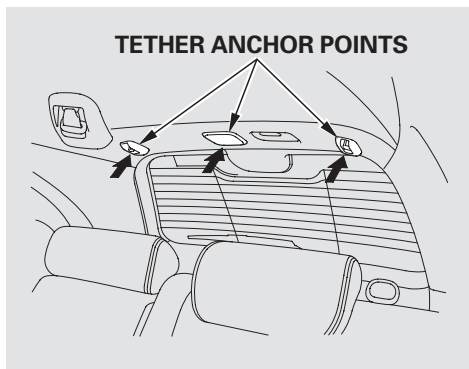




Installing a Child Restraint System

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Tether

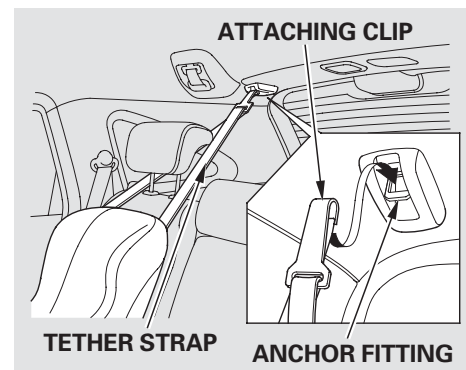
Children riding in vehicles should be restrained to minimize the risk of injury in the event of an accident.



A child restraint system with a tether can be installed in any seating position in the back seat, using one of the anchor points shown in the illustration.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available. (The owners may check with the child restraint system maker to determine whether a tether is available for a particular child restraint system.)

Using an Outer Anchor Fitting



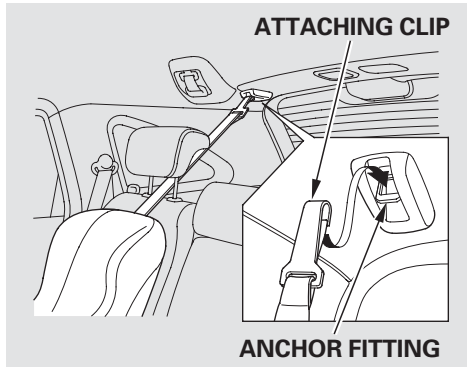
1. Set the head restraint to its highest position.
2. After properly securing the child restraint system (see page 58 or 63), route the tether strap over the seat-back and on both sides of the head restraint as shown.

The above illustration shows how the tether strap should be routed in EU countries.





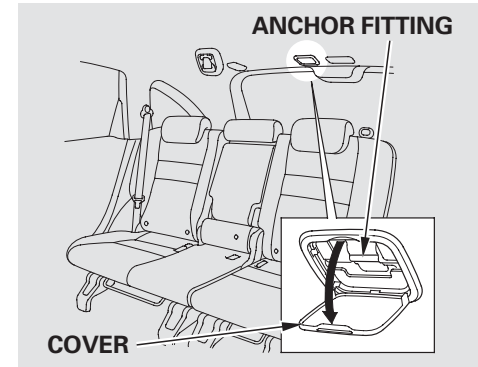
Installing a Child Restraint System



On some child restraint types, route the tether strap between the legs of the head restraint as shown.

3. Attach the attaching clip to the anchor fitting, making sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.

Using the Centre Anchor



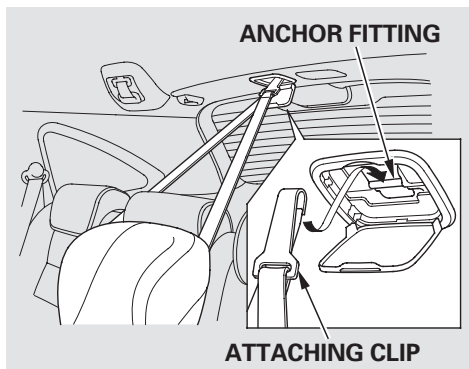
1. Push down the rear centre head restraint to the lowest position.
2. After properly securing the child restraint system (see page 63), open the anchor cover.

CONTINUED

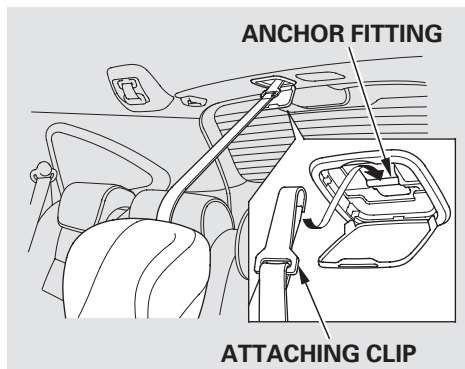




Installing a Child Restraint System



3. Route the tether strap on both sides of the head restraint, then attach the attaching clip to the tether anchor fitting, making sure the tether strap is not twisted.



- On some child restraint systems, route the tether strap over the head restraint as shown.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.

To attach the tether to the child restraint system, follow the child restraint system maker's instructions.

When the child restraint system is used, follow the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

WARNING: *Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*





Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a front facing child restraint system, the child should sit in a back seat on a booster seat and wear the lap/shoulder belt.

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.



⚠ WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

⚠ WARNING

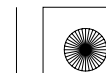
Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, use a booster seat if needed, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly.

⚠ WARNING

Leaning over the front door can result in serious injury or death if the side airbag inflates.

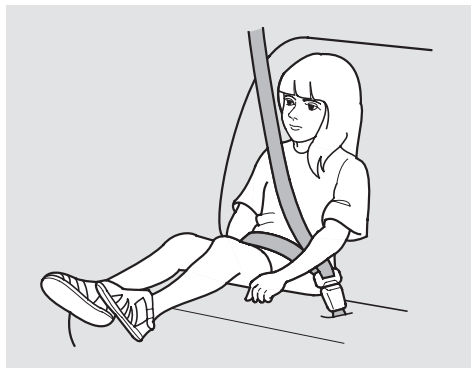
Always sit upright with their back against the seat-back.





Protecting Larger Children

Checking Seat Belt Fit



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt, then ask yourself:

1. Does the child sit all the way back against the seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?

3. Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
5. Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat.

Using a Booster Seat



A child who has outgrown a front facing child restraint system should ride in a back seat and use a booster seat until the lap/shoulder belt fits them properly without the booster.





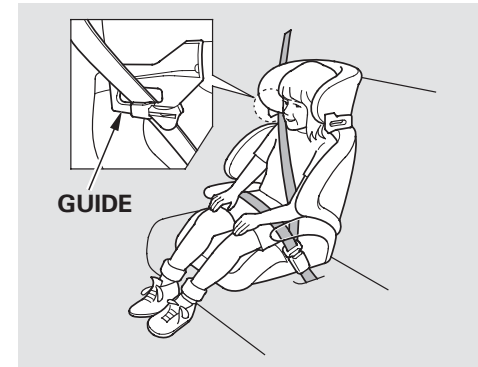
Protecting Larger Children

Booster seats can be high-back or low-back. Whichever style you select, make sure the booster seat meets approved safety standards (see page 53) and that you follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

If a child who uses a booster seat must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and be sure the child is wearing the seat belt properly.

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of their ears are even with the top of the vehicle's or booster's seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster seat.

For EU countries, refer to page 56 for the booster seat placement.



A back-rest may be available for a specific booster seat. Install the back-rest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat maker's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the back-rest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck (see page 21).





Protecting Larger Children

When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front

It is recommended that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in the back seat.

The back seat is the safest place for a child of any age or size.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the airbag can cause serious injuries to a child who is unrestrained, improperly restrained, sitting too close to the airbag, or out of position.

A side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying side airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in front, there are other important factors you should consider.

Physical Size

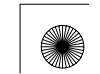
Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit (see pages 21 and 72). If the seat belt does not fit properly, with or without the child sitting on a booster seat, the child should not sit in front.

Maturity

To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly, and wearing the seat belt properly throughout a ride.

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual, and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly and securely positioned.
- Remind the child not to lean toward the door.
- Supervise the child. Even a mature child sometimes needs to be reminded to fasten the seat belt or sit properly.

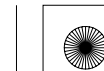




Protecting Larger Children

Additional Safety Precautions

- **Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck.** This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.
- **Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.
- **Two children should never use the same seat belt.** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- **Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.** Devices intended to improve a child's comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can make the belt less effective and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.





Carbon Monoxide Hazard

Your vehicle's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. Carbon monoxide should not enter the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly and follow the information on this page.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in a collision that may have damaged the underside.

⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle's interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows, and set the heating and cooling system/climate control system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running, even in an unconfined area, adjust the heating and cooling system/climate control system as follows:

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Turn the fan on high speed.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

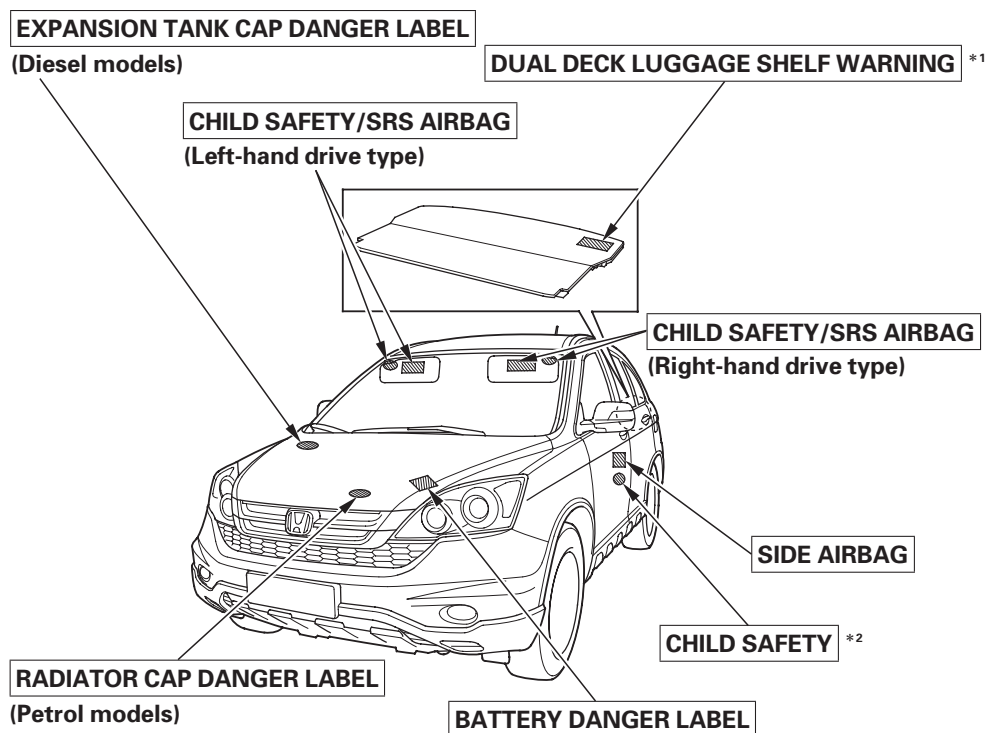




Safety Labels

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact your dealer for a replacement.



* 1 : If equipped
* 2 : Passenger's side only

CONTINUED





Safety Labels

The label shown below is attached to each front doorjamb.



• Side Airbag





• Safety alert symbol



• Follow owner's manual instructions carefully

On Diesel models

Symbols   on top of the engine under the engine cover are to remind you to follow the service manual instructions. When replacing the injectors, your authorized dealer should perform this work. Contact your dealer.

On vehicles with dual deck luggage shelf

The label shown below is attached to the left side on the dual deck luggage shelf.



• Safety alert symbol



• Follow owner's manual instructions carefully





Instruments and Controls

This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

Control Locations	80
Instrument Panel	82
Instrument Panel Indicators.....	86
Gauges	99
Speedometer	100
Tachometer	100
Temperature Gauge.....	100
Fuel Gauge	100
Multi-information Display.....	101
Controls Near the Steering	
Wheel.....	142
Windscreen Wipers and	
Washers.....	144
Turn Signals and Headlights.....	148
Front and Rear Fog Lights.....	150
Adaptive Front Lighting System	
(AFS).....	153

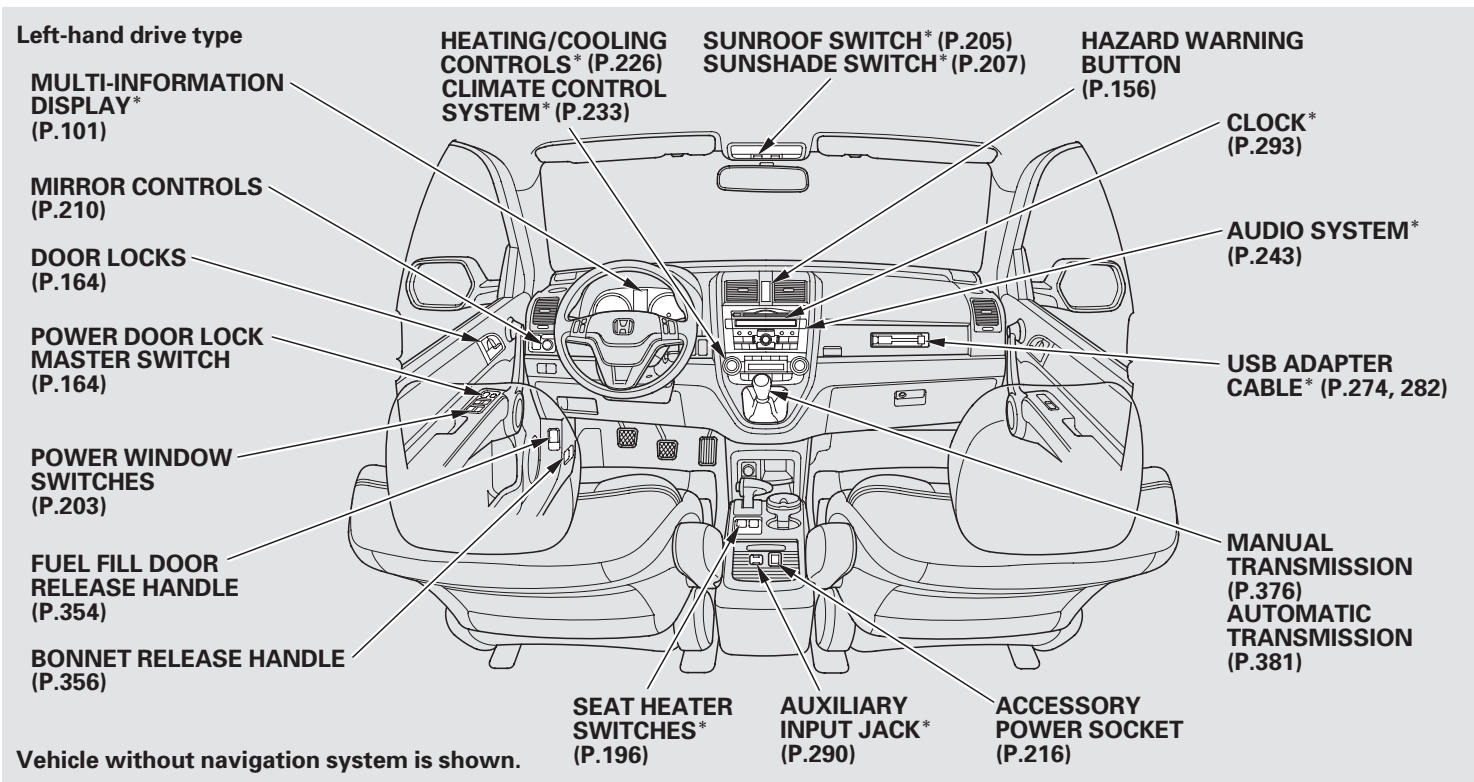
Instrument Panel Brightness	155
Hazard Warning Button.....	156
Rear Window Demister	156
Headlight Adjuster	158
Steering Wheel Adjustments	159
Keys and Locks.....	160
Immobilizer System.....	162
Ignition Switch	163
Door Locks	164
Power Door Locks.....	164
Super Locking.....	167
Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking	168
Childproof Door Locks	173
Remote Transmitter	174
Tailgate	179
Seats	181
Driver's Seat Power	
Adjustments	181
Manual Seat Adjustments.....	182
Driver's Seat Height	
Adjustment	183
Armrests.....	184
Luggage Pass-through.....	184
Head Restraints	185
Reclining the Front Seats	189

Folding the Rear Seats Down ..	190
Folding the Rear Seat	
Forward	192
Detachable Anchor.....	194
Seat Heaters	196
Tonneau Cover.....	197
Dual Deck Luggage Shelf	200
Power Windows	203
Sunroof.....	205
Sunshades.....	207
Mirrors.....	209
Parking Brake	212
Interior Convenience Items.....	213
Lower Glove Box	214
Upper Glove Box	214
Beverage Holders.....	215
Accessory Power Sockets.....	216
Console Compartment	217
Sunglasses Holder	217
Conversation Mirror	218
Coat Hook.....	218
Sun Visor	219
Vanity Mirror	219
Cigarette Lighter	219
Ashtray.....	220
Interior Lights	221



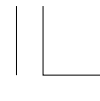


Control Locations

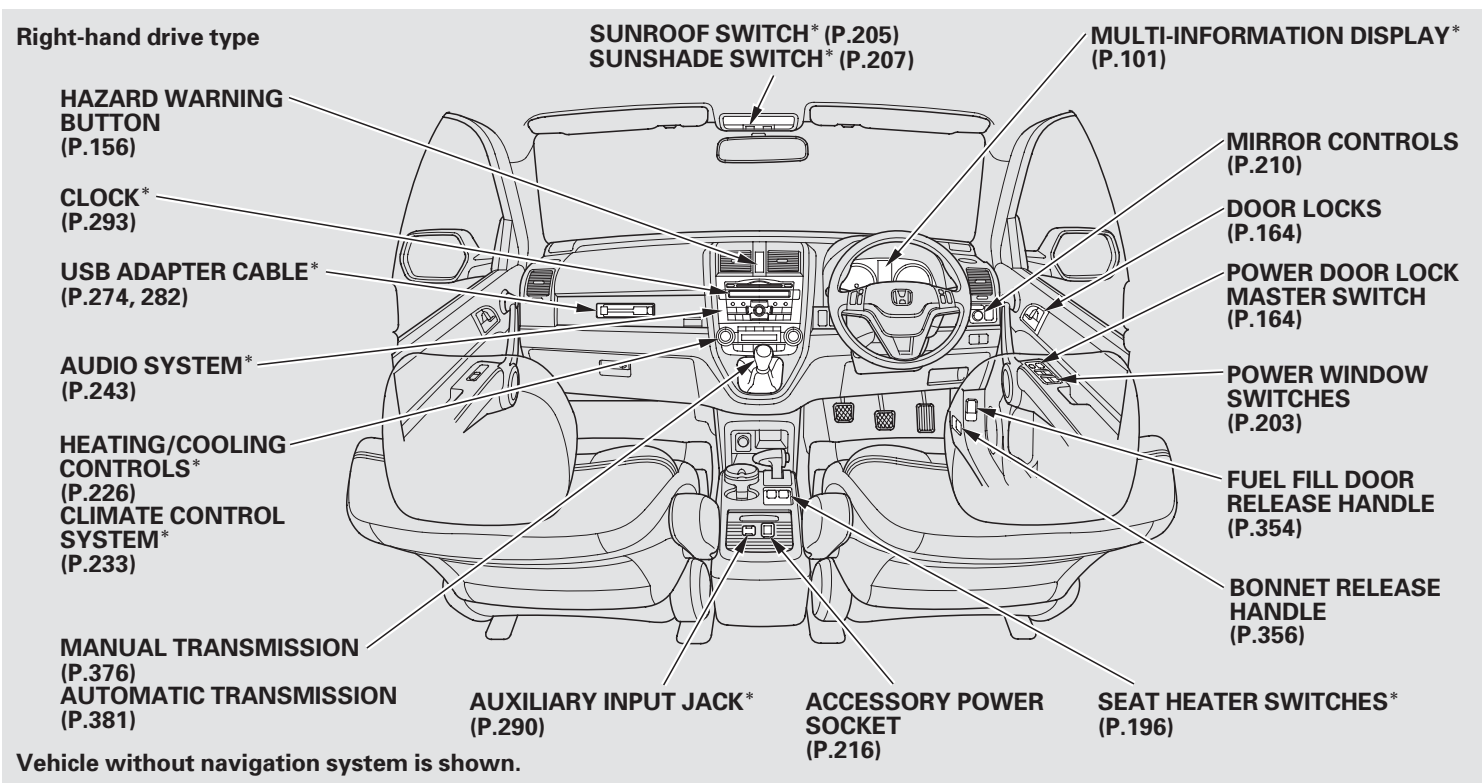


* : If equipped





Control Locations



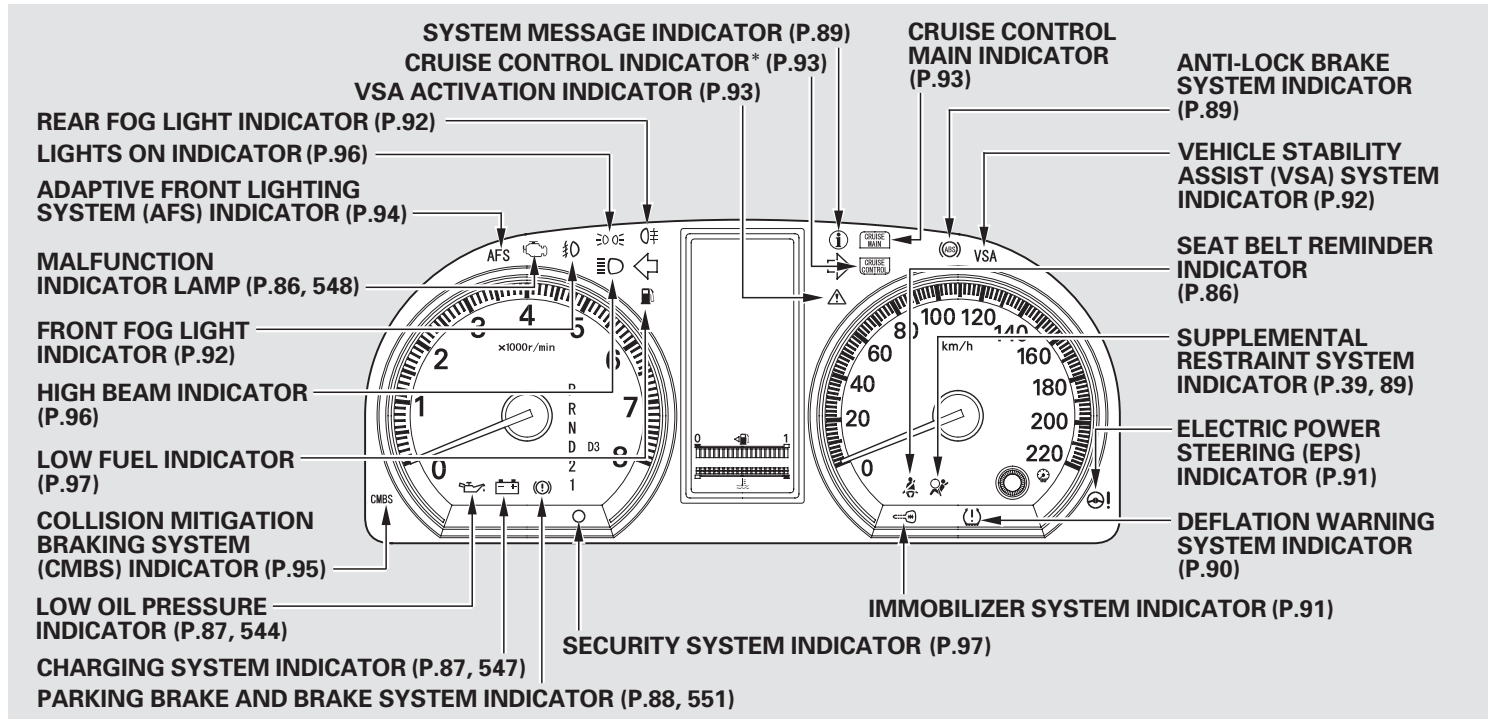
* : If equipped





Instrument Panel (Petrol models)

Automatic Transmission



Since the indicators vary between models, some indicators are not on your vehicle.

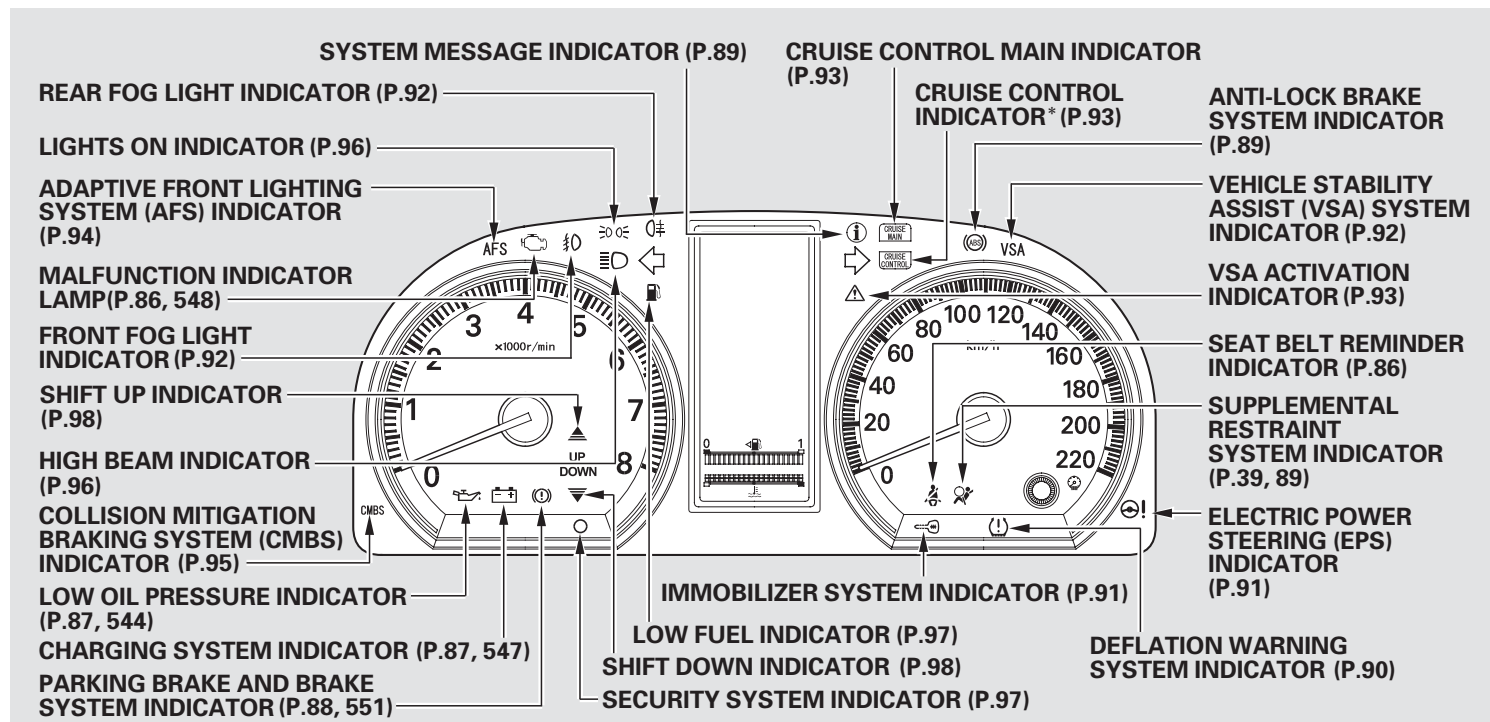
* : On vehicle with adaptive cruise control (ACC), ACC indicator (Amber, Green) is located in this position (P. 94).





Instrument Panel (Petrol models)

Manual Transmission



Since the indicators vary between models, some indicators are not on your vehicle.

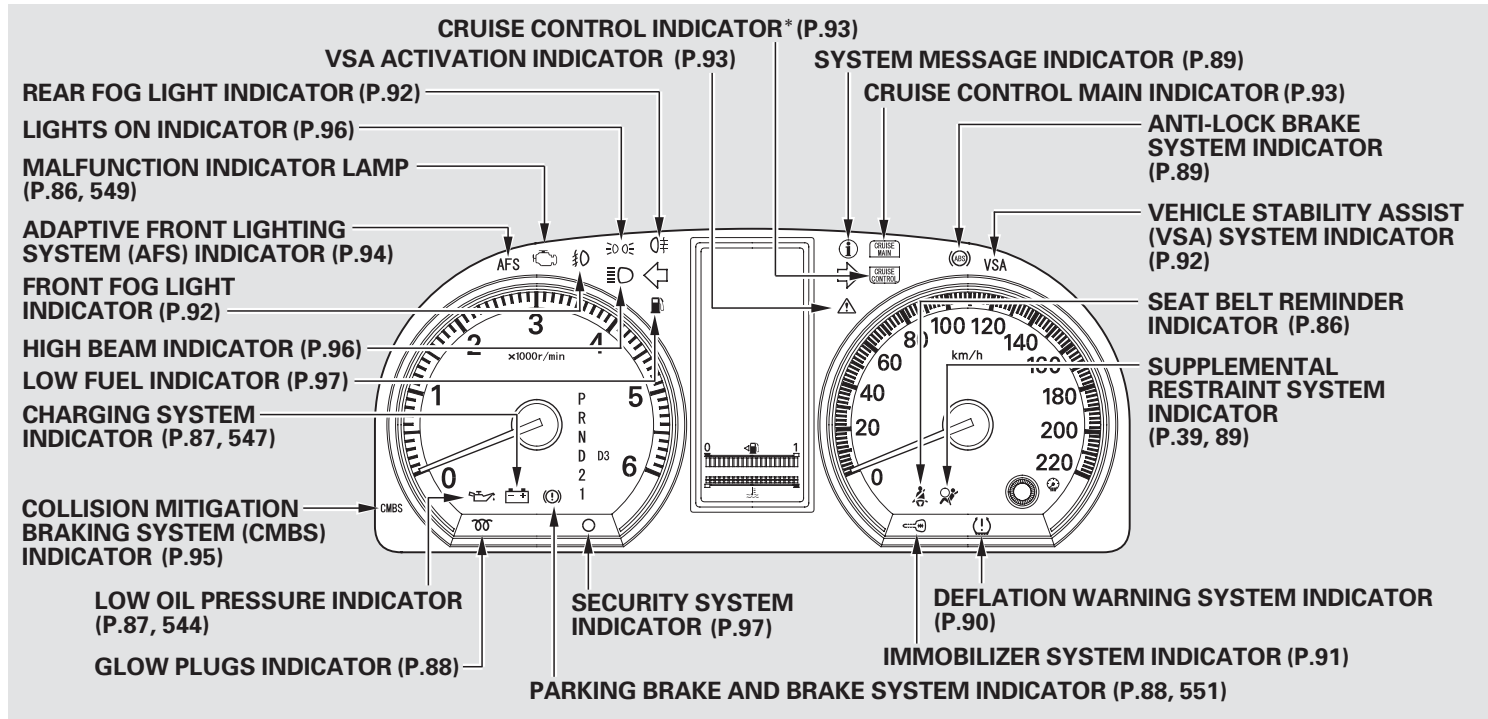
* : On vehicle with adaptive cruise control (ACC), **ACC** indicator (Amber, Green) is located in this position (P. 94).





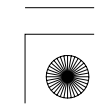
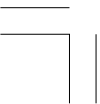
Instrument Panel (Diesel models)

Automatic Transmission



Since the indicators vary between models, some indicators are not on your vehicle.

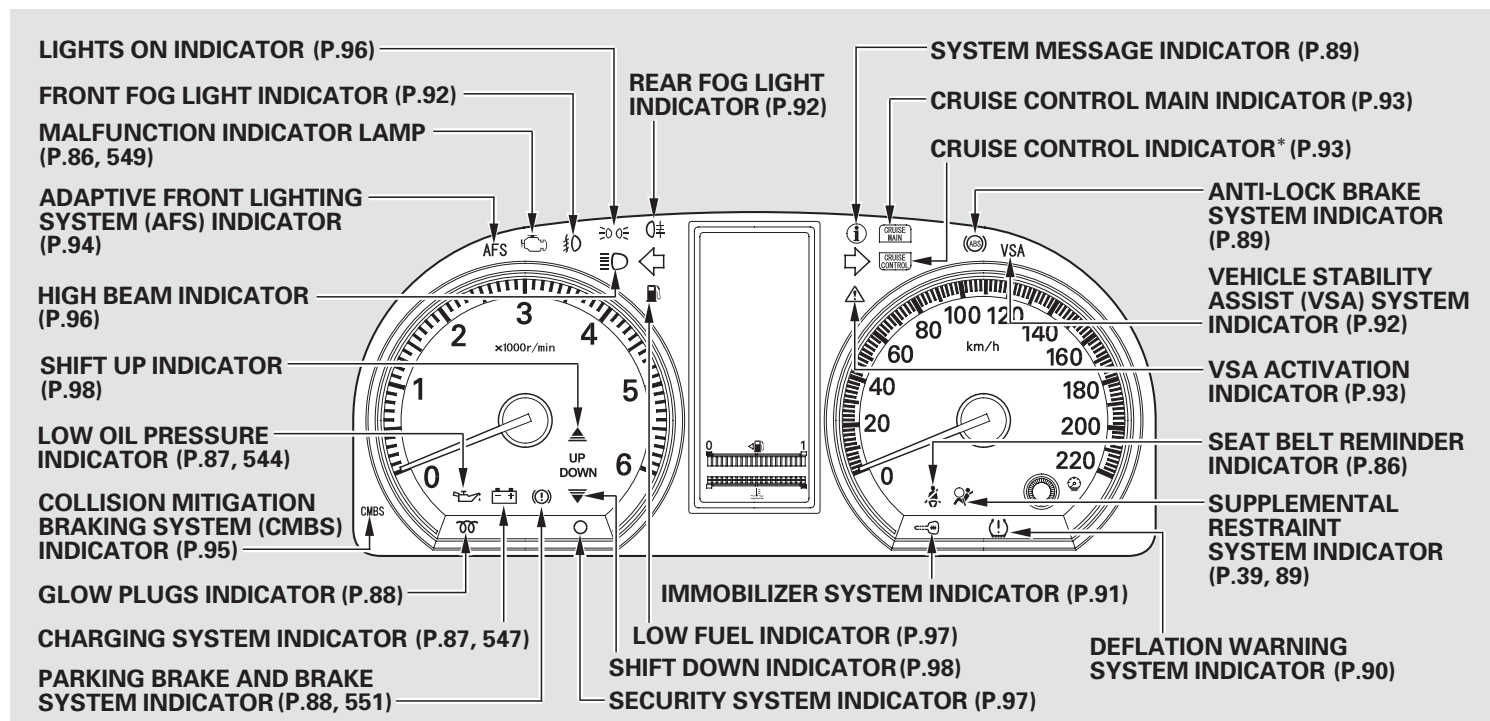
* : On vehicle with adaptive cruise control (ACC), ACC indicator (Amber, Green) is located in this position (P. 94).





Instrument Panel (Diesel models)

Manual Transmission



Since the indicators vary between models, some indicators are not on your vehicle.

* : On vehicle with adaptive cruise control (ACC), **ACC** indicator (Amber, Green) is located in this position (P. 94).






Instrument Panel Indicators

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

See page 548 on petrol models and page 549 on diesel models.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

On Diesel models only

This indicator will also come on when you restart the engine after your vehicle has run out of fuel (see page 501).





Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It reminds you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts. A beeper also sounds if you have not fastened your seat belt.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belt before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals. For more information, see page 26.

You will also see the symbol “” (for a driver)/“” (for a front passenger), or this symbol with a “FASTEN YOUR SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN YOUR PASSENGER’S SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.





Instrument Panel Indicators

The seat belt system also monitors the seat belt use of all three rear seating positions according to the activation of each seat belt retractor.

The multi-information display will show you the seat belt use on the rear seat (see page 27).


WARNING

The rear seat belt monitor system judges the use of the rear seat belt based on the amount of seat belt pulled out from the retractor. It is not an indicator to show that the rear seat belt is actually latched. Correct latching of the seat belts should be confirmed whenever the indicator shows a rear seat belt is in use.



Low Oil Pressure Indicator


The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator comes on red and flashes or stays on when the engine is running. For more information, see page 544 .

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with an “OIL PRESSURE LOW” message on the multi-information display.



Charging System Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged. For more information, see page 547 .

You will also see the symbol “” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.





Instrument Panel Indicators



Glow Plugs Indicator (Diesel models only)

This indicator comes on for a few seconds (several seconds in cold weather or at high altitudes) when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. When the engine is cold, wait for the indicator to go off before starting the engine.

If you experience any of the following symptoms, there may be a problem with the water temperature sensor of the fuel system. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.


- This indicator goes out faster than normal when the outside temperature is very low.
- It is hard to start the engine.




Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. It comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to check the parking brake. A beeper sounds if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the brakes and tyres.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message in the multi-information display (see page 212).

2. If it remains lit after you fully release the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the brake system. For more information, see page 551.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 551).






Instrument Panel Indicators



Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. If this happens, have your vehicle checked at a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. For more information, see page 389 .

You will also see the symbol “  ,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 389).



System Message Indicator


This indicator comes on when there is a system message on the multi-information display. Press the INFO button on the steering wheel to see the message (see page 102).

Most of the time, this indicator comes on along with other indicators in the instrument panel such as the seat belt reminder indicator, supplemental restraint system indicator, VSA system indicator, etc.



Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags, side curtain airbags, or automatic seat belt tensioners. For more information, see page 39 .

You will also see the symbol “  ,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

On vehicles with collision mitigation braking system (CMBS)

This indicator will also alert you to the seat belt e-pretensioners.





Instrument Panel Indicators




Deflation Warning System Indicator


This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

This indicator has two functions:

1. If it comes on while driving [over 25 km/h (15 mph)], it indicates that one of your vehicle's tyres may be low on pressure.

You will also see the symbol “” or this symbol with a “CHECK TYRE PRESSURE” message on the multi-information display.

If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, check which tyre has lost pressure, and determine the cause. If it is because of a flat tyre, replace the flat tyre with the compact spare (if equipped) (see page 512) or use the tyre repair kit (if equipped) (see page 519). Then have the flat tyre repaired as soon as possible. If two or more tyres are underinflated, call a professional towing service (see page 562). This indicator may come on unexpectedly due to the condition of your tyres or road surfaces. For more information, see page 404.

2. If this indicator begins to flash, there is a problem with the deflation warning system. You will also see the symbol “” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. The indicator continues to flash for a while (approximately 1 minute), then stays on. If this happens, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible. For more information, see page 404.





Instrument Panel Indicators



Immobilizer System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It will go off if you have inserted a properly coded ignition key. If it is not a properly coded key, the indicator will blink and the engine's fuel system will be disabled (see page 162).




Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator (For some types)

This indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and goes off after the engine starts. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the electric power steering system.

If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. The indicator will stay on, but should go off after driving a short distance. If it does not go off, or comes back on again while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the indicator on, the EPS may be turned off, making the vehicle harder to steer.

If you turn the steering wheel to the full left or right position repeatedly while stopping or driving at very low speed, you may feel slightly harder steering in order to prevent damage to the steering system caused by overheating. This may also happen if you hold the steering wheel on the full left or right position for a while.

You will also see the symbol “  ” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.





Instrument Panel Indicators



Rear Fog Light Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the rear fog light. See page 150 for information on operating the rear fog light.



Front Fog Light Indicator (For some types)

This indicator comes on when you turn on the front fog lights. See page 151 for information on operating the front fog lights.



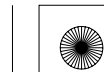
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position.

If it comes on and stays on at any other time, there is a problem with the VSA system. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. See page 402 for more information on the VSA system.

This indicator may also come on if there is a problem with the trailer stability assist function (see page 419).

You will also see the symbol “**VSA**,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 402).





Instrument Panel Indicators



VSA Activation Indicator

This indicator has four functions:

1. It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system.
2. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 402).
3. It flashes when trailer stability assist is activating (see page 419).

4. It comes on along with the VSA system indicator if there is a problem with the VSA system. You will also see the symbol “**VSA**,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 402).

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position. For more information, see page 402 .



Cruise Main Indicator

If equipped

This indicator comes on when you turn on the cruise control system by pressing the CRUISE button on the steering wheel (see page 298).



Cruise Control Indicator

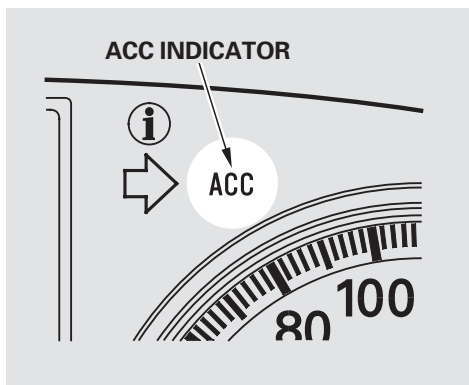
If equipped

This indicator comes on when you set the cruise control. See page 298 for information on operating the cruise control.





Instrument Panel Indicators



ACC **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)**

If equipped

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If the indicator comes on amber, there is a problem with the ACC system. You will also see the symbol “**ACC**” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. Take your vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. For more information, see page 301 .

ACC **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green)**

If equipped

When you push the ACC button on the steering wheel, this indicator comes on green. You will also see “ACC” on the multi-information display (see page 308).

AFS **Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) Indicator (For some types)**

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the adaptive front lighting system (AFS) by pressing the AFS off switch (see page 154).

This indicator blinks when there is a problem with the AFS system.

You will also see the symbol “**AFS**” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.





Instrument Panel Indicators

If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position, and restart the engine. If the indicator blinks again, take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. For more information, see page 153 .

CMBS

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator

On vehicle with the adaptive cruise control system

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It also comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) by pressing the CMBS off switch (see page 396).

The CMBS indicator also comes on if dirt or other debris blocks the radar sensor in the front grille. When you clean the radar sensor, the indicator should go off the next time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the CMBS. You will also see the symbol “ **CMBS** ” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. If this happens, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have it checked. For more information, see page 397 . When this indicator is on, the CMBS is not working.





Instrument Panel Indicators



Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If an indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see pages 469 and 471). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the hazard warning button, both turn signal indicators and all turn signals on the outside of the vehicle will flash.

Your vehicle has the one-push turn signal feature to signal a lane change easily (see page 148).






High Beam Indicator

This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. For more information, see page 149.



Lights On Indicator

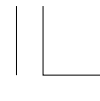
This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the  or  position. If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position without turning off the light switch, this indicator will remain on. A reminder chime will also sound when you open the driver's door and remove the key from the ignition switch.

You will also see the symbol , or this symbol with a "HEADLIGHTS ON" message on the multi-information display (see page 148).

On vehicles with automatic lighting on feature

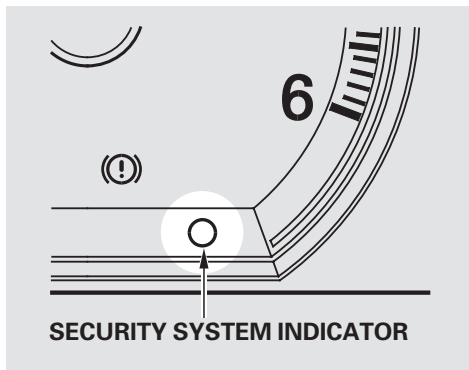
This indicator also comes on when the light switch is in AUTO and the lights turn on automatically.





Instrument Panel Indicators

Security System Indicator (For some types)



This indicator comes on when the security system is set. See page 295 for more information on the security system.



Low Fuel Indicator

This indicator comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon.


On petrol models

When the indicator comes on, there are about 8.6 l (2.3 US gal, 1.89 Imp gal) of fuel remaining in the tank.

On diesel models

When the indicator comes on, there are about 8.1 l (2.14 US gal, 1.78 Imp gal) of fuel remaining in the tank.

When the reading reaches 0 (E), there is a very small amount of fuel in the tank.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “FUEL LOW” (petrol models) or “DIESEL FUEL LOW” (diesel models) message on the multi-information display.

On diesel models

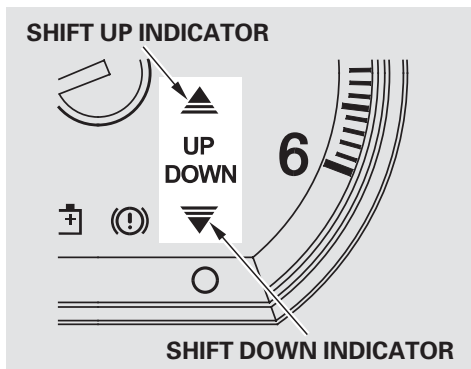
Refer to **Priming the Fuel System** on page 501 if your vehicle runs out of fuel.



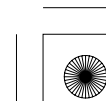


Instrument Panel Indicators

Shift Up/Shift Down Indicators

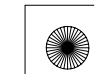
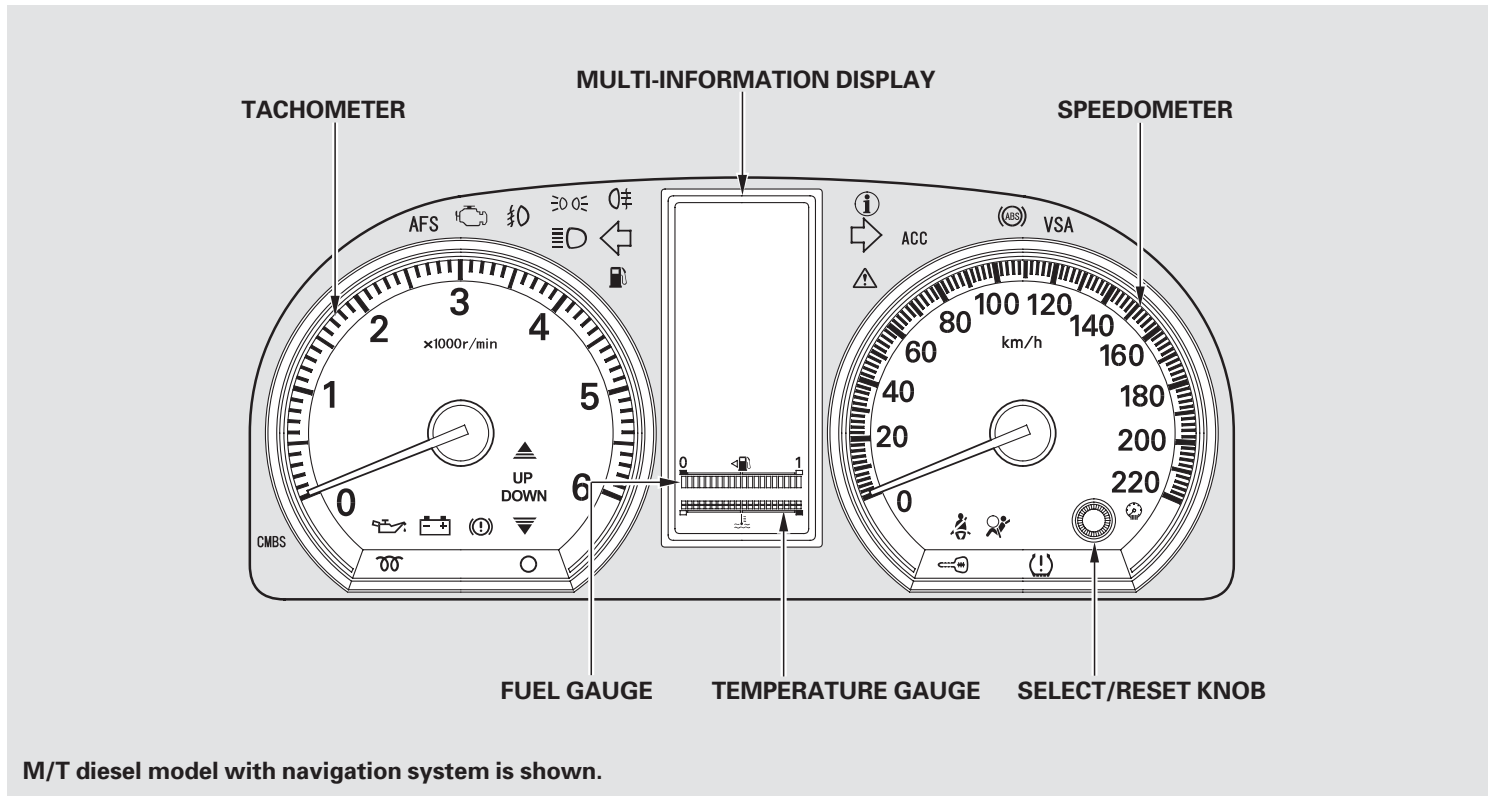


On vehicles with manual transmission except South Africa model
Either the shift up or shift down indication comes on to show you the appropriate time to change a higher or lower gear. For more information, see pages 298 , 305 , and 379 .





Gauges





Gauges

Speedometer

On vehicles with kilometer indication
This shows your speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

On vehicles with mile indication
This shows your speed in miles per hour (mph). The inside scales show the speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

You can set the vehicle speed alarm. For more information, see page 116.

Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). To protect the engine from damage, never drive with the tachometer needle in the red zone.

Temperature Gauge

This shows the temperature of the engine's coolant. During normal operation, the reading should be in the middle of the gauge. In severe driving conditions, such as very hot weather or a long period of uphill driving, the reading may reach near the red mark. If it reaches the red (hot) mark, pull safely to the side of the road. Turn to page 540 on petrol models and page 542 on diesel models for instructions and precautions on checking the engine cooling system.

Fuel Gauge

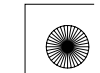
This shows how much fuel you have. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount.

NOTICE

On petrol models only
Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

NOTICE

On diesel models only
The malfunction indicator lamp or the PGM-FI indicator will come on when you restart the engine after your vehicle has run out of fuel.





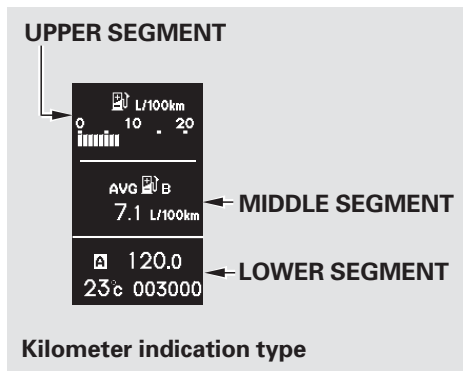
Multi-Information Display

The multi-information display between the speedometer and tachometer on the instrument panel displays various information and symbols/messages when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. Some of the indicators/messages help you operate your vehicle more effectively. Others keep you aware of the vehicle's condition for continued trouble-free driving.

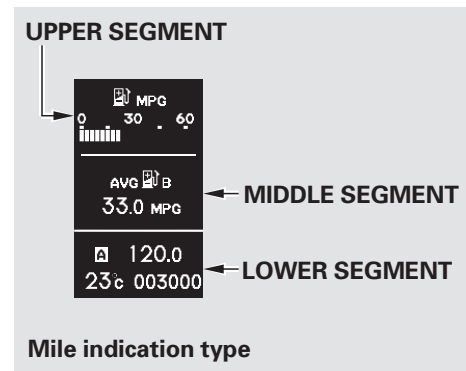
There are two types of symbols/messages: normal display symbols/messages and system warning symbols/messages.

You can select the displayed language and also customize some vehicle control settings to your liking with the multi-information display and the two buttons on the steering wheel (see page 102).

Normal Display Symbols/ Messages



The multi-information display consists of an upper segment, a middle segment and a lower segment. Each segment can display two lines of messages.



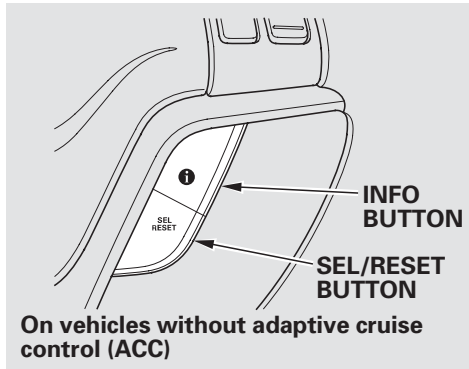
In normal display mode, the upper and middle segments display the trip computer and the rear seat belt use, and the lower segment displays the odometer, trip meter, and outside temperature.

CONTINUED

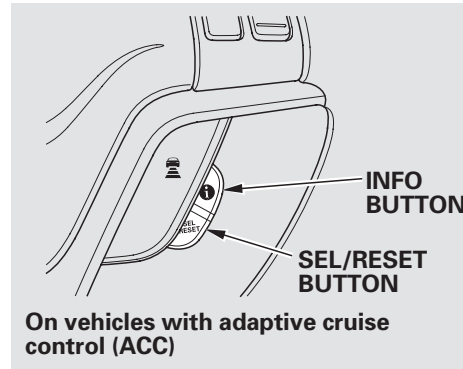




Multi-Information Display



The trip computer consists of the instant fuel economy, the average fuel economy, the estimated distance, the elapsed time, and the average speed. The upper segment always displays one of the trip computer items as a primary display, and the middle segment shows your last selection when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. You can customize it to your preference



(see page 132).

In the middle segment, the rear seat belt use is also displayed.

In the default setting, the upper display shows the instant fuel economy when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. The remaining trip computer items are displayed in the middle segment.

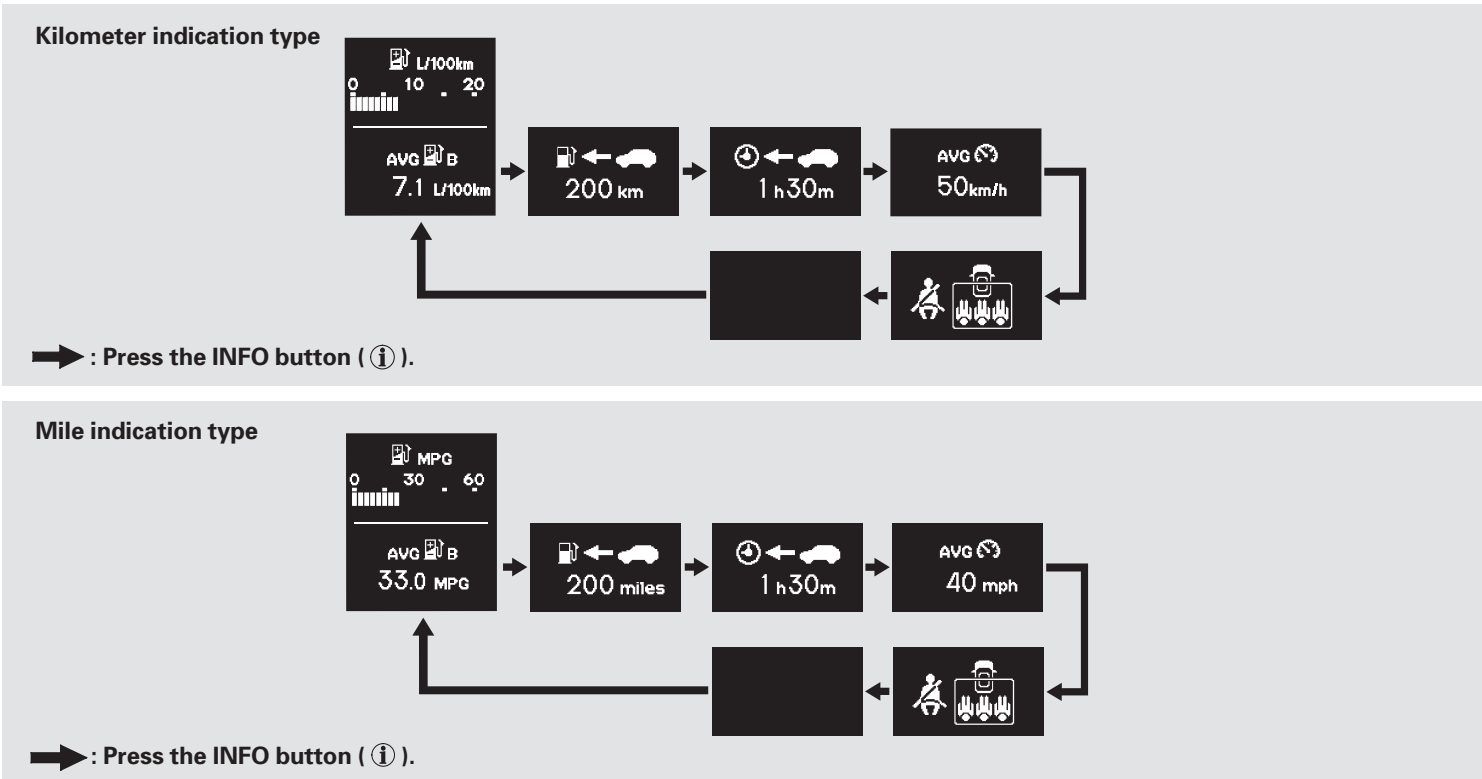
Each time you press the INFO button (i), the trip computer changes from the average fuel economy to the estimated distance to the elapsed time to the average speed and then to the rear seat belt use as shown on the next page.

If there is any system warning, system warning symbol(s) will be shown on the multi-information display following the speed alarm setting. The system warning symbol/message that has the highest priority will be displayed first when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

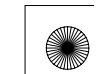




Multi-Information Display



If you select the blank display in the middle segment, the upper display will also change to the blank display.





Multi-Information Display

Trip Computer

Indicators in the trip computer show:

Instant Fuel Economy

Kilometer indication type

: Your vehicle's instant fuel economy is shown in l/100 km.

Mile indication type

: Your vehicle's instant fuel economy is shown in mpg.

Diesel models

The display may show an instant fuel economy reading higher than in normal driving while the particulate matter (PM) is burnt and removed from the diesel particulate filter (DPF). For more information, see page 577.

Range

: The estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

This distance is estimated from the fuel economy you have achieved over the last few kilometers (miles), so it will vary with changes in speed, traffic condition, etc.

Elapsed Time

: The time travelled since you last turned the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

Average Vehicle Speed

: The average speed you are travelling is displayed in kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph) depending on the model.

Average Fuel Economy

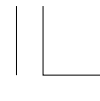
: Your vehicle's average fuel economy since you last reset the trip computer A.

: Your vehicle's average fuel economy since you last reset the trip computer B.

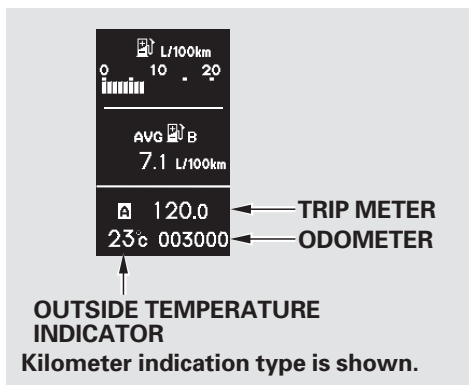
The average fuel economy is updated once every 10 seconds. When you reset a trip meter, the average fuel economy for that trip meter also resets. To reset the values in the trip computer, press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to "0.0."

In the customizing mode, you can set Trip A and average fuel economy A to reset when you refuel your vehicle (see page 134).





Multi-Information Display



The lower segment always shows the odometer, trip meter and the outside temperature in the normal display mode.

Odometer

The odometer shows the total number of kilometers or miles your vehicle has been driven.

Trip Meter

This meter shows the number of kilometers or miles driven since you last reset it.

There are two trip meters: trip A and trip B. To switch the display between them, press the SEL/RESET button repeatedly. When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, your last selection is displayed.

Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances.

To reset a trip meter, display it, and then press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to "0.0."

"AVG FUEL A" or "AVG FUEL B" will be displayed when the average fuel economy is selected in the upper segment, depending on which trip meter (trip A or trip B) is displayed in the lower segment.

CONTINUED





Multi-Information Display

Outside Temperature Indicator


This indicator displays the outside temperature in degrees Celsius.

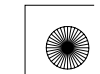
The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Therefore, the temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your speed is under 30 km/h (19 mph).

The sensor delays the display update until it reaches the correct outside temperature. This may take several minutes.

If the outside temperature is incorrectly displayed, you can adjust it by up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ warmer or cooler (see page 130).

NOTE: The temperature must be stabilized before doing this procedure.

In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing could mean that ice is forming on the road surface. You will also see a caution symbol “” on the multi-information display.





Multi-Information Display

System Warning Symbols

If there is a problem with your vehicle, for example, the engine oil level is low or a door is not fully closed, the multi-information display will show you the problem. It does this by interrupting the current display with one or more symbols/messages. Most of the symbols/messages are displayed for about 5 seconds, and then the current display returns. Some symbols/messages stay on until the problem is corrected.

The multi-information display will also show you some vehicle conditions such as the adaptive cruise control (ACC) settings, the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS), the speed alarm settings, etc.

When your vehicle is new, the multi-information display shows the system warning symbols without the messages. This is the default setting when the vehicle leaves the factory. You can customize this setting to see the system warning symbols with messages (see page 129). Some symbols such as the low outside temperature, rear seat belt reminder indicator, etc., do not come with a message.

In this section, system symbols without messages are used in almost all examples.

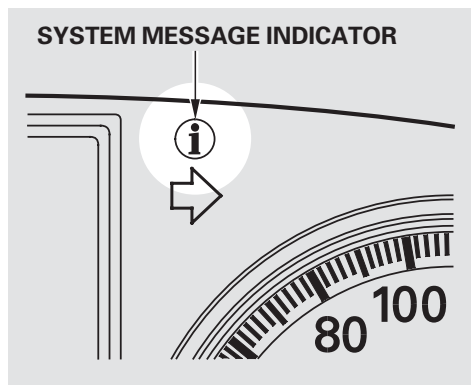
Usually, the symbols/messages are shown in the upper and middle segments. If the adaptive cruise control (ACC) or the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) is selected, only the symbols are displayed in the middle segment and the ACC or CMBS information is displayed in the upper segment.

CONTINUED





Multi-Information Display



These symbols/messages also trigger the appropriate indicator(s) on the instrument panel and cause the system message indicator to come on. The system message indicator does not go off until the problem(s) are corrected.

You will also hear a beep when the system warning symbol comes on for the first time.

If there are several symbols/messages, each one is displayed for about 5 seconds.

To switch the symbol(s)/message(s) before 5 seconds have elapsed, or to select the normal display, press the INFO (i) button on the steering wheel repeatedly.

You can see the symbol(s)/message(s) again by pressing the INFO (i) button repeatedly if the system message indicator remains lit on the instrument panel.















Even if you switch the display from the symbol/message to the normal display, some important symbols/messages come on again at regular intervals until the problem is corrected.

The following pages describe each system warning symbol/message that can be displayed. Here is a list of all symbols:





Multi-Information Display






	<i>Petrol models</i> See page 548.		See page 551.		See page 389.
	<i>Diesel models</i> See page 549.		See page 91.		See page 212.
	See page 544.		See page 547.		See page 454.
	See page 545.		See page 550.		See page 381.
	See page 546.		See page 39.		See page 402.






CONTINUED








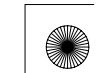


Multi-Information Display

	See page 26.
	See page 26.
	See page 27.
	See pages 90 and 404.
	See pages 90 and 405.










	See page 153.
	See pages 307 and 317.
	See pages 307 and 317.
	See pages 302, 317 and 394.
	See pages 396 and 397.

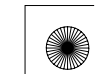
	See page 393.
	See page 319.
	See page 578.
	See page 579.
	See page 17.





Multi-Information Display

	See page 420.		See page 149.
	See page 96.		See page 116.
	See page 163.		See page 116.
	See page 462.		<i>Petrol models</i> See page 97.
	See page 106.		<i>Diesel models</i> See page 97.





Multi-Information Display

Customized Settings

You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to suit your needs. The table shows the settings you can customize.

Group Setup	Menu Item		Description	Setting Option	Page
SPEED ALARM (P.116)	SPEED ALARM 1 (ON/OFF, Setting)		Sets the speed alarm on and changes the alarm speed setting.	ON/OFF* ² over 5 km/h (mph) with 5 km/h (mph) steps	116
	SPEED ALARM 2 (ON/OFF, Setting)				
	SPEED ALARM 1 (ON/OFF)* ¹		Sets the speed alarm on.	ON/OFF* ²	119
	SPEED ALARM 2 (ON/OFF)* ¹				
DEFLATION WARNING SYSTEM INITIALISATION (P.407)			Initialises the deflation warning system.	CANCEL* ² OK	407
CHG SETTING (P.122)	ACC SETUP* ⁴	PRE-RUNNING CAR DETECT BEEP	Sets the beep to sound when the system detects a vehicle ahead of you.	ON* ² /OFF	125
		ACC DISPLAY SPEED UNIT	Changes the displayed measurement with the ACC on.	km/h* ³ mph* ³	126

- * 1 : Setting is available while driving.
- * 2 : Factory default setting
- * 3 : Your last selection is the default setting.
- * 4 : On vehicles with adaptive cruise control (ACC)

112 Instruments and Controls





Multi-Information Display

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option	Page	
CHG SETTING (P.122)	METER SETUP	WARNING MESSAGE	Switches warning message to be displayed or not.	ON/OFF*	129
		ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY	Changes the outside temperature reading above or below its current reading.	up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ 0°C^*	130
		PRIMARY DISP SELECTION	Changes the primary displayed trip computer item in the upper segment.	Instant fuel economy*, Average fuel economy, Elapsed time, Range, Average speed	132
		TRIP A RESET WITH REFUEL	Causes trip meter A and the average fuel economy A to reset when you refuel.	ON/OFF*	134
		ELAPSED TIME RESET	Selects the setting to reset the elapsed time of your current trip.	IGN OFF*, TRIP A, TRIP B	135
LANGUAGE (P.138)		Changes the language used in the display.	ENGLISH*, ITALIAN, SPANISH, GERMAN, FRENCH, PORTUGUESE	138	
DEFAULT ALL (P.139)		Returns all settings to the factory default.	CANCEL OK	139	

* : Factory default setting

CONTINUED

Instruments and Controls **113**

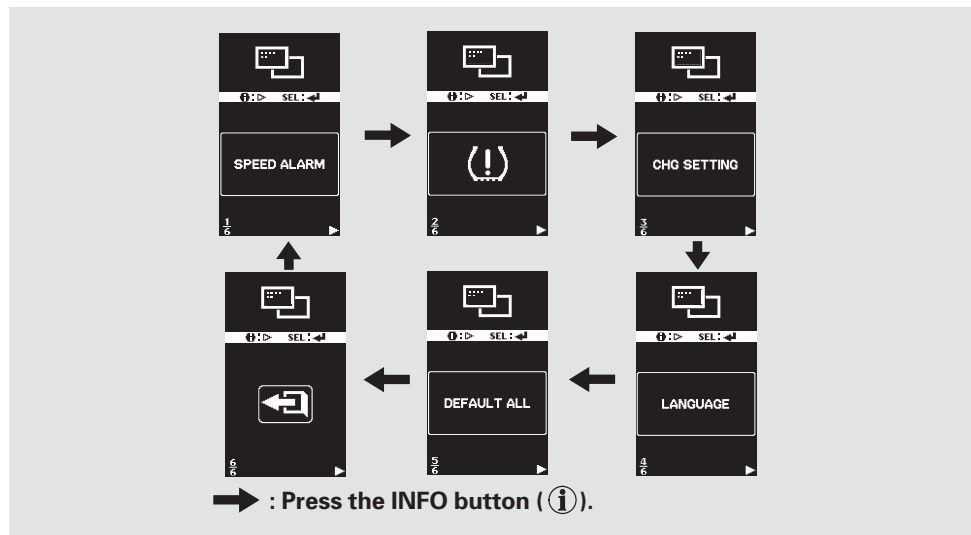




Multi-Information Display

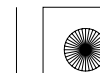
To enter the customizing mode, the vehicle must be stopped with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position and the parking brake set on vehicles with manual transmission. If your vehicle has the automatic transmission, the shift lever should be in Park. (Exceptionally, this condition is not applied on some speed alarm settings.) Press and hold the INFO button (i) on the steering wheel for about 3 seconds while the multi-information display is in its normal display. Here are the settings you can customize.

- **SPEED ALARM:** To set the speed alarm (see page 116).
- **DEFLATION WARNING SYSTEM INITIALISATION:** To initialise the deflation warning system (see pages 121 and 407).



- **CHG SETTING:** To change vehicle control settings (see page 122).
- **LANGUAGE:** To select language (see page 138).

- **DEFAULT ALL:** To return to the default settings (see page 139).
- Each time you press the INFO button, the display changes as shown above.






Multi-Information Display

You can also select the specified speed alarm while driving. If you set the alarm to the specified vehicle speed while driving, select “SPEED ALARM,” and refer to page 119 .

If you want to change any vehicle control settings, select “CHG SETTING,” and follow the instructions on page 122 .

If you want the settings as they were when the vehicle left the factory, select “DEFAULT ALL,” as described on page 139 .

Use the INFO button () on the steering wheel to see and scroll through the settings, and the SEL/RESET button to enter your selections.

If you do not select any settings on the display after you press the INFO button and the setting menu is displayed, the customizing mode display will return to the normal display after about 10 seconds.



If you try to start driving while customizing the settings, you will see the above display for a few seconds and customizing will be cancelled.

Customizing is also cancelled, if you turn the ignition switch out of the ON (II) position to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position, or release the parking brake (M/T) or move the shift lever out of Park (A/T).

If you select  and press the SEL/RESET button, the normal display is shown again.





Multi-Information Display

Speed Alarm

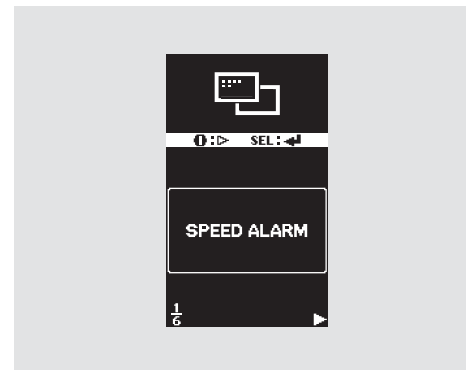
You can access different alarm functions when the vehicle is stopped or while driving. While driving, you can select either of the two speed alarm settings. When your vehicle is stopped, you can customize the setting speed to your preference.



Alarm at vehicle speed 80 km/h

If you set the speed alarm function in the custom settings, you will see this indicator and hear a beep when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.

To set the speed alarm while the vehicle is stopped:



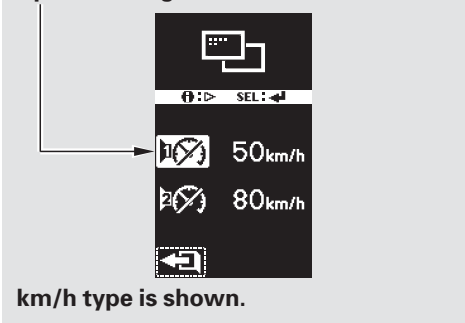
Press and hold the INFO button to enter the customizing mode, then press and release the INFO button repeatedly to select “SPEED ALARM.” While the multi-information display is showing “SPEED ALARM,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting mode.





Multi-Information Display

Speed setting 1 off is selected.

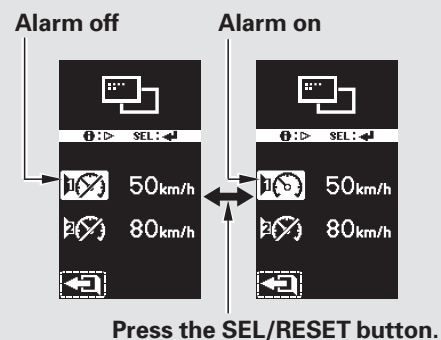


You can set the speed alarm in km/h or mph, depending on models. The two speed selections and the on/off setting icons are displayed.

Speed setting 1: You can set the alarm on or off, and adjust the setting speeds above or below 50 km/h (30 mph).

Speed setting 2: You can set the alarm on or off, and adjust the setting speeds above or below 80 km/h (50 mph).

Each time you press and release the INFO button (i), the selected icon is changed between set 1, 50 km/h (30 mph), and set 2, 80 km/h (50 mph). Then press the INFO button again to exit (SEL/RESET).



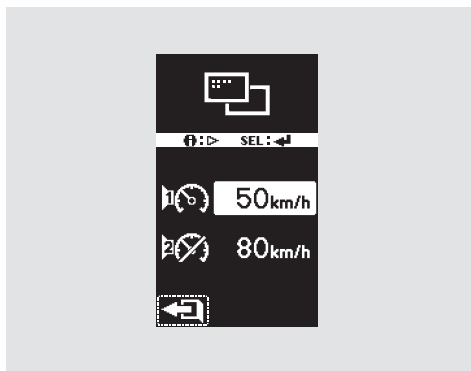
Select either of the setting modes (1 or 2), then select on or off by pressing the SEL/RESET button repeatedly.

CONTINUED

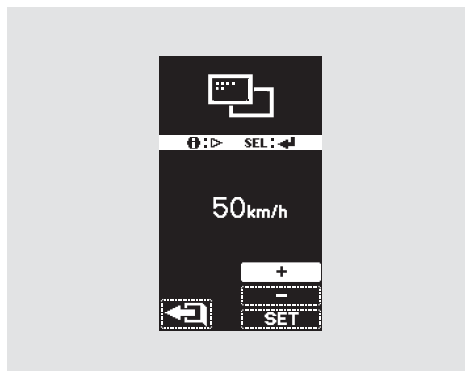




Multi-Information Display



To adjust the setting speed, select either of the setting speeds, then press and release the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the speed setting screen.



The displayed number is the current speed setting. Select either the + or - icon by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button to change the setting value.

Each time you press the SEL/RESET button, the setting speed increases or decreases by 5 km/h (mph). You can set the speed values over 5 km/h (5 mph) with 5 km/h (mph) steps. Always follow the posted speed limit and never drive faster than is safe for the traffic conditions.

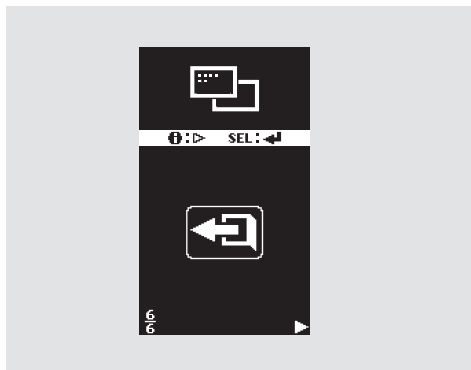
To enter your selection, select the SET icon by pressing the INFO button, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Once you have made your selection, press and release the INFO button to move to the exit mode. Press the SEL/RESET button to enter your setting. If you press the INFO button, the display goes back to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.



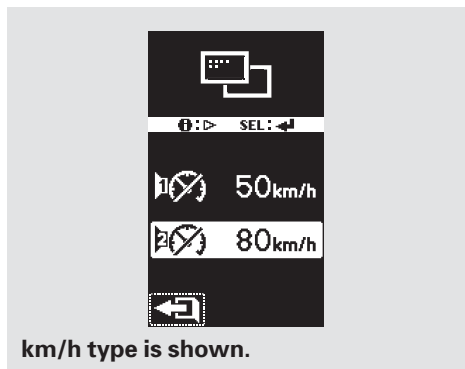


Multi-Information Display



To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode shown above by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the normal display.

To select the alarm speed while driving:



Press the INFO button for about 1 second to switch the display. You will see the speed alarm settings on the multi-information display.

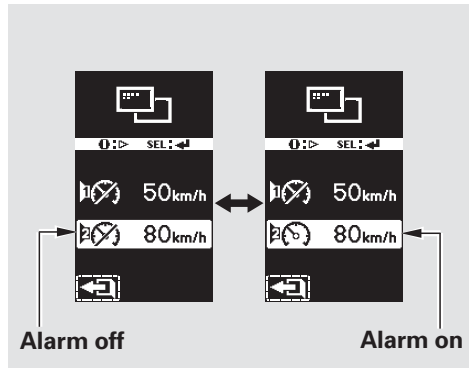
You can select the alarm speed between the two setting speeds: 50 km/h and 80 km/h, or 30 mph and 50 mph, depending on models. Each time you press and release the INFO button, the selected icon is changed between the setting speeds and the exit icon.

CONTINUED



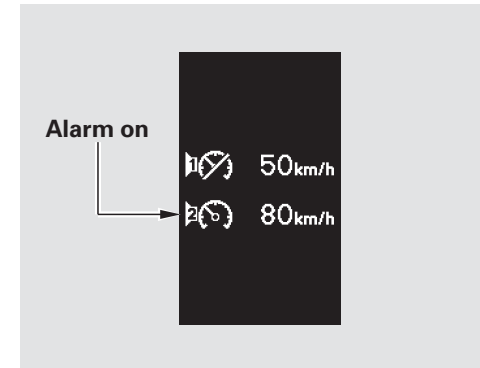


Multi-Information Display



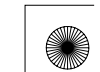
Select the desired setting speed, then press the SEL/RESET button. Each time you press the SEL/RESET button, the selected speed icon switches between on and off.

After your selection, press and release the INFO button to move to the exit mode. Press the SEL/RESET button to enter your setting. If you press the INFO button, the display goes back to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.



After pressing the SEL/RESET button, the display shows your setting for a few seconds, then goes back to the normal display.

If you do not press any button, the display returns to the normal display after about 10 seconds.

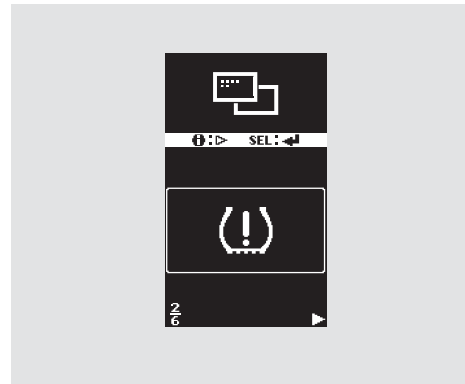




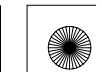
Multi-Information Display

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

Your vehicle has the deflation warning system. If the system detects a possibility of a significantly low tyre pressure, the deflation warning system indicator on the instrument panel comes on and stays on. The multi-information display will also show you the symbol “ (!) ”, or this symbol with a “CHECK TYRE PRESSURE” message.



After replacing a flat tyre with a specified regular tyre, or repairing a flat tyre, you should initialise the deflation warning system to reset it. The system should also be initialised after the air pressures on your vehicle’s tyres are checked. For more information, see page 407 .

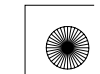
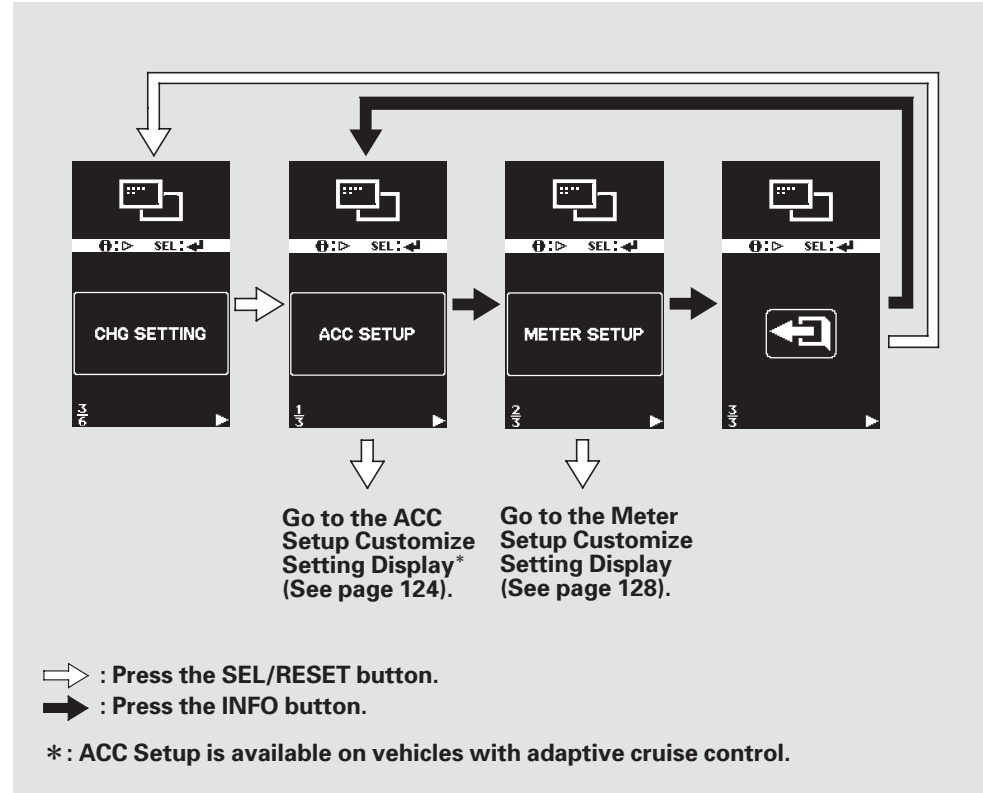


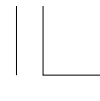


Multi-Information Display

Change Setting

You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to your preference. On vehicles with adaptive cruise control (ACC) system, the change setting consists of the two main items; ACC Setup and Meter Setup, and each main item has some custom settings. On the other vehicles, the change setting consists of all items in the meter setup menu. The following items are the settings you can customize.

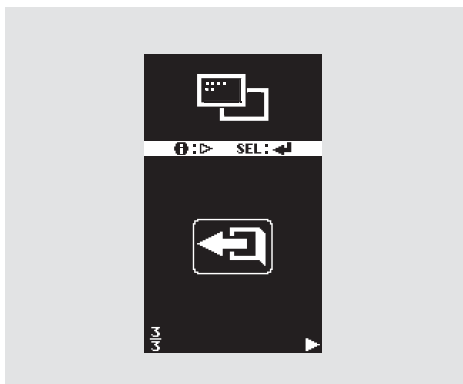





Multi-Information Display

Press and hold the INFO button to enter the customizing mode, then press and release the INFO button repeatedly to select “CHG SETTING.” While the multi-information display is showing “CHG SETTING,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting mode.

Press and release the INFO button repeatedly until you see the setup you want to customize, and press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection. Each time you press the INFO button, the display changes as shown. To customize each setting, follow the procedures described on the following pages.



To exit, select the exit mode shown above by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display will return to the “CHG SETTING” display.

To return to the normal display from “CHG SETTING,” select the  display, then press the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED





Multi-Information Display

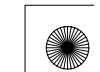
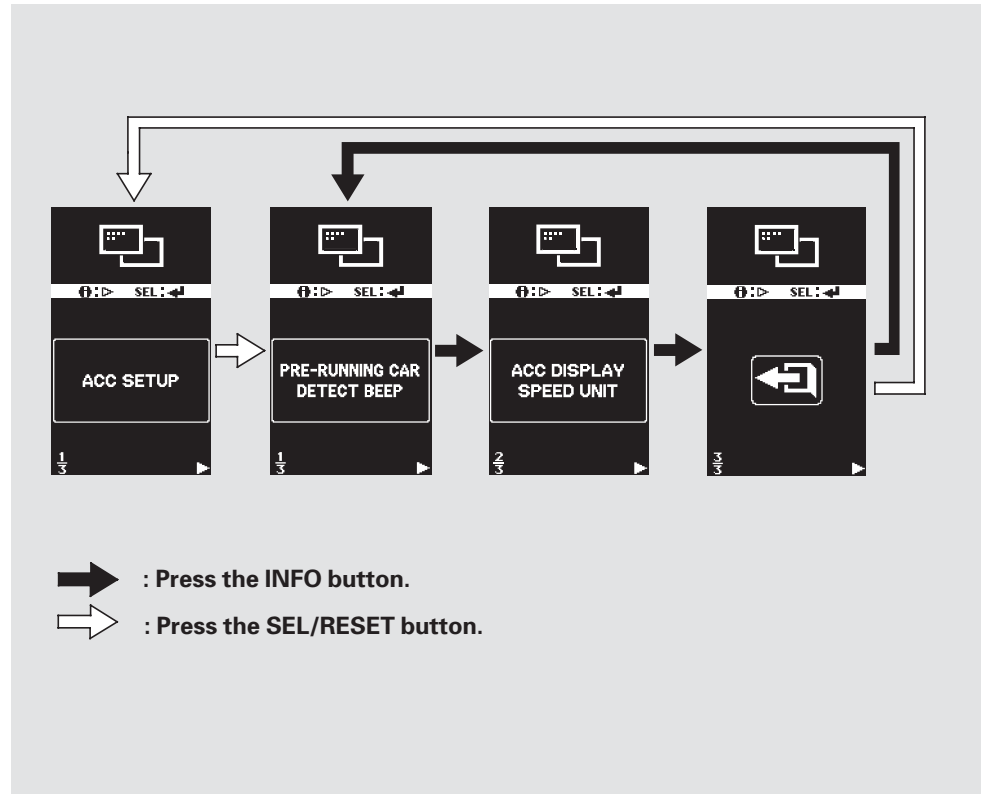
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Setup

On vehicles with adaptive cruise control (ACC)

You can customize either of the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system settings to your preference. Here are the settings you can customize.

ACC Setup

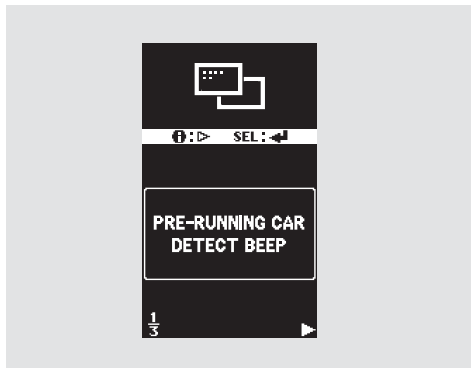
- **PRE-RUNNING CAR DETECT BEEP:** You can turn on or off the alarm when the system detects a vehicle ahead of you (see page 125).
- **ACC DISPLAY SPEED UNIT:** Measurements in the ACC display can be selected; km or miles (see page 126).





Multi-Information Display

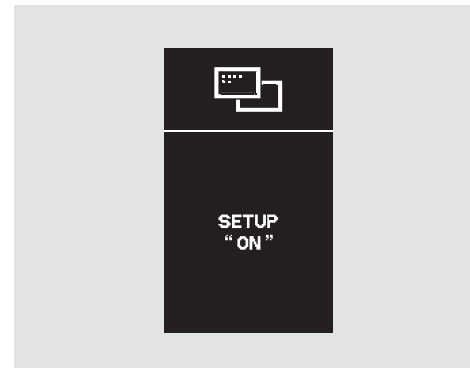
Pre-Running Car Detect BEEP



With this setting on, a beep sounds when the system detects a vehicle ahead of you. You will also hear a beep when the vehicle goes out of the range of your vehicle's radar sensor. While the multi-information display is showing "PRE-RUNNING CAR DETECT BEEP," press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.



You can select "ON" or "OFF". Each time you press the INFO button, the selected mode switches between on and off. Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



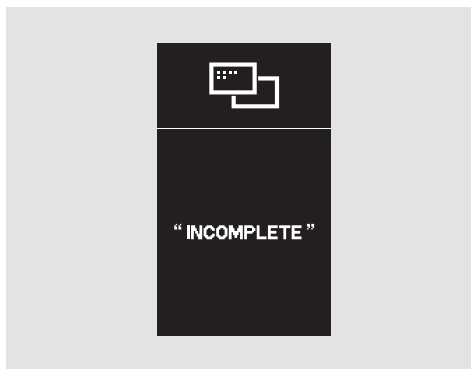
When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows "SETUP ON" for a few seconds, then goes back to the "CHG SETTING" display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

CONTINUED

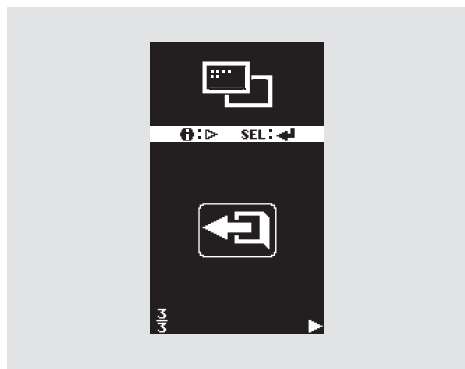




Multi-Information Display



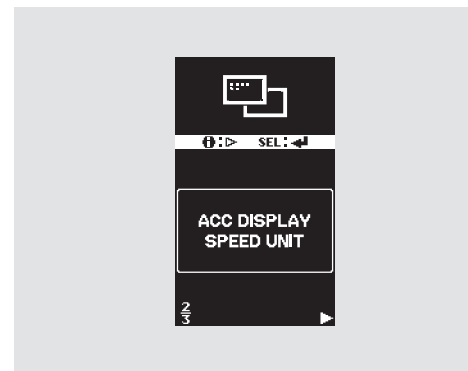
If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.



To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the “PRE-RUNNING CAR DETECT BEEP” display.

To return to the normal display, select the display, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Display Speed Unit



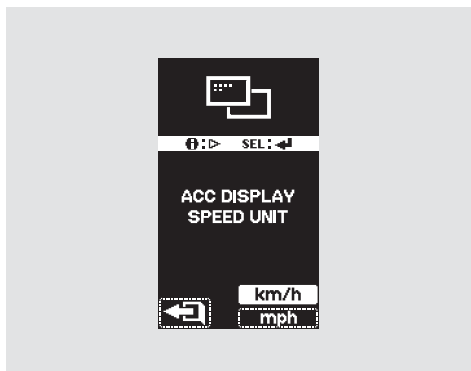
The speed unit measurements of the adaptive cruise control can be selected; km/h or mph.

While the multi-information display is showing “ACC DISPLAY SPEED UNIT,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.

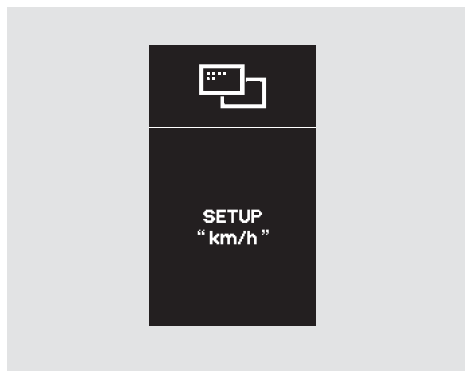




Multi-Information Display




You can select “km/h” or “mph”. The highlighted item is the current setting. Each time you press the INFO button, the selected item changes. Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows “SETUP km/h” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

To exit this mode without changing the current setting, select , and press the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED



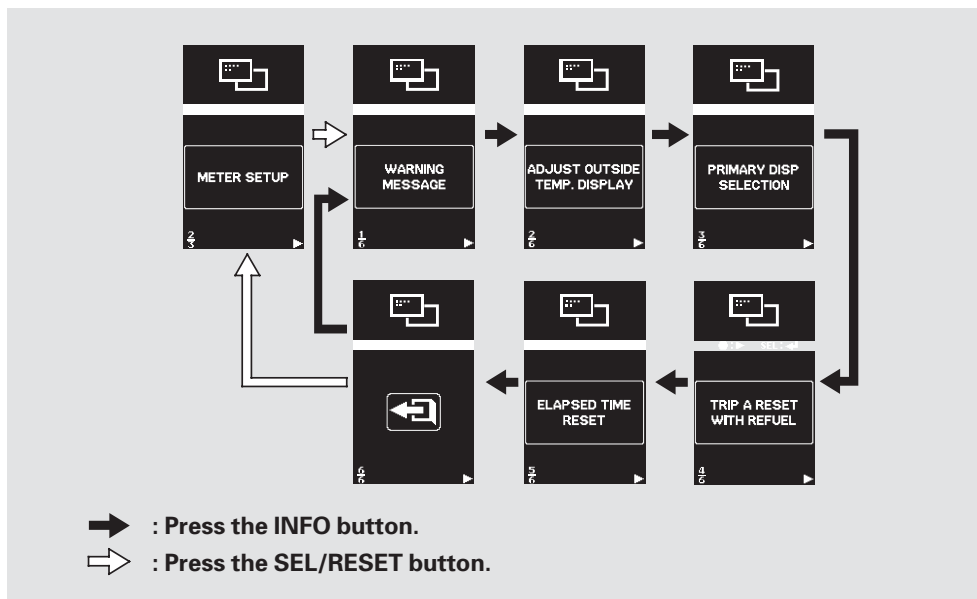


Multi-Information Display

Meter Setup

You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to suit your needs. The following items are the settings you can customize.

- **WARNING MESSAGE:** The warning message is displayed with the symbol or not (see page 129).
- **ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY:** The outside temperature indicator value is adjustable up to + or -3°C (see page 130).
- **PRIMARY DISP SELECTION:** A trip computer item displayed in the upper segment can be selected (see page 132).
- **TRIP A RESET WITH REFUEL:** Average fuel economy for trip meter A can be reset after refueling (see page 134).



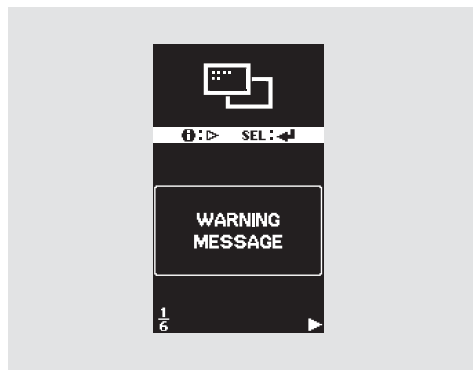
- **ELAPSED TIME RESET:** The elapsed time can be reset when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position or when you reset trip meter A or B (see page 135).





Multi-Information Display

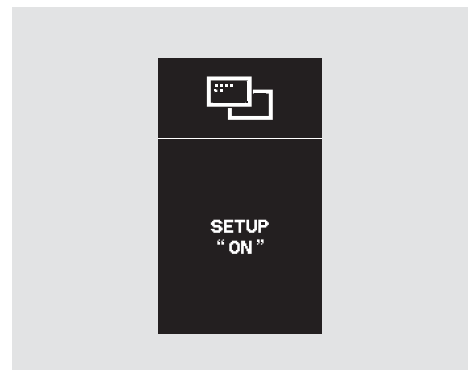
Warning Message



You can see message(s) with the system warning symbol on the multi-information display. While the multi-information display is showing “WARNING MESSAGE,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.



You can select “ON” or “OFF”. Each time you press the INFO button, the selected mode switches between on, off, and exit (←). Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows “SETUP ON” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

CONTINUED





Multi-Information Display



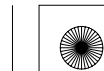
If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button (see page 123). The display goes back to the “WARNING MESSAGE” display.

To return to the normal display, select the  display, then press the SEL/RESET button.

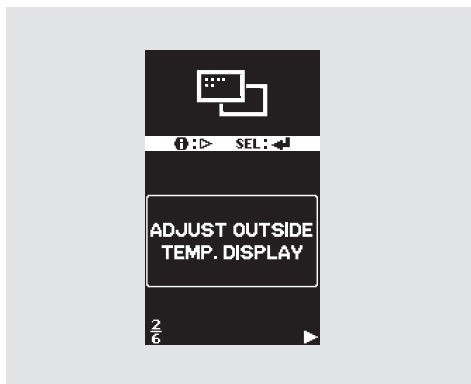
Outside Temperature Display Adjustment

If you find that the temperature reading is always a few degrees below or above the actual temperature, adjust it as described in the following section.

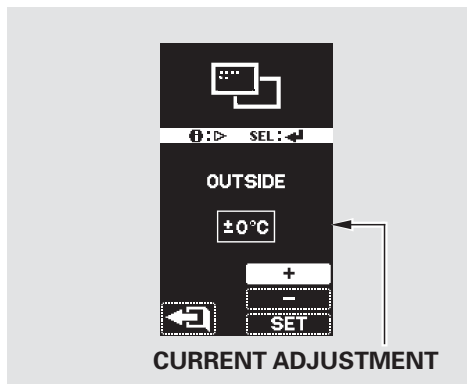




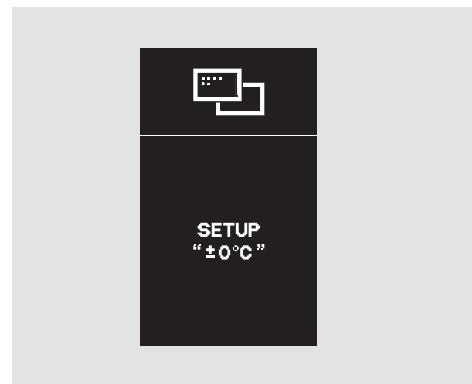
Multi-Information Display



While the multi-information display is showing “ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.



The highlighted number is the current adjustment above or below the outside temperature. Select either + or - icon by pressing the INFO button repeatedly then press the SEL/RESET button to change the setting value. You can select the value between 0, +1, +2, +3, and 0, -1, -2, -3. To enter your selection, select the SET icon by pressing the INFO button, then press the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows “SETUP ±0°C” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

CONTINUED





Multi-Information Display

If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the normal display.

Primary Display Selection


You can select a trip computer item displayed in the upper segment. The trip computer consists of the instant fuel economy, the average fuel economy, the estimated distance, the elapsed time, and the average speed. The upper segment always displays one of the trip computer items as a primary display when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. This selected item in the upper segment does not switch even if you press the INFO button. For more information of each trip computer items, see page 104.

Here are the settings you can customize:

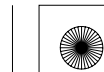
 : Instant fuel economy

 : Estimated distance

 : Average fuel economy

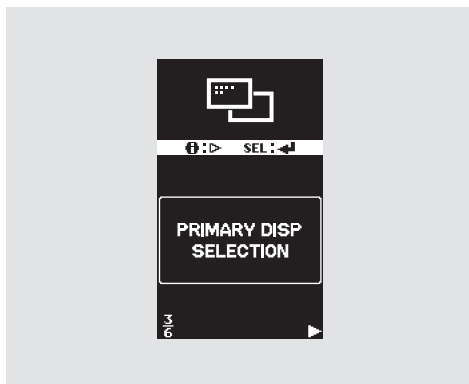
 : Time travelled since you last turned the ignition switch to the ON (II) position

 : Average speed

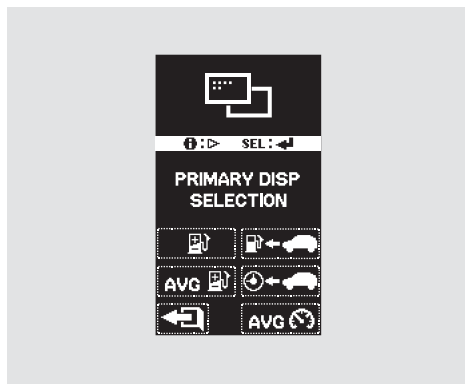




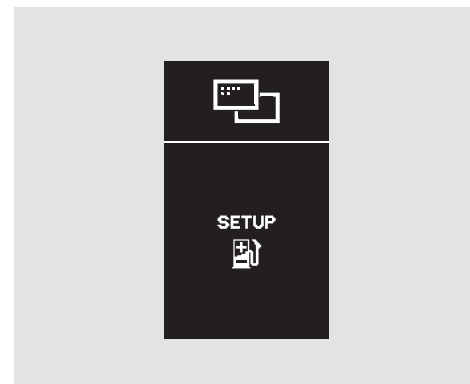
Multi-Information Display



While the multi-information display is showing “PRIMARY DISP SELECTION,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.



You can select each trip computer symbol. Each time you press the INFO button, the selected symbol switches between them. Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows the appropriate symbol with a “SETUP” message for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

CONTINUED



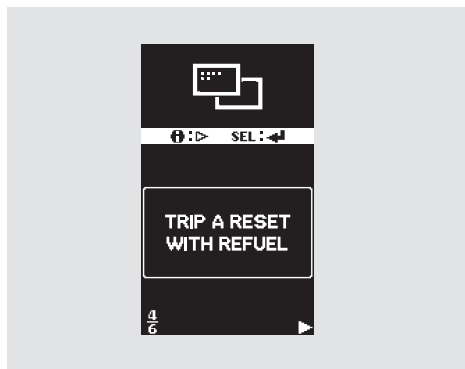


Multi-Information Display

If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

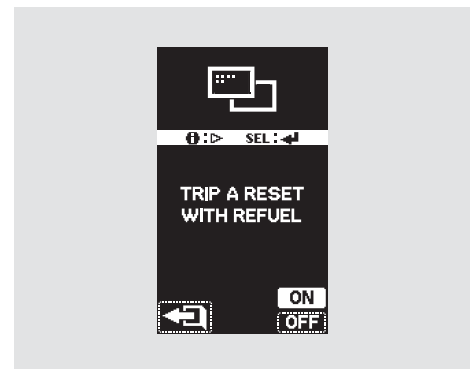
If you select  and press the SEL/RESET button, the normal display is shown again.


Trip A Reset With Refuel



To cause the trip meter A and the average fuel economy for trip A to reset every time you refuel your vehicle, adjust it as follows.

While the multi-information display is showing “TRIP A RESET WITH REFUEL,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.

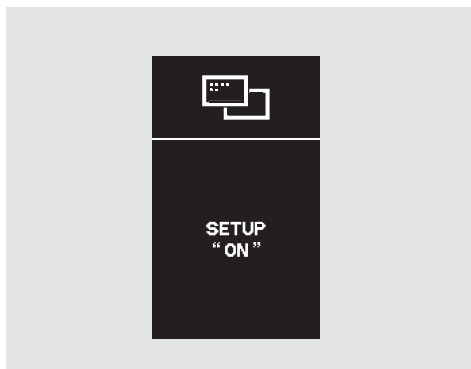


You can select “ON” or “OFF”. Each time you press the INFO button, the selected mode switches between on, off, and exit (). Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.





Multi-Information Display

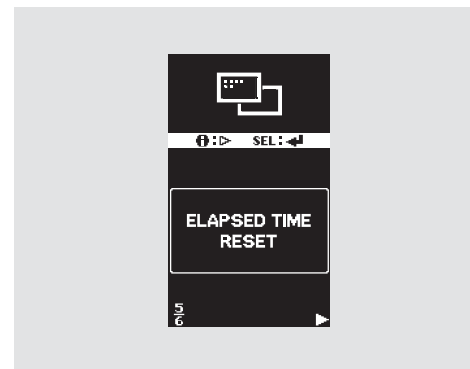


When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows “SETUP ON” or “SETUP OFF” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display will return to the normal display.

Elapsed Time Reset



To cause the elapsed time to reset every time you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position or reset trip meter A or B, adjust it as described as follows.

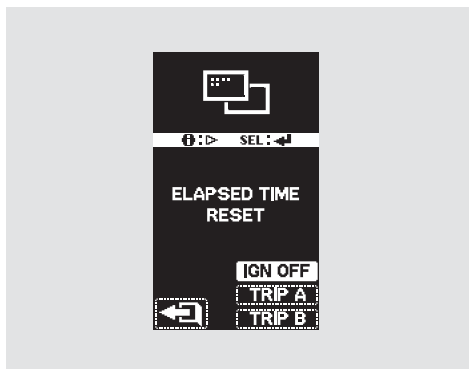
While the multi-information display is showing “ELAPSED TIME RESET,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.

CONTINUED





Multi-Information Display

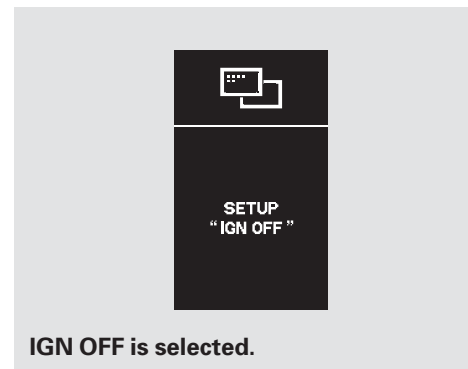


You can select “IGN OFF,” “TRIP A,” or “TRIP B”. Each time you press the INFO button, the selected mode switches between them and exit (←). Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

IGN OFF: The elapsed time is reset when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

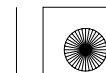
TRIP A: The elapsed time is reset when you reset trip meter A.

TRIP B: The elapsed time is reset when you reset trip meter B.



IGN OFF is selected.

When your selection is successfully completed, the display shows the appropriate setting; “SETUP IGN OFF,” “SETUP TRIP A,” or “SETUP TRIP B” for a few seconds, then goes back to the “CHG SETTING” display. Press the SEL/RESET button, then press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

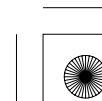
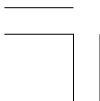




Multi-Information Display

If you fail to enter your selection, you will see “INCOMPLETE” on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.

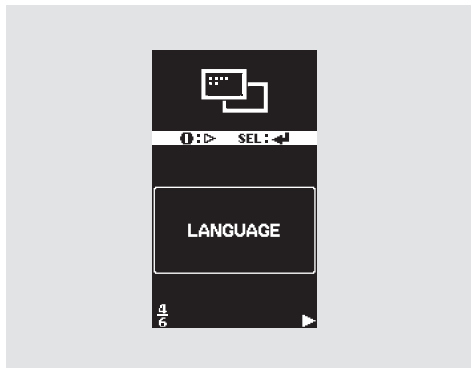
To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the normal display.



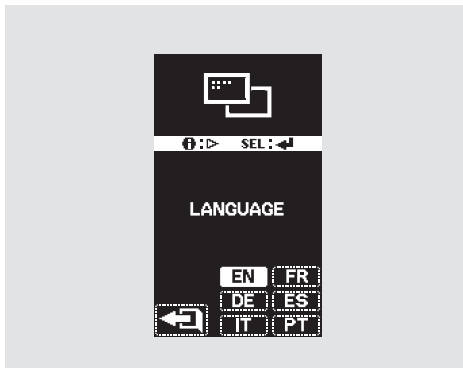


Multi-Information Display

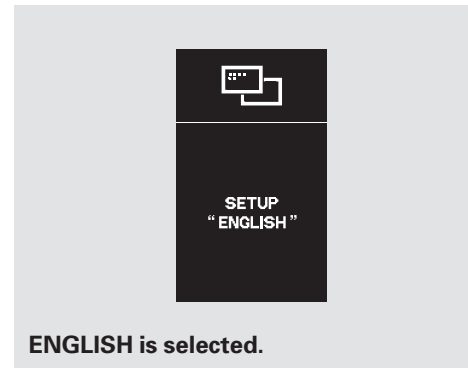
Selecting Language



Press and hold the INFO button to enter the customizing mode, then press and release the INFO button to select “LANGUAGE.” While the multi-information display is showing “LANGUAGE,” press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes to the setting display.

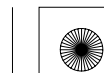


You can select any of the following languages: English, French, German, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese. Press and release the INFO button to select the language, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter the selection.



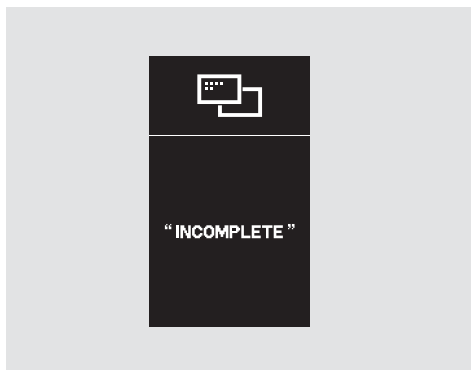
ENGLISH is selected.

When the language selection is successfully completed, the display changes to the screen shown above for a few seconds, then goes back to the “LANGUAGE” display. Press the INFO button repeatedly to select another customizing mode.

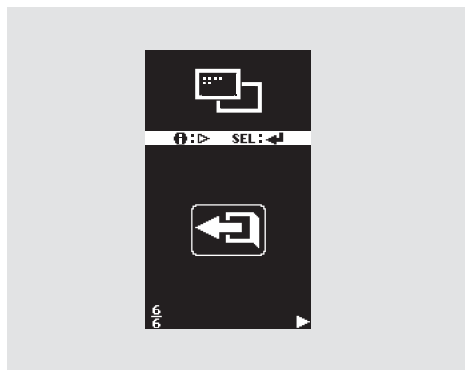




Multi-Information Display

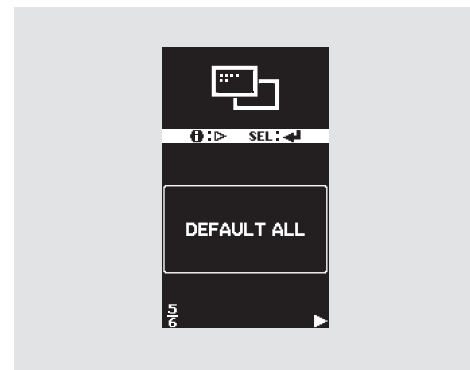


If you fail to set the language setting, you will see "INCOMPLETE" on the display for a few seconds. The display returns to the setting mode. Repeat the setup.



To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode shown above by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the normal display.

Default Settings



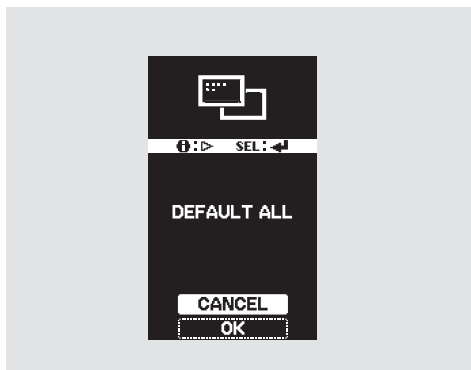
If you want to set the customizable vehicle control settings to the default setting, press the INFO button on the steering wheel repeatedly until "DEFAULT ALL" is displayed, then press the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED





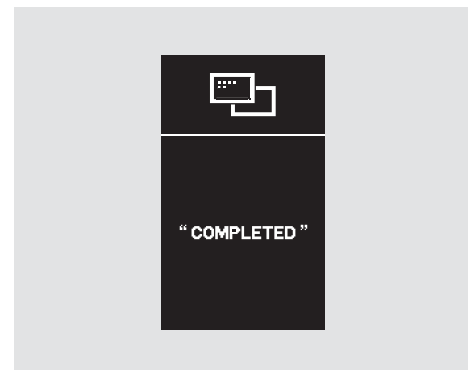
Multi-Information Display



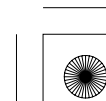
The display shows the selectable items. If you want to cancel “DEFAULT ALL,” select “CANCEL” by pressing the INFO button, then press and hold the SEL/RESET button for about 3 seconds to set. The display goes back to the normal display.



To set the default settings, select “OK” by pressing the INFO button, then press and hold the SEL/RESET button for about 3 seconds to set.

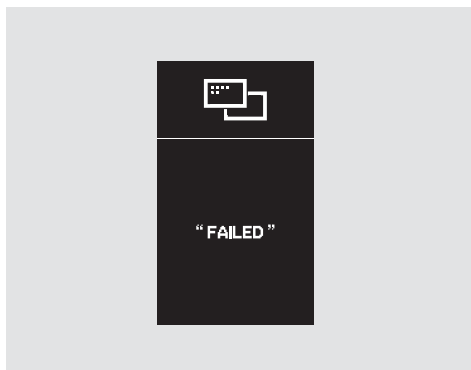


After the DEFAULT ALL operation is completed, you will see the above display for a few seconds, then the display switches to the language setting mode.

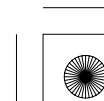
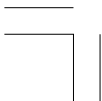




Multi-Information Display

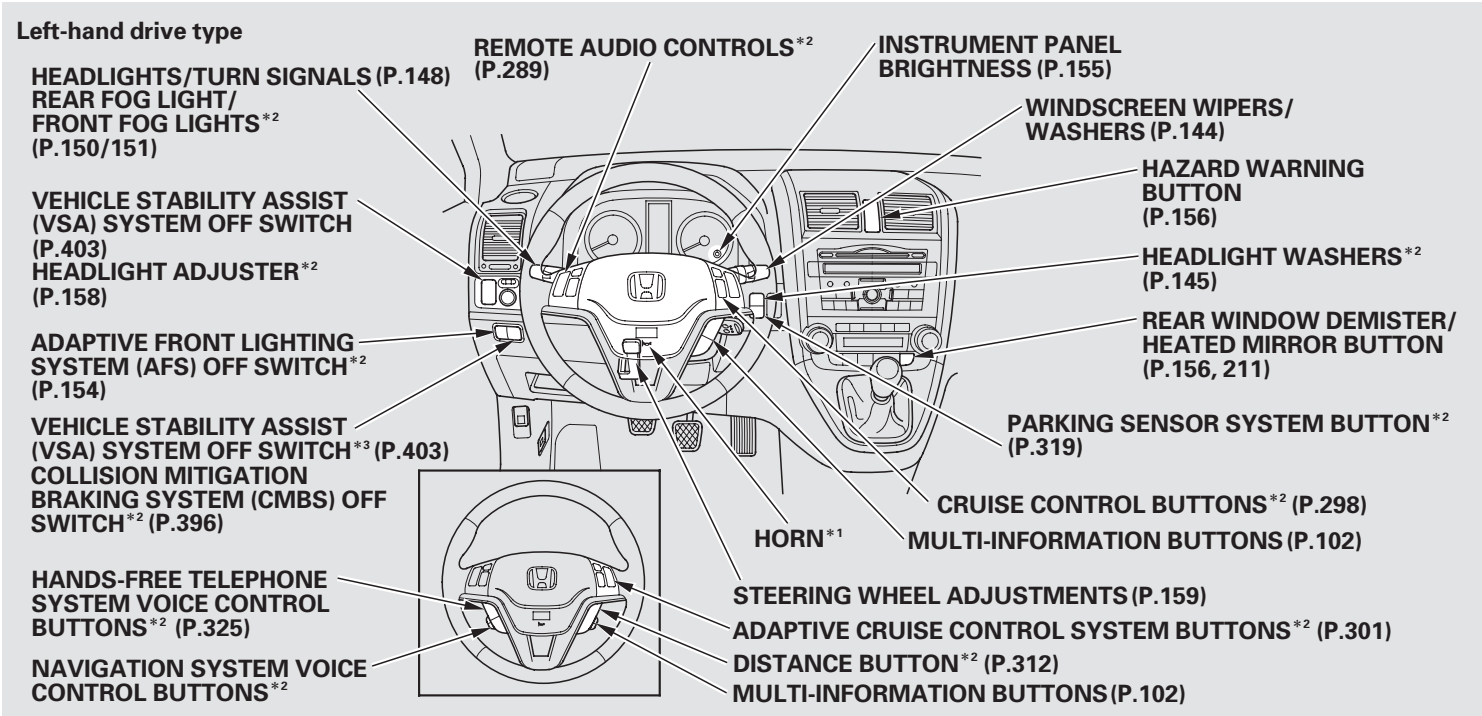


If the DEFAULT ALL operation is not successful, you will see the above display for a few seconds, then the display goes back to the setting display.





Controls Near the Steering Wheel

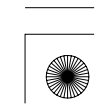
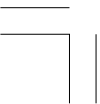


* 1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

* 2 : If equipped

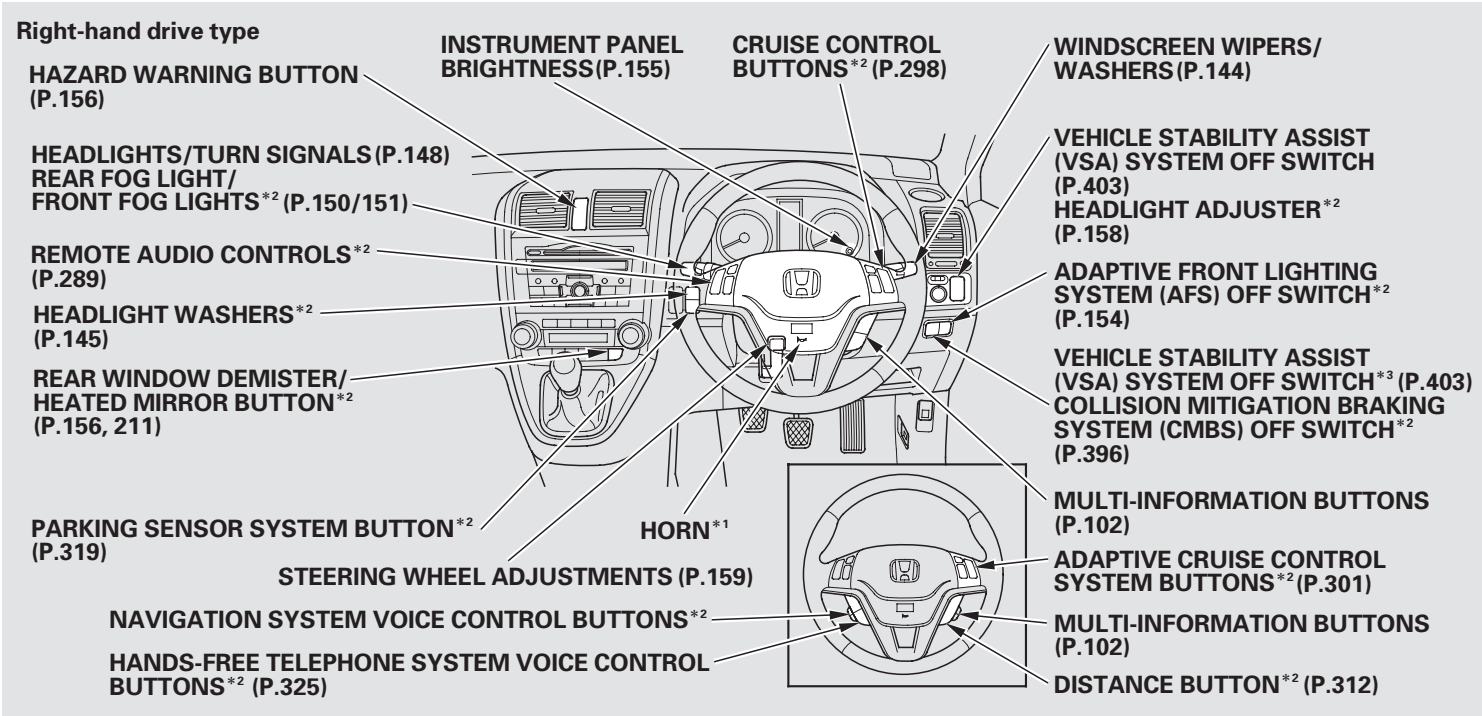
* 3 : On vehicles with headlight adjuster

142 Instruments and Controls





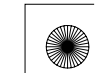
Controls Near the Steering Wheel



* 1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

* 2 : If equipped

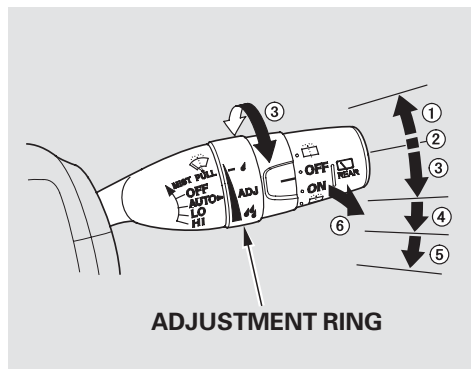
* 3 : On vehicles with headlight adjuster





Windscreen Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Wipers



1. MIST
2. OFF
3. INT – Intermittent (AUTO*)
4. LO – Low speed
5. HI – High speed
6. Windscreen washers

* : On vehicles with automatic intermittent wipers, see page 146 .

Push the lever up or down to select a position.


MIST – The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

OFF – The wipers are not activated.

INT – The wipers operate every few seconds.

On some types

The length of the wiper interval is varied automatically according to the vehicle's speed.

Vary the delay by turning the adjustment ring. If you turn it to the shortest delay ( position), the wipers change to low speed operation when the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

While the vehicle is stopped and in gear, the wipers sweep the windscreen whenever you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

LO – The wipers run at low speed.

HI – The wipers run at high speed.





Windscreen Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Washer – Pull the wiper control lever toward you, and hold it. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed, then complete a few more sweeps after you release the lever.

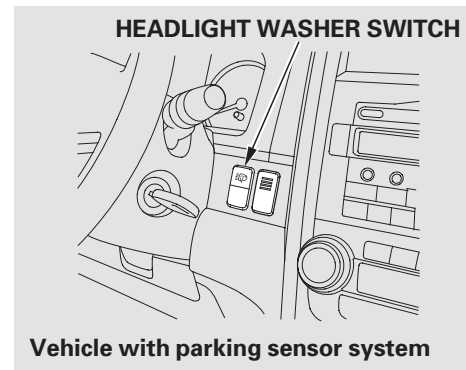
On some models

When you activate the windscreen washer with the headlights turned on, the headlight washer will be activated under certain conditions. For more information, see **Headlight Washers** section in the next column.

Headlight Washers *(For some types)*



The headlight washers can be operated at any time by pressing the headlight washer button located next to the steering wheel column. The headlights must be turned on to use this button. In addition, the headlight washer will automatically turn on at the first time you turn on the windscreen washers while the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.



The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windscreen washers.

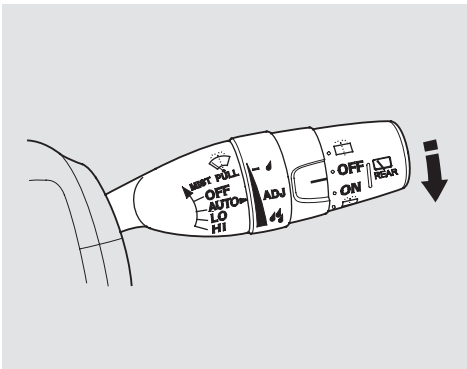
CONTINUED





Windscreen Wipers and Washers

Automatic Intermittent Wipers On some types



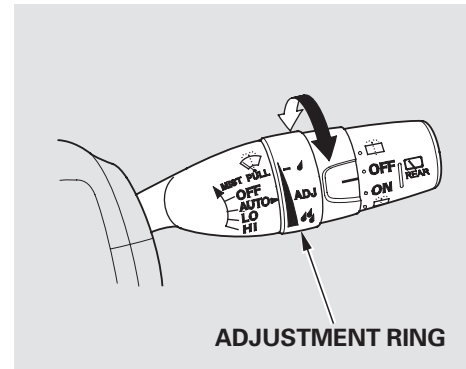
The automatic intermittent wiper system senses rainfall and automatically turns on the windscreen wipers. To enable sensing, push the lever down to select AUTO.

When the system senses rainfall, it turns on the windscreen wipers and varies their speed (intermittent, low speed, or high speed) depending on how hard it is raining.

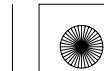
When the wiper lever is in the “LO” (low speed) or “HI” (high speed) position, the windscreen wipers run at that speed. Automatic sensing is disabled.

NOTICE

Do not position the wiper lever in AUTO when driving through a car wash. Turn off this system when not in use.

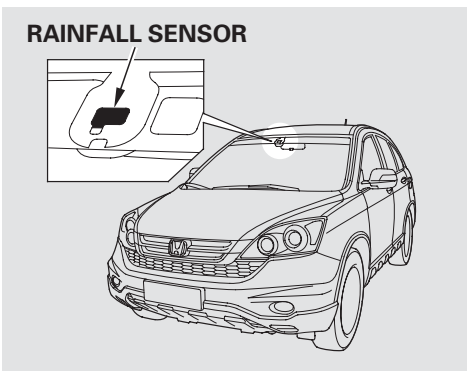


You can adjust the sensitivity of the system by turning the adjustment ring on the wiper lever.



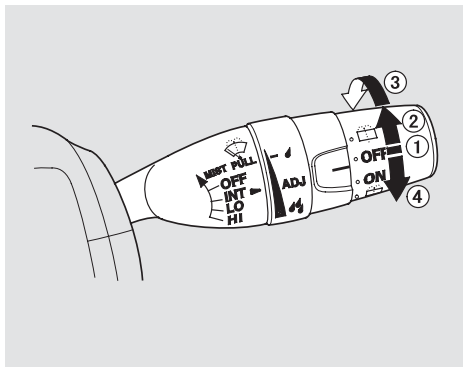


Windscreen Wipers and Washers



The rainfall sensor is located in the windscreen near the rearview mirror. If the sensor is covered with mud, oil, dust, etc., the wipers may not operate properly or may operate unexpectedly.

Rear Window Wiper and Washer



- 1. OFF**
When you turn the wiper switch to the "OFF" position, the wiper will return to its parked position.
- 2. Rotate the switch clockwise to turn the rear window wiper ON.**
The wiper operates every 7 seconds after completing two sweeps.

- 3. Hold past ON to activate the rear window wiper a few times and to spray the rear window washer.**

- 4. Rotate the switch anticlockwise also to spray the window washer and turn the wiper on.**

When you shift the transmission to the reverse position with the front windscreen wiper activated, the rear wiper operates automatically even if the rear wiper switch is off.

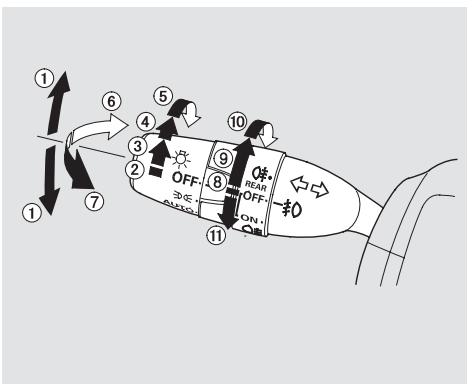
With the front wiper in INT or AUTO position, the rear wiper operates intermittently. If the front wiper is set to the LO or HI position, the rear wiper runs continuously.

The rear window washer uses the same fluid reservoir as the windscreen washer.





Turn Signals and Headlights




1. Turn signal
 2. Off
 3. Position and instrument panel lights
 4. AUTO*
 5. Headlights on
 6. High beams
 7. Flash high beams
 8. Fog lights off
 9. Front fog lights on*
 10. Front and rear fog lights on*
 11. Rear fog light on
- *: If equipped

Turn Signal – Push down or up on the lever to signal a turn. To signal a lane change, push lightly on the lever in the proper direction and hold it. The lever will return to centre when you release it or complete a turn.



One-push Turn Signal

To signal a lane change easily, push the turn signal lever in the proper direction lightly and release it. The left or right turn signal indicator on the instrument panel and the appropriate outside turn signals will blink three times.

If you hold the turn signal lever, the turn signal continues to blink and will stop when you release it.


Headlights On – Turning the switch to the “ ” position turns on the position lights, tail-lights, instrument panel lights, and rear licence plate lights.

Turning the switch to the “ ” position turns on the headlights.

When the light switch is in the “ ” or the “ ” position, the lights on indicator comes on as a reminder.

This indicator stays on if you leave the lights on and turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.

If you leave the lights on with the key removed from the ignition switch, you will hear a reminder chime when you open the driver’s door.

You will also see the symbol “ ”, or this symbol with a “HEADLIGHTS ON” message on the multi-information display.






Headlights

High Beams – Push the lever forward until you hear a click to turn on the high beams. The blue high beam indicator will come on (see page 96). Pull the lever back to return to the low beams.

To flash the high beams, pull the lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams will stay on as long as you hold the lever back.

Daytime Running Lights (For some types)


The daytime running lights come on automatically when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. They go out automatically when the light switch is turned to the  position.

On some models

AUTO – The automatic lighting feature turns on the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights when it

senses low ambient light.


To turn on the automatic lighting, turn the light switch to the AUTO position. The lights will come on automatically when the outside light level becomes low (at dusk, for example). The lights on indicator comes on as a reminder. The lights and indicator turn off automatically when the system senses high ambient light.

The lights turn off automatically when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. To turn them on again, either turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, or turn the light switch to the  position.

Even with the automatic lighting feature turned on, we recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night or in a dense fog, or when you enter dark areas

such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

Do not leave the light switch in AUTO if you will not be driving the vehicle for an extended period (a week or more). You should also turn off the lights if you plan to leave the engine idling or the engine off for a long time.

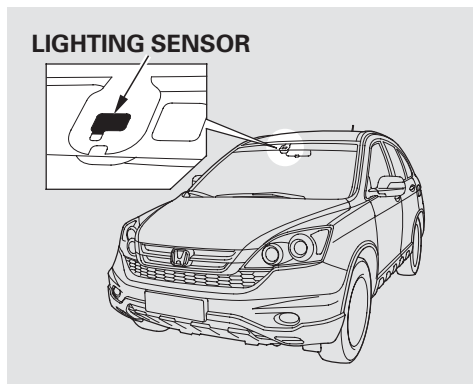
If there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system, you will see the symbol “,” or the symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

CONTINUED



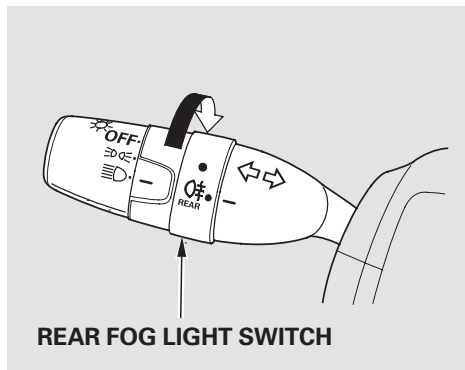


Headlights, Front and Rear Fog Lights



The automatic lighting feature is controlled by a sensor located on the windscreen near the rearview mirror. Do not cover this sensor or spill liquids on it.

Rear Fog Light (For some types)



The rear fog light switch is located next to the light control switch. You can use the rear fog light when the headlights are on (the light control switch is in the position).

To operate the rear fog light, turn the switch up from OFF to ON position. The indicator in the instrument panel comes on to indicate that the rear fog light is on.

You can turn off the rear fog light with the headlights on by turning the switch up again.

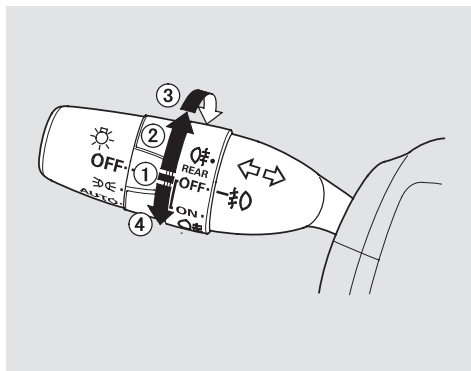
The rear fog light will go off when you turn the headlights off. To turn the rear fog light on again, you have to turn the rear fog light switch again with the headlights on.





Front and Rear Fog Lights

Front and Rear Fog Lights (For some types)



1. Off
2. Front fog lights on
3. Front and rear fog lights on
4. Rear fog light on

The fog light switch is located next to the light control switch.

Front Fog Lights On – Turn the switch up from the OFF position to the ON position. The indicator in the instrument panel comes on as a reminder.

You can turn on the front fog lights when the light control switch is in the or position.

To turn off the front fog lights, turn the fog light switch to the OFF position.

Front and Rear Fog Lights On – Turn the fog light switch one position up from the front fog lights on position. In addition to the indicator, the indicator comes on as a reminder to indicate that the rear fog light is on.

You can turn on the rear fog light when the front fog light is turned on.

To turn off the rear fog light with the front fog lights on, turn the fog light switch up again.

The front and rear fog lights will go off when you turn the light control switch off. When you turn the light control switch on again, the front fog lights only will also turn on.


CONTINUED






Front and Rear Fog Lights

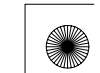
With the light switch in the AUTO position, you can also use the fog lights when the headlights turn on automatically. They will go off when the headlights turn off.

Rear Fog Light On – Turn the fog light switch down from the OFF position. The  indicator in the instrument panel comes on as a reminder.

The rear fog light turns on only when the light control switch is in the  position.

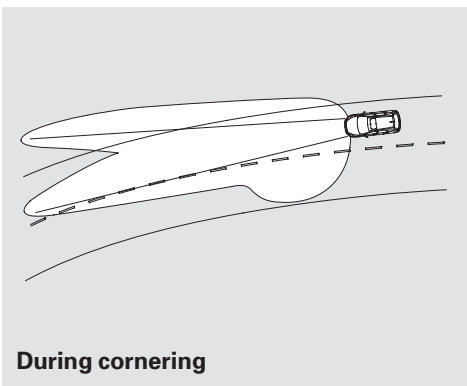
To turn off the rear fog light with the headlights on, turn the fog light switch down again.

When you turn off the headlights, the rear fog light will go off. To turn it on again, you have to operate the fog light switch again.



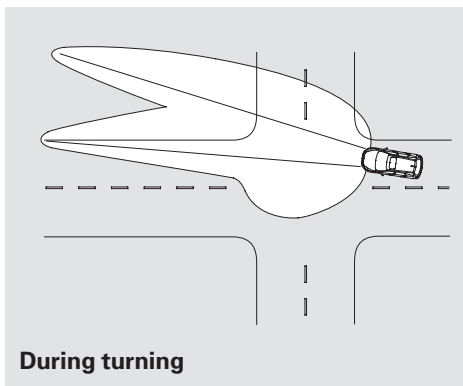


Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) (For some types)



During cornering

The adaptive front lighting system (AFS) helps to improve visibility during nighttime driving. The AFS controls the aiming direction and lighting distribution of the low beams according to the amount of turn applied to the steering wheel during cornering or turning. To turn the AFS on, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and turn the headlights on.



During turning

AFS

AFS Indicator

If the AFS indicator comes on and starts blinking while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. If the AFS indicator keeps blinking, or starts blinking again while driving after turning the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the AFS is not working properly. Have the AFS inspected by your dealer.

Without AFS, your vehicle still has normal lighting ability to continue driving.

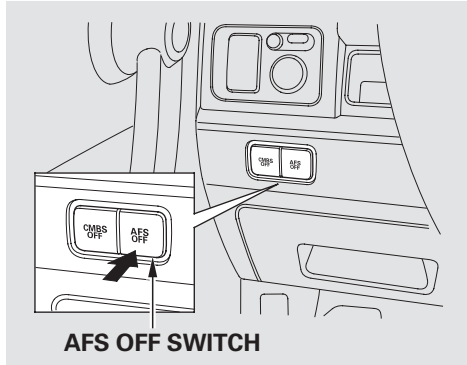
When the AFS indicator comes on, you will also see the symbol “**AFS**,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.





Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) (For some types)

AFS Off Switch



This switch is under the power mirror adjustment switch. Press it to turn the AFS on and off. When AFS is off, the AFS indicator comes on as a reminder when you turn on the headlights.

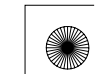
Here are some operating characteristics of the AFS:

- The system requires an initialization period. It does not begin to operate until you have driven the vehicle a short distance.
- AFS is not activated when the vehicle is stationary.
- AFS is turned off when the shift lever is in reverse.

Automatic Headlight Adjusting System

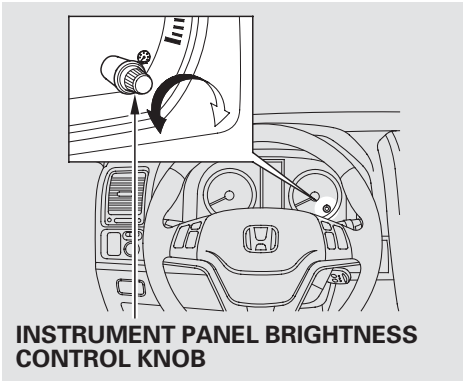
The AFS works with the automatic headlight adjusting system to sense changes in vehicle height posture due to driving and loading conditions of passengers and luggage. The vertical aim of the headlights is automatically adjusted to compensate for load.

If the headlights do not seem to be properly aimed, have the automatic headlight adjusting system inspected by your dealer.





Instrument Panel Brightness



You can change the instrument panel brightness only when the light switch is on. Turn the knob on the lower part of the instrument panel to adjust the brightness.



The brightness can be shown within the six brightness levels.

When you turn the knob, the lower segment of the display changes to vertical bars that show you the current level.

You will hear a tone when you reach the maximum or minimum brightness. The brightness level goes out about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting.

CONTINUED





Instrument Panel Brightness, Hazard Warning Button, Rear Window Demister

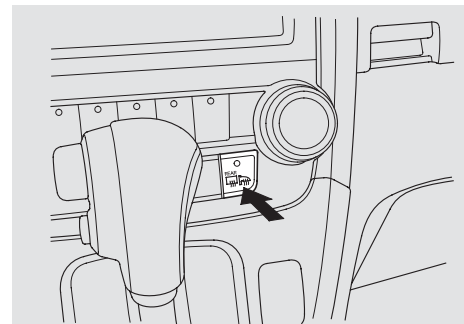
To reduce glare at night, the instrument panel illumination dims when you turn the light switch to ☰ or ☷. Turning the instrument panel brightness control knob fully to the right until you hear a beep will cancel the reduced brightness.

Hazard Warning Button



Push the red button to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all outside turn signals and both turn indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use these lights to give a warning to other road users that your vehicle is causing a hazard.

Rear Window Demister



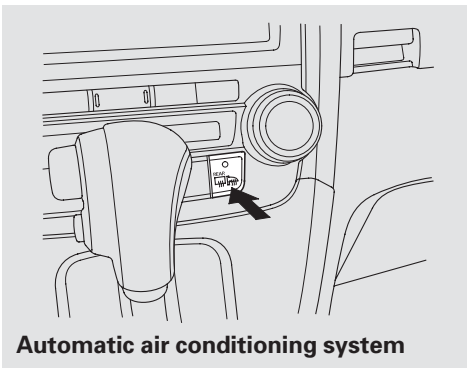
Manual heating/air conditioning system

The rear window demister will clear fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Push the demister button to turn it on and off. The indicator in the button comes on to show the demister is on. It shuts off when you turn off the ignition switch. You have to turn the demister on again when you restart the vehicle.





Rear Window Demister



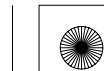
On vehicles with automatic air conditioning system

The demister will shut itself off within about 10 to 30 minutes according to the outside temperature (over 0°C).

Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

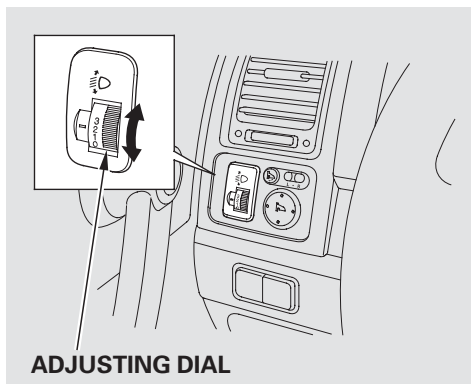
The demister wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side-to-side.

On some models
Pushing the demister also turns the mirror heaters on and off. For more information, see page 211 .





Headlight Adjuster



On vehicles with halogen headlight low-beam bulbs

The vertical angle of the headlights (low beam) can be adjusted according to the number of persons and the loading weight in the luggage area.

Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn the adjusting dial to select an appropriate angle of the headlights.

- 0: A driver or a driver and passenger in the front seat.
- 1: Five persons in the front and rear seats.
- 2: Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight.
- 3: A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight.

On vehicles with high voltage discharge tube bulbs

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic headlight adjusting system that senses changes in the vehicle posture due to riding and loading conditions of the passengers and their luggage and adjusts the vertical angle of the headlights (low beam) automatically.





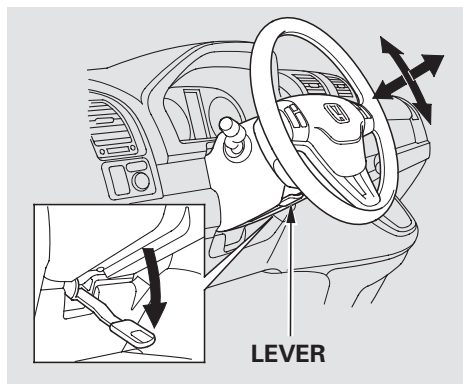
Steering Wheel Adjustments

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.



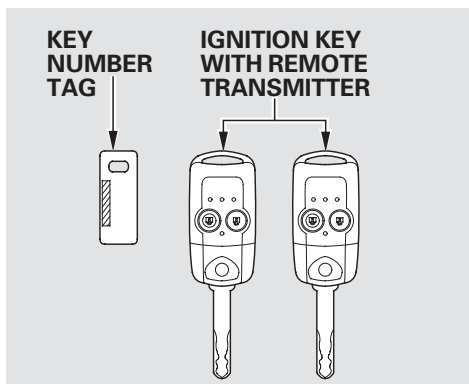
1. Push the lever under the steering column all the way down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out, so it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

3. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
4. Make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.





Keys and Locks



Two ignition keys come with your vehicle. You should keep one of them in a safe place, away from the vehicle, as a spare. They fit all the locks on your vehicle.

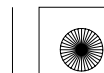
You should have received a key number tag with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Honda-approved key blanks.

Remote Transmitter

Your two ignition keys are also fitted with remote transmitters; see page 174 for an explanation of the operation.

These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the immobilizer system. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

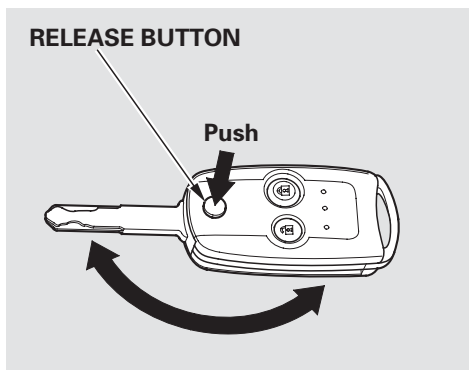
- Protect the keys from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.





Keys and Locks

Retractable Ignition Key



The ignition key can be retracted into the remote transmitter. To use the key, push the release button to release the key from the transmitter. The key should be fully extended. To retract the key, push the release button and at the same time push the key into the remote transmitter until it is securely latched.

Always make sure the key is fully extended when you insert it to the ignition switch. If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not operate properly and prevent the engine from starting.

The key may come in contact with your finger while being retracted or extended. Make sure your fingers do not touch the pivot of the key when retracting or extending the key.





Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e. key chain) is near the ignition switch when you insert the key.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

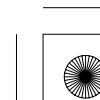
If you have lost your key and cannot start your engine, contact your dealer.

(EU models)
EC Directives

This immobilizer system complies with the R & TTE (Radio equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity) Directives.

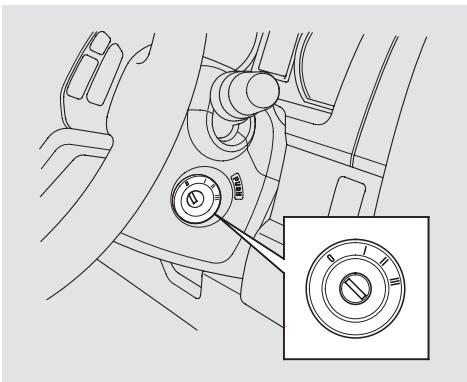
CE0891

(South Africa model)





Ignition Switch



The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK (0), ACCESSORY (I), ON (II), and START (III).

LOCK (0) – You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To turn the key, push it in slightly. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the shift lever must also be in park.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may make it difficult to turn the key. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or right as you turn the key.

ACCESSORY (I) – If equipped with an audio system, cigarette lighter, or accessory power socket, they can be operated in this position.

ON (II) – This is the normal key position when driving. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the ACCESSORY (I) to the ON (II) position.

On some types, the headlights come on automatically in this position.

START (III) – Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the ON (II) position when you let go of the key.

You will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the ignition switch in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position and open the driver's door. You will also see the symbol “,” or the symbol with an “IGNITION KEY” message on the multi-information display. Remove the key to turn off the beeper and the warning symbol.

CONTINUED





Ignition Switch, Door Locks

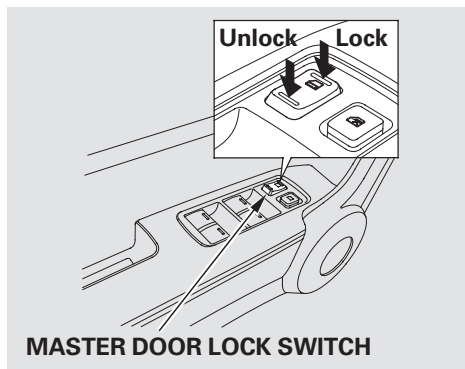
If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

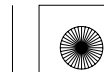
Power Door Locks



To lock the doors and the tailgate, push the top of the master door lock switch on the driver's door, pull the lock tab rearward on the driver's door, or use the key on the outside lock on the driver's door.

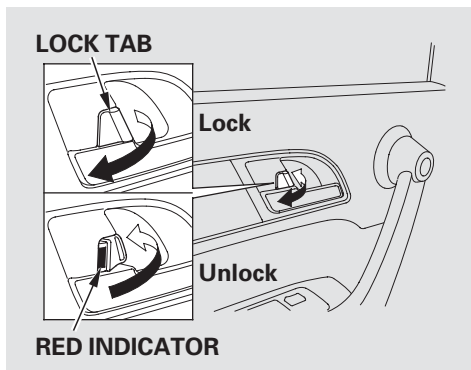
Except for South Africa models
Pushing the bottom of the master door lock switch or pushing forward the lock tab on the driver's door will unlock all doors and the tailgate.

On South Africa models
Pushing the rear of either master door lock switch will unlock all doors and the tailgate. Pushing forward the lock tab on the driver's door unlocks only that door.





Door Locks



Each door has a lock tab above the inner door handle. Pushing forward or rearward the lock tab on each passenger's door only locks and unlocks that door.

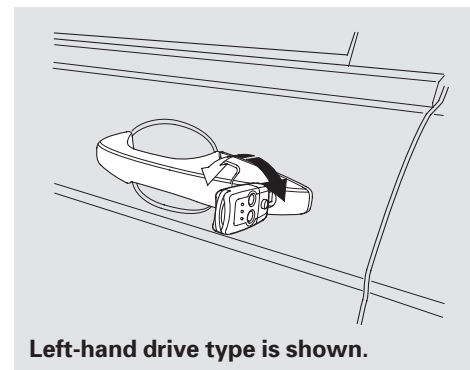
When the door is unlocked, you can see the red indicator on the lock tab above the inner door handle.

Except for South Africa models

To lock any passenger's door when getting out of the vehicle, pull the lock tab rearward and close the door. To lock the driver's door, remove the key from the ignition switch, pull and hold the outside door handle, and pull the lock tab rearward or push the top of the master door lock switch, then close the door.

On South Africa models

To lock any passenger's door when getting out of the vehicle, pull the lock tab rearward and close the door. To lock the driver's door, remove the key from the ignition switch, pull the lock tab rearward or push the top of the master switch, then close the door.



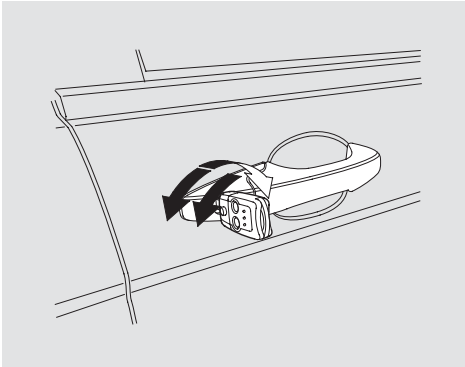
Except for South Africa models
All doors and tailgate lock or unlock when you use the key to lock or unlock the driver's door.

CONTINUED





Door Locks



On South Africa models
All doors and the tailgate can be locked from the outside by using the key in the driver's door lock. To unlock only the driver's door, insert the key, turn the key, and release it. The remaining doors and the tailgate unlock when you turn the key a second time within a few seconds.

On vehicles with security system
When you lock the doors and the tailgate with the key or the remote transmitter, all outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash three times to verify the doors and the tailgate are locked and the security system has set (see page 295).

The security system activates after you lock the doors and the tailgate with the lock tab on the driver's door or the master door lock switch (see page 295).

Lockout Prevention

Except for South Africa models

If you forget and leave the key in the ignition switch, lockout prevention will not allow you to lock the driver's door. With any door or the tailgate open and the key in the ignition, locking with master door lock switch is disabled. The lock tab on the driver's door is not disabled if the driver's door is closed. Pulling the driver's lock tab rearward will lock all doors and the tailgate. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pulling the lock tab rearward with the outside handle pulled, the lock tabs on all doors pop out and unlock the doors.



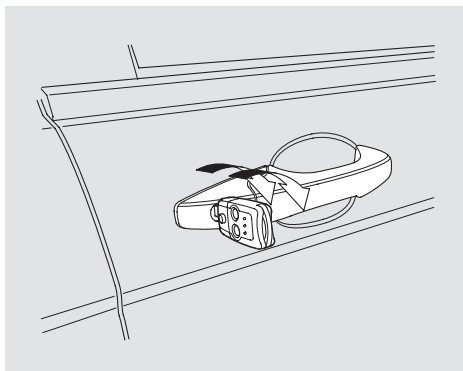


Door Locks

On South Africa models

With any door and the tailgate open and the key in the ignition, locking with the master door lock switch is disabled. The lock tab on the driver's door is not disabled if the driver's door is closed. Pulling the driver's lock tab rearward will lock all doors and the tailgate. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pulling the lock tab rearward, the lock tab on the driver's door pops out and unlocks the driver's door.

Super Locking **(For some types)**



The super locking helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. To set the super locking, turn the key towards the front of the vehicle twice within 5 seconds.

The super locking will not set if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed. It will be set even if the bonnet, or any window is open.

With the super locking set, the master door lock switch on the driver's door and the lock tabs on all doors are disabled.

You can also set the super locking with the remote transmitter. To set it, push the LOCK button twice within 5 seconds (see page 175).

To cancel the super locking, unlock the driver's door with the key or the remote transmitter.

On vehicles with ultrasonic sensor
Only the remote transmitter can reset the security system. Unlocking the driver's door with the key activates the alarm.

CONTINUED





Door Locks

WARNING

If there are persons inside the vehicle with the super locking set, they cannot unlock the doors from the inside.

Make sure there is no person inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

On vehicles with ultrasonic sensor

If you set the super locking with the windows open, the ultrasonic sensor may activate the alarm unexpectedly when the system senses strong vibrations on the vehicle or loud sound.

On South Africa models only

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle has customizable settings for the doors and tailgate to automatically lock and unlock. There are default settings for each of these features. You can turn off or change the settings for these features as described on the following pages.

When you customize the setting, make sure your vehicle is parked safely, the engine is off, and the parking brake is applied. Make all settings before you start driving.

Auto Door Locking

The auto door locking feature has three possible settings:

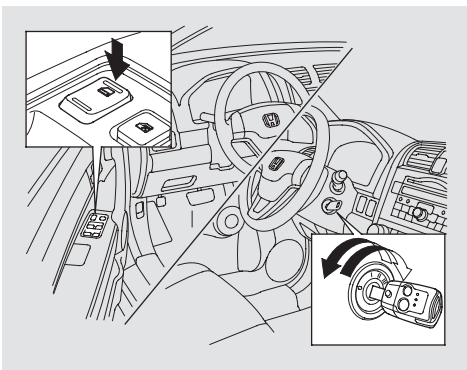
- The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.
- All doors and tailgate lock whenever you move the shift lever out of the Park (P) position (A/T vehicles).
- The doors and tailgate lock when the vehicle speed reaches 15 km/h (10 mph). This is the factory setting.





Door Locks

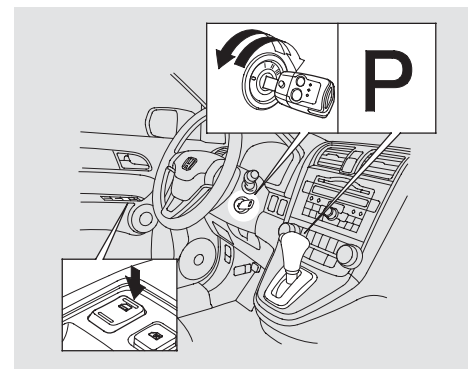
To turn off the Auto Door Lock modes:



1. Make sure the shift lever is in the Park (P) position (A/T vehicles).
2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and open the driver's door.

3. Push and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door until you hear a click (after about 5 seconds).
4. Release the switch, and within 20 seconds, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

To programme the Park Lock mode: Locks all doors and tailgate when the shift lever is moved out of Park (P) position (A/T vehicles only).



1. Make sure the shift lever is in the Park (P) position.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and make sure to close the driver's door.

CONTINUED

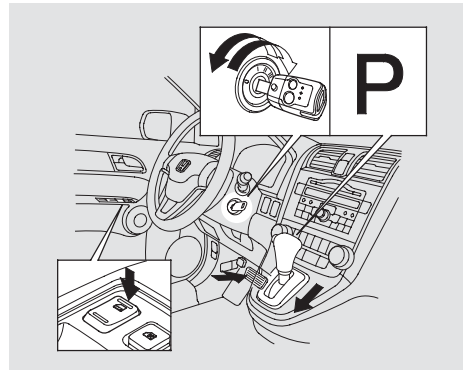




Door Locks

3. Push and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click. Keep holding the switch until you hear another click (after about 5 seconds).
4. Release the switch, and within 20 seconds, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

To programme the Drive Lock mode:
Locks all doors and the tailgate when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h (10 mph).



1. Make sure the shift lever is in the Park (P) position (A/T vehicles).
2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and make sure to close the driver's door.

3. *On A/T vehicles*, push and hold the brake pedal, and move the shift lever out of the Park (P) position.
4. Push and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click. Keep holding the switch until you hear another click (after about 5 seconds).
5. Release the switch, and within 20 seconds, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position. *On A/T vehicles*, move the shift lever to the Park (P) position.
6. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.





Door Locks

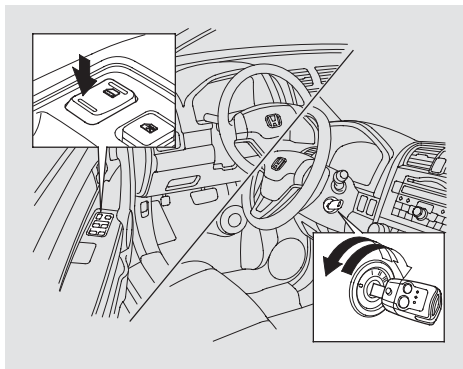
Auto Door Unlocking

The auto door unlocking feature has five possible settings:

- The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.
- *On A/T vehicles*, the driver's door unlocks when you move the shift lever to the Park (P) position with the brake pedal depressed. This is the default setting.
- All doors and tailgate unlock when you move the shift lever to the Park (P) position with the brake pedal depressed (A/T vehicles).
- The driver's door unlocks whenever you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position. This is the default setting on M/T vehicles.

- All doors and tailgate unlock whenever you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position.

To turn off the Auto Door Unlock modes:



1. Make sure the shift lever is in the Park (P) position (A/T vehicles).

2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and open the driver's door.
3. Push and hold the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click, and after about 5 seconds, you will hear another click.
4. Release the switch, and within 20 seconds, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

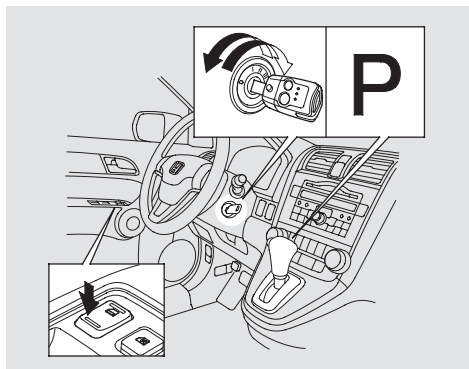
CONTINUED



Door Locks

To programme the Park Unlock mode:

Unlocks the driver's door or all doors and tailgate when the shift lever is moved to Park (P) position with the brake pedal depressed (A/T vehicles only).



1. Make sure the shift lever is in the Park (P) position.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and make sure to close the driver's door.

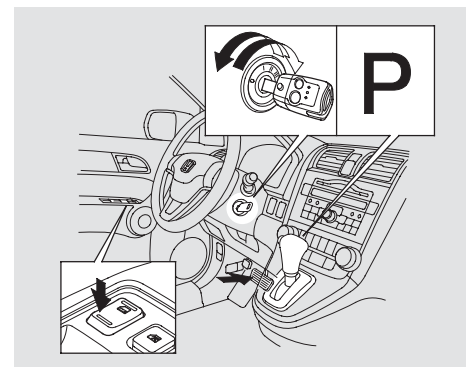
3. Push and hold the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click. Continue to hold down the switch:

- Until you hear another click (after about 5 seconds) to activate *driver's door unlock feature*.
- Or, until you hear two more clicks (after about 10 seconds) to activate *all doors and tailgate unlock feature*.

4. Release the switch, and within 20 seconds, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

To programme the Ignition Switch Unlock mode:

Unlocks the driver's door or all doors and tailgate when the ignition switch is moved out of the ON (II) position.



1. Make sure the shift lever is in the Park (P) position (A/T vehicles).
2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and make sure to close the driver's door.

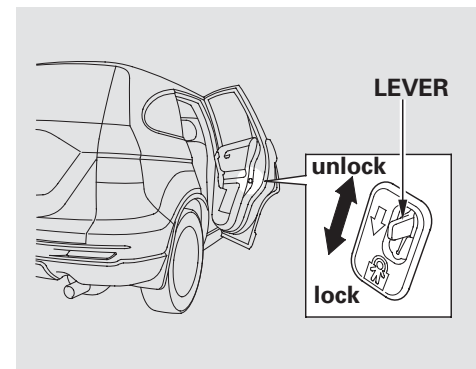




Door Locks

3. *On A/T vehicles*, push and hold the brake pedal, then move the shift lever out of the Park (P) position.
4. Push and hold the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click. Continue to hold down the switch:
 - Until you hear another click (after about 5 seconds) to activate *driver's door unlock feature*.
 - Or, until you hear two more clicks (after about 10 seconds) to activate *all doors and tailgate unlock feature*.
5. Release the switch, and within 20 seconds, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position. *On A/T vehicles*, move the shift lever to the Park (P) position.
6. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

Childproof Door Locks

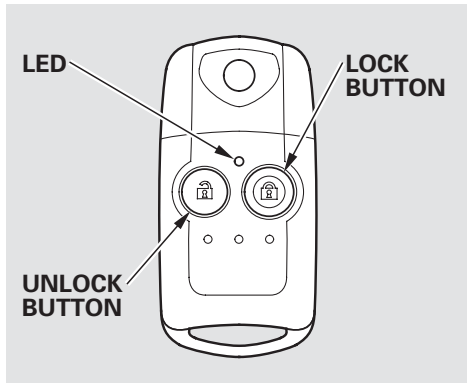


The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position (lever is down), the door cannot be opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, push the lock tab forward and use the outside door handle.





Remote Transmitter



LOCK – Press this button to lock all doors and the tailgate. When you push the LOCK button, all outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash three times to verify the doors and the tailgate are locked and the security system (if equipped) has set. You cannot lock the doors and the tailgate if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed or the key is in the ignition switch.

Except for South Africa models

UNLOCK – Press this button to unlock all doors and the tailgate. When you push the UNLOCK button, all outside turn signals, and both indicators in the instrument panel flash once.

On South Africa models

UNLOCK – Press this button once to unlock the driver's door. Push it twice to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate. All outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel will flash once when you press the button the first time.

The front ceiling light (if the light switch is in the Door position) and rear ceiling light (if the light switch is in the centre position) will come on when you press the UNLOCK button. If you do not open any door or the tailgate within 30 seconds, the lights fade out. If you relock the doors and tailgate with the remote transmitter before 30 seconds have elapsed, the lights will go off immediately.





Remote Transmitter

If you do not open any door or the tailgate within 30 seconds, the doors and the tailgate automatically relock and the security system (if equipped) sets.

You cannot unlock the doors and the tailgate if the key is in the ignition switch.

Super Locking ***(For some types)***

You can set the super locking with the remote transmitter. To set the super locking, push the LOCK button twice within 5 seconds.

The super locking will not set if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed. It will be set even if the bonnet or any window is open.

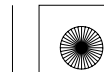
To cancel the super locking, push the UNLOCK button on the remote transmitter, or unlock the driver's door with the key.

See page 167 for information on the super locking.

⚠ WARNING

If there are persons inside the vehicle with the super locking set, they cannot unlock the doors from the inside.

Make sure there is no person inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.





Remote Transmitter

Remote Transmitter Care

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

Replacing the Transmitter Battery

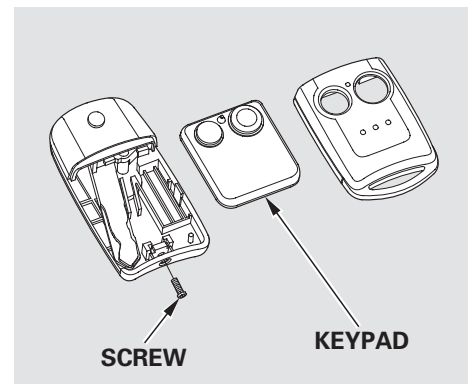
If it takes several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors and the tailgate, replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type: CR1616

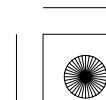
To replace the battery:

1. Remove the screw at the base of the transmitter with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.

NOTE: Be careful when removing this screw as the head of the screw can strip out.

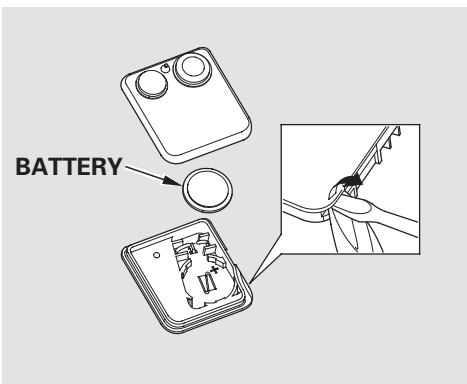


2. Separate the keypad from the transmitter by pushing any button from outside.





Remote Transmitter



3. Place a cloth on the edge of the keypad to prevent scratches, and remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver.

4. Remove the old battery and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same (+ side facing down), then insert it in the keypad.

5. Snap the two halves of the keypad, then install the parts in reverse order.



This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

CONTINUED





Remote Transmitter

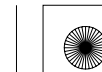
(EU models)

EC Directives

This keyless entry system complies with the R & TTE (Radio equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity) Directives.

CE0891

(South Africa model)





Tailgate

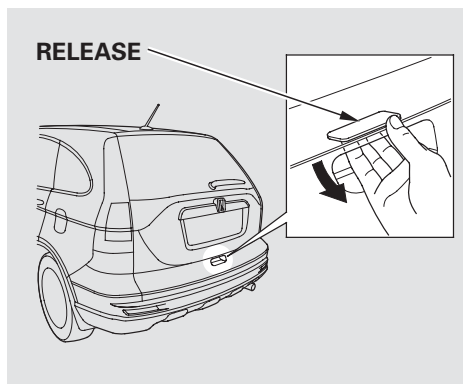
Except for South Africa models

The tailgate will lock or unlock when you lock or unlock the driver's door with the key, the remote transmitter, the master door lock switch, or the lock tab on the driver's door.

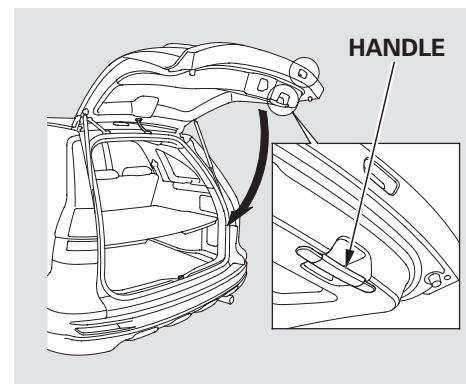
On South Africa models

The tailgate will lock when you lock the driver's door with the key, the remote transmitter, the master door lock switch, or the lock tab on the driver's door.

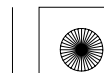
To unlock the tailgate, turn the key clockwise twice, push the rear of the master door lock switch, or push the UNLOCK button twice on the remote transmitter.



To open the tailgate, push the release, then lift up. To close the tailgate, use the inner handle to pull it down, then press down on the back edge.



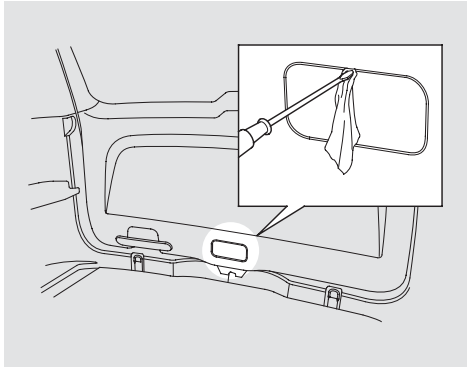
Keep the tailgate closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the tailgate and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 76.





Tailgate

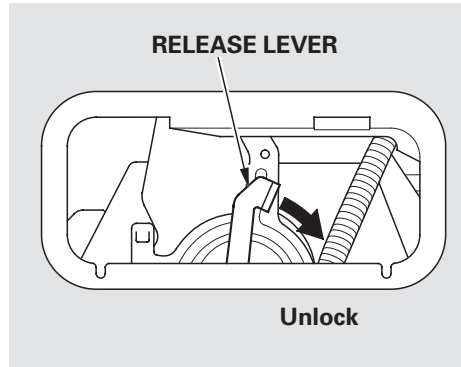
Opening the Tailgate Manually



If the power door lock system cannot unlock the tailgate, unlock it manually. In this case, you cannot open the tailgate with the release.

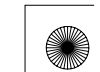
To open the tailgate, access the tailgate release lever from inside the vehicle.

Place a cloth on the top side of the cover to prevent scratches, then use a small flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.



Push the release lever to the lower right as shown.

If you need to open the tailgate manually, it means there is a problem with the tailgate. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.





Seats

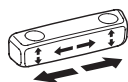
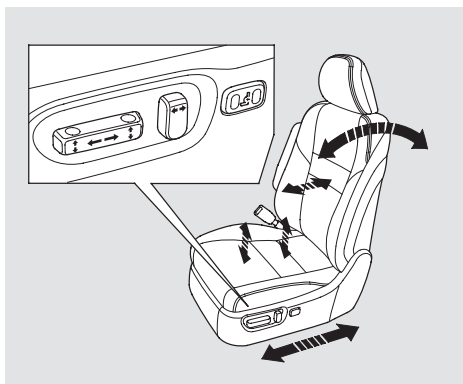
Driver's Seat Power Adjustments

See pages 18 – 20 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seat-backs.

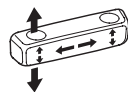
On vehicles with power adjustable driver's seat

The controls for the power adjustable driver's seat are on the outside edge of the seat bottom. You can adjust the seat with the ignition switch in any position. Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

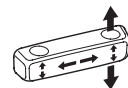
The front passenger's seat can be adjusted manually (see the next page).



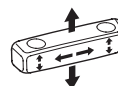
Moves the seat forward and backward.



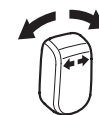
Moves the front of the seat up or down.



Raises or lowers the seat.



Moves the whole seat up and forward, or down and backward. The front of the seat also tilts up or down at the same time.



Adjusts the seat-back angle forward or backward.



Increases or decreases the lumbar support.



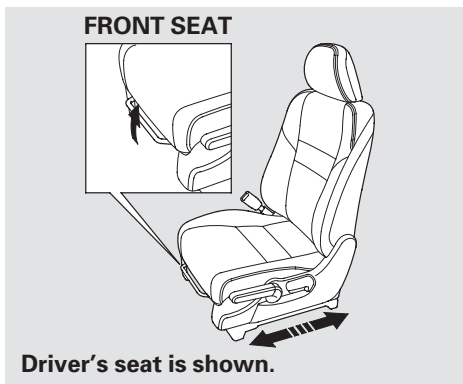


Seats

Manual Seat Adjustments

See pages 18 – 20 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seat-backs.

Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

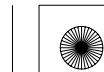


To adjust the front or rear seat forward or backward, pull up on the bar under the seat cushion's front edge. Move the seat to the desired position, and release the bar. Try to move the seat to make sure it is locked in position.



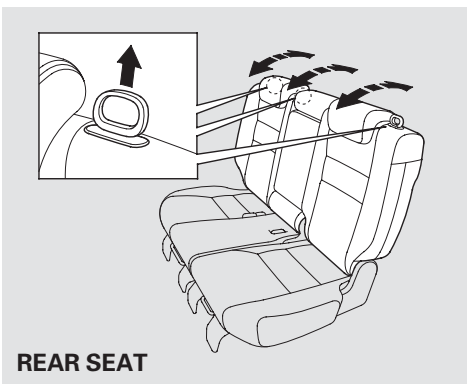
To change the seat-back angle of the front seat, pull up the lever on the outside of the seat bottom.

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.





Seats



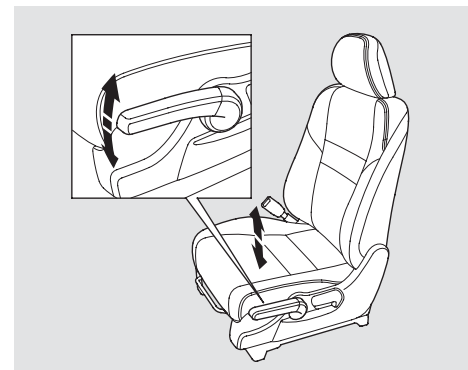
REAR SEAT

The angle of each rear seat-back can be adjusted separately. To change the seat-back angle of the rear seat-back, pull up on the release lever on the top of the seat-back. Move the seat-back to the desired position, then release the lever. Make sure the seat-back latches in the new position.

When using the centre seating position, adjust the left and right side of the rear seats to the same position.

Make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the rear seat-backs after you adjust the rear seats.

Driver's Seat Height Adjustment (For some types)



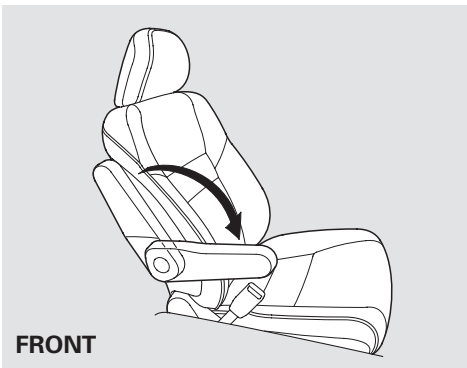
The height of your driver's seat is adjustable. To raise the seat, repeatedly pull up the lever on the outside of the seat cushion. To lower the seat, push the lever down repeatedly.



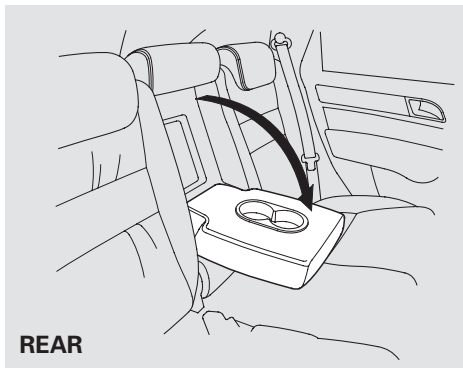


Seats

Armrests



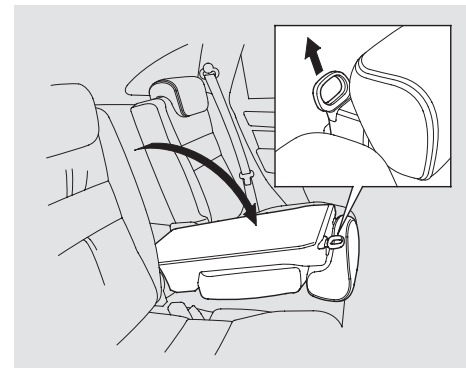
Each front seat has an armrest on the side of the seat-back. To use it, pivot it down.



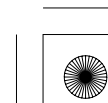
The rear seat armrest is in the centre of the rear seat. Pivot it down to use it.

A beverage holder is located in the armrest.

Luggage Pass-through



The rear centre seat-back has a luggage area pass-through. To use the luggage area pass-through, pull up the release on top of the centre seat-back and fold it down.





Seats

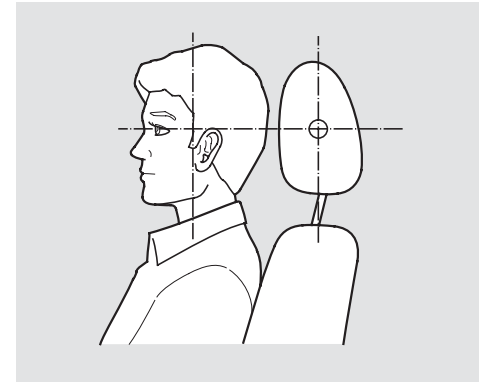
If your vehicle is equipped with a dual deck luggage shelf, do not use the shelf when any seat-back is folded down. Objects placed on this shelf can be thrown forward and occupants can be injured during sudden stops or a collision.

For more information on the dual deck luggage shelf, see page 200 .

Head Restraints

See page 20 for important safety information and a warning about improperly positioning head restraints.

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions to help protect you and your passengers from the likelihood of whiplash and other injuries.



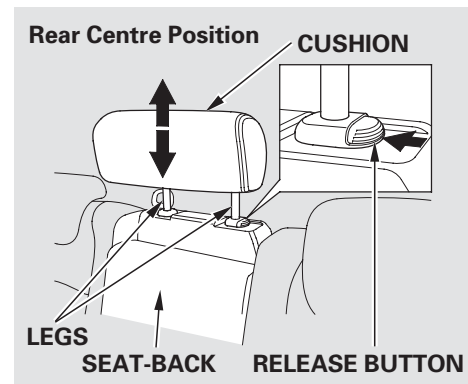
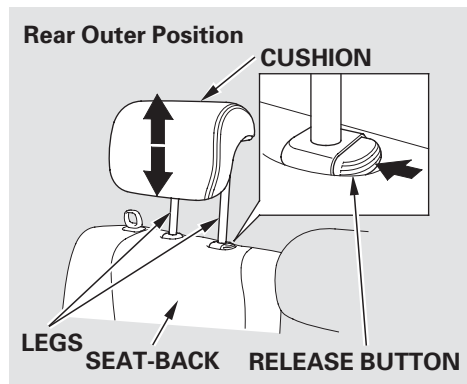
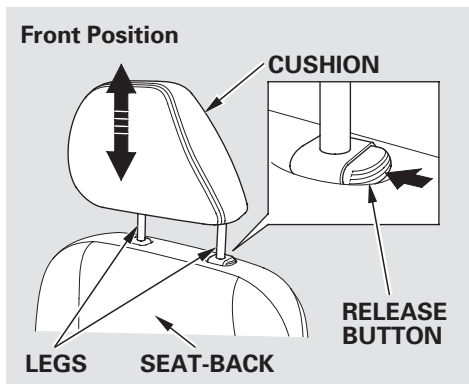
They are most effective when you adjust them so the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint.

CONTINUED





Seats



Adjusting the Head Restraint

The head restraints adjust for height. You need both hands to adjust the restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways, and push the restraint down.

When a passenger is seated in the rear seating position, make sure the rear head restraint is adjusted to its highest position.





Removing the Head Restraint

To remove a head restraint, pull it up as far as it will go. Push the release button and pull the restraint out of the seat-back.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

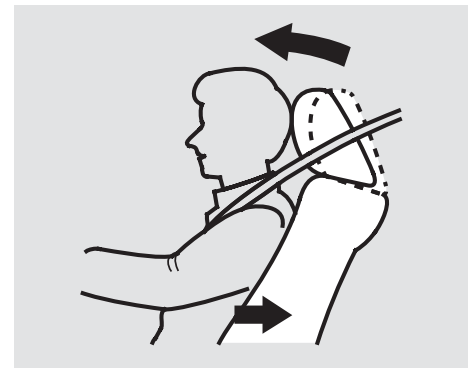
Make sure the removed head restraints are securely stored.

When reinstalling a head restraint, put the legs back in place. Then adjust it to the appropriate height while pressing the release button.

Make sure the head restraint locks in position when you reinstall it.

Always replace the rear head restraints when the seat-backs are returned to upright position.

Active Head Restraints



The driver's and front passenger's seats have active head restraints. If the vehicle is struck severely from the rear, the occupant properly secured with the seat belt will be pushed against the seat-back and the head restraint will automatically move forward.

CONTINUED





Seats

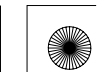
This reduces the distance between the restraint and the occupant's head. It also helps protect the occupants against the likelihood of whiplash and injuries to the neck and upper spine.

After a collision, the activated restraint should return to its normal position.

If the restraints do not return to their normal position, or in the event of a severe collision, have the vehicle inspected by a Honda dealer.

For a head restraint system to work properly:

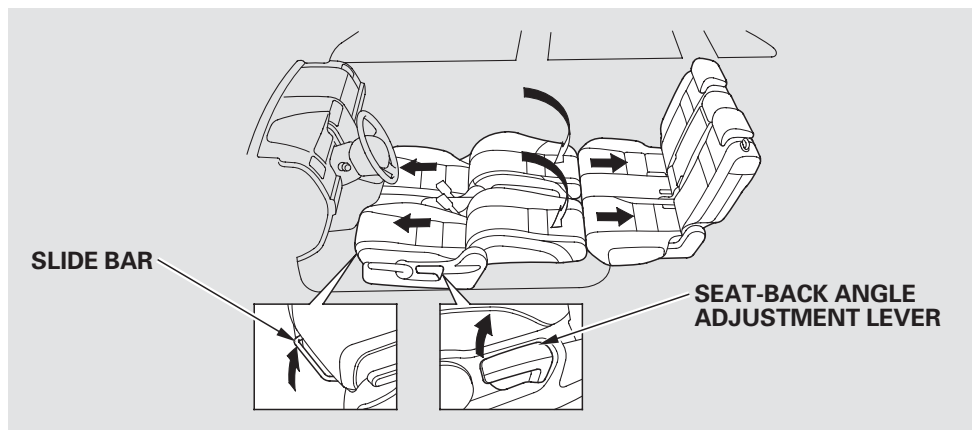
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.
- Only use genuine Honda replacement head restraints.





Seats

Reclining the Front Seats



You can recline the seat-backs on the front seats so they are level with the rear seat cushions, making a large cushioned area. To do this:

On some models

If your vehicle has the power adjustable driver's seat, only the passenger's side can be level as follows.

1. Adjust the rear seats as far back as possible.
2. Remove the front head restraints (see page 187), and store them securely.

3. Adjust the front seats forward as far as possible. Pull up the seat-back angle adjustment lever and pivot the seat-back backward until it is level with the rear seat cushion.

On some models

The seat-back of the power adjustable driver's seat cannot be level. Do not push the seat-back down forcibly.

4. Adjust the rear seat-back to the desired position.

Reverse this procedure to return the front and rear seats to the upright position. Make sure you install the head restraints and securely lock the seats before driving.

When you return the seat-back to its upright position, hold the seat-back to keep it from going up too quickly.

CONTINUED





Seats

⚠ WARNING

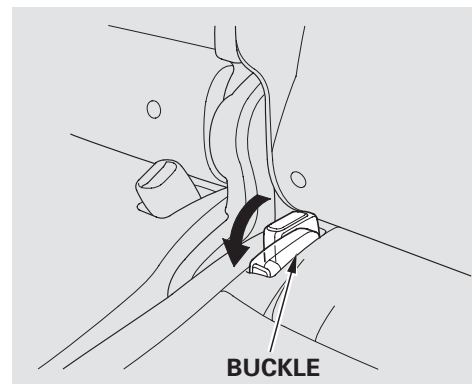
Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

Always replace the rear head restraints when the seat-backs are returned to upright position.

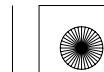
Folding the Rear Seats Down
Each rear seat-back can be folded down separately to give more luggage room. With either of the outer seat-backs folded-down, you can still carry a passenger in the rear seat. With the centre seat-back folded-down, either outer seating position can be used.

You can also fold up the left or right side of the rear seats separately to create further luggage space (see page 192).

Remove any items from the seat before folding down the seat-back.

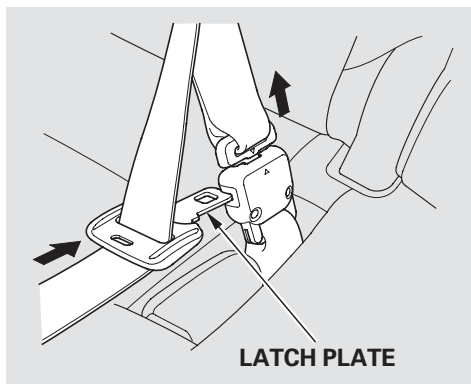


1. Push the seat belt buckles into the seat cushion.





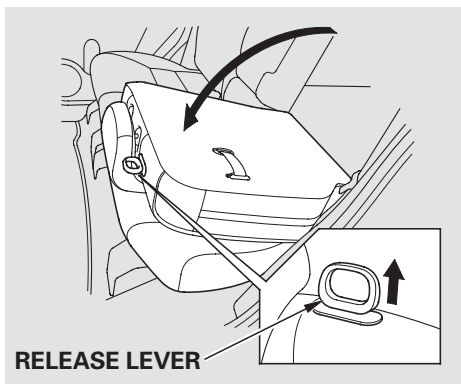
Seats



LATCH PLATE

When you are folding the rear centre seat-back, use the latch plate to release the centre seat belt from the detachable anchor (see page 194). Allow the seat belt to retract into the holder on the ceiling and store the buckles in it.

Make sure the rear seat armrest is stored.



RELEASE LEVER

2. Lower the rear head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Pull up the release lever on the top of the seat-back.
4. Fold the seat-back forward.

Do not put any heavy items on the seat-back when it is folded down.

Reverse this procedure to return the seat-back to the upright position. Make sure the seat is secured and the seat belt is in front of the seat-back before driving.

In the rear centre seating position, be sure the detachable anchor is latched securely (see page 194).

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

CONTINUED



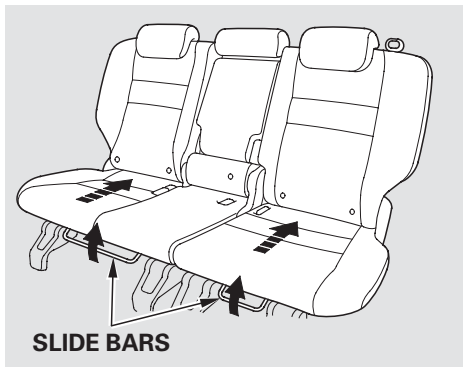


Seats

When any seat-back is folded down, do not use the dual deck luggage shelf (if equipped).

Make sure all items in the luggage area are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard (See **Carrying Luggage** on page 365).

Folding the Rear Seat Forward



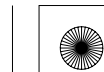
The left and right rear seats can be folded up separately to make room for luggage.

Remove any items from the seat before you fold up the seat cushion.

To fold the rear seat forward:

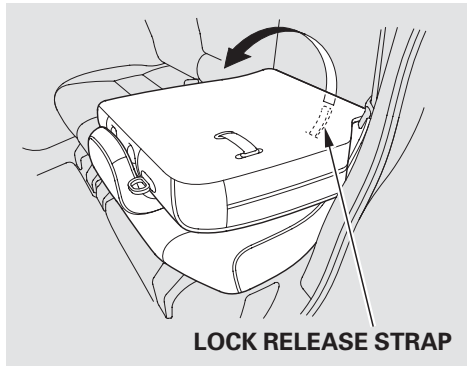
1. Pull up the bar under the seat cushion and slide the rear seat backward. The rear seat will not fold forward unless it is as far back as it will go.
2. Follow steps 1 through 4 on pages 190 and 191 for folding down the seat-back.

Lower the centre seat-back before folding the right side seat forward.

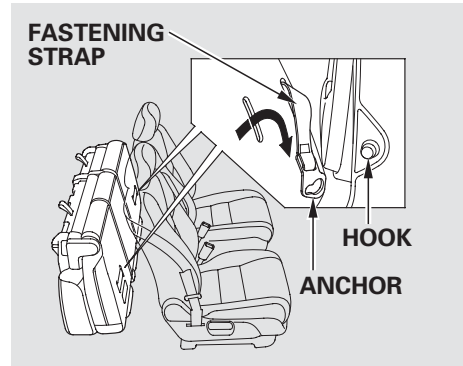




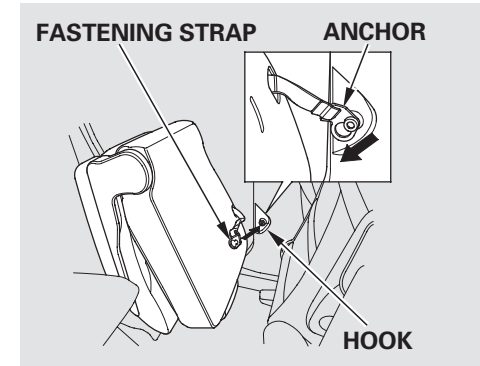
Seats



3. Unlock the seat from the floor by pulling the lock release strap under the seat cushion's back edge, then lift the rear of the seat. You cannot fold up the rear seat if it is not latched securely in the rearmost position.



4. Pull out the fastening strap from the slit on the seat-back. Then attach the anchor on the fastening strap to the hook on the centre pillar.



5. Pull down on the anchor to engage the upper part of the anchor securely on the hook, and make sure the seat is secure. Reverse this procedure to return the seat to the upright position. Make sure the seat is securely latched before driving. When you are not using the fastening strap, store the strap into the slit on the seat-back.

CONTINUED





Seats

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

Make sure both outer seat belts are positioned in side of the rear seat-backs.

In the centre seating position of the rear seat, be sure the detachable anchor is latched securely before using the seat belt (see page 195).

Make sure all items in the luggage area are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard (See **Carrying Luggage** on page 365).

Do not use the dual deck luggage shelf (if equipped) when the seats are folded down or forward.

Detachable Anchor

DETACHABLE ANCHOR



The seat belt in the rear centre seat is equipped with a detachable anchor.

This allows the centre seat belt to be unlatched when the rear centre seat back is folded down or the right side rear seat is folded forward.

⚠ WARNING

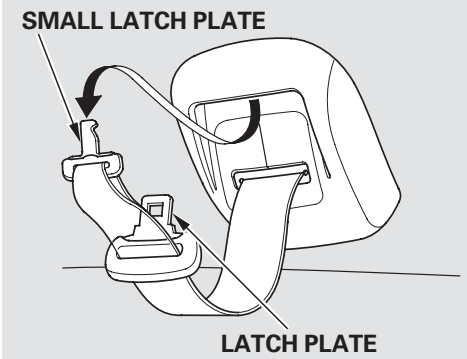
Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

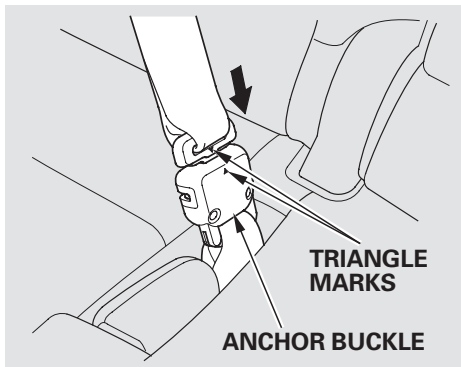




Seats

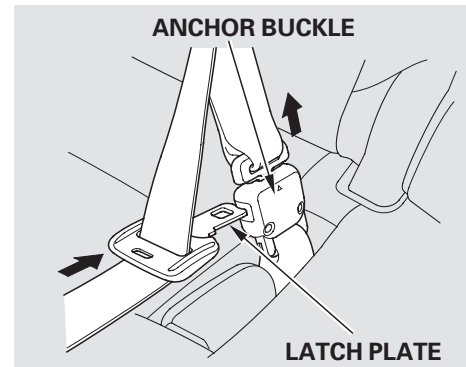


Pull out the small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling, and pull out the seat belt to extend it.



Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle when reattaching the belt and buckle.

Tug on the seat belt to verify that the detachable anchor is securely latched. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.

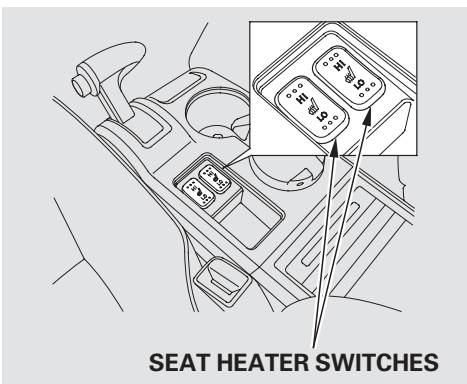


To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle. Store the detachable anchor and seat belt latch plates in the retractor housing.





Seat Heaters (For some types)



SEAT HEATER SWITCHES

Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position to use the heaters.

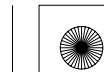
Push the front of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the back of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

In the HI setting, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops.

In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

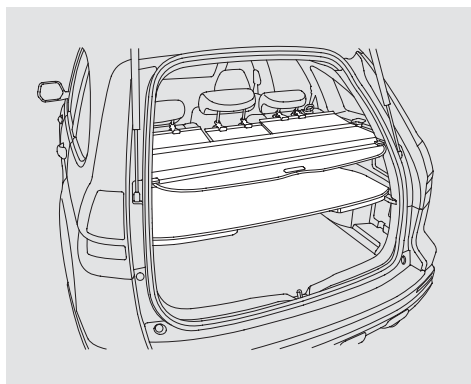
Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters, even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.





Tonneau Cover (For some types)



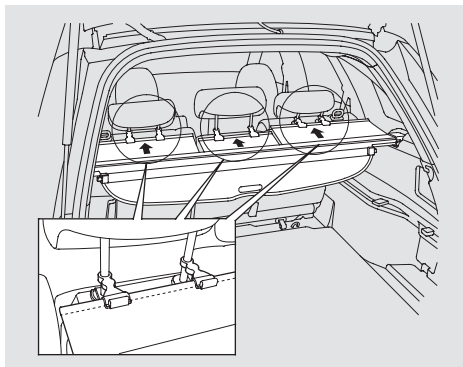
You can use the tonneau cover to conceal your parcels and protect them from direct sunlight.

The tonneau cover can be extended forward and rearward separately.

The left, centre and right part of the front cover can be used separately.

Do not store parcels on the tonneau cover. The tonneau cover may break if weight is placed on it.

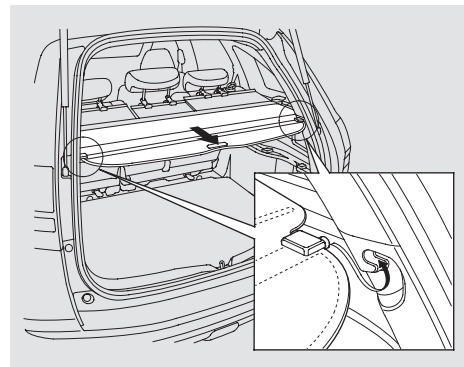
Using Each Front Cover



To extend each front cover, pull the clips of the cover, and attach them to the legs of each rear head restraint.

To retract each front cover, detach the clips and guide the cover, so it rolls back fully into its housing.

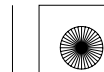
Using Rear Cover



To extend the rear cover, pull the cover's leading edge, then clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the tailgate opening.

To retract the rear cover, slip the rods out of the hooks and guide the cover so it rolls back fully into its housing.

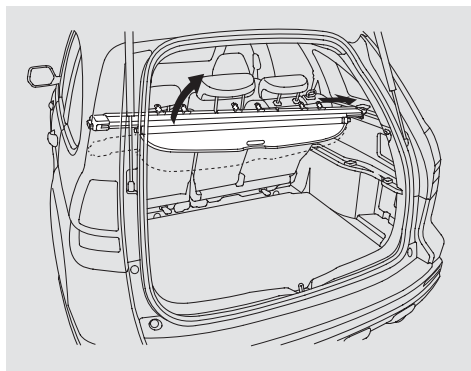
CONTINUED





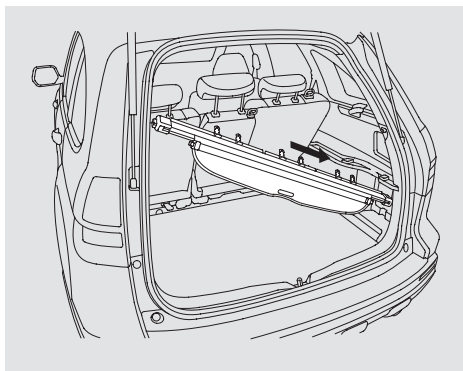
Tonneau Cover (For some types)

Storing the Tonneau Cover Housing Unit

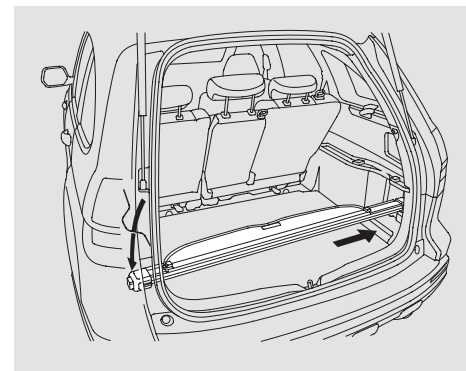


You can store the tonneau cover housing unit on the luggage area floor to make a large room.

1. Retract all covers fully into the tonneau cover housing.
2. Release each side of the tonneau cover housing unit by pushing the left end of the unit toward the right end and lifting it upward.



3. Lower the right end of the unit, and insert it into the holder on the right side panel.

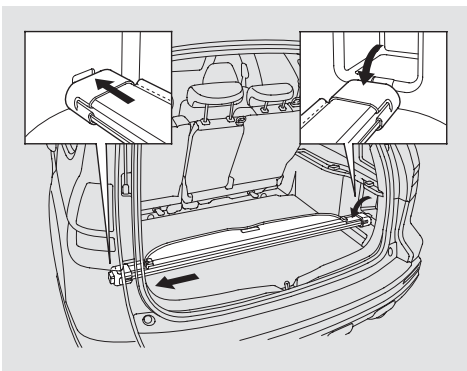


4. While pushing the right end of the housing unit to the right holder, lower the left end through the opening on the left side panel.





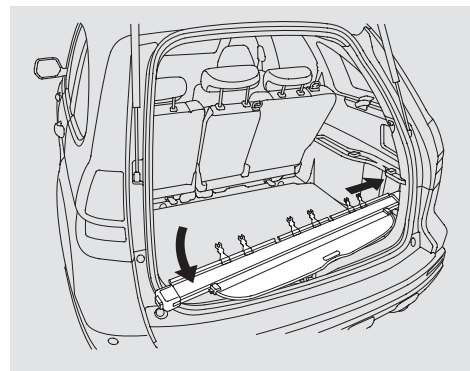
Tonneau Cover (For some types)



5. While pushing the left end, install the right side of the housing unit in the holder on the lower right side panel.

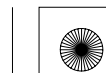
Make sure the housing unit is securely placed so it will not come loose while you are driving.

Reverse this procedure to install the tonneau cover housing unit in place.



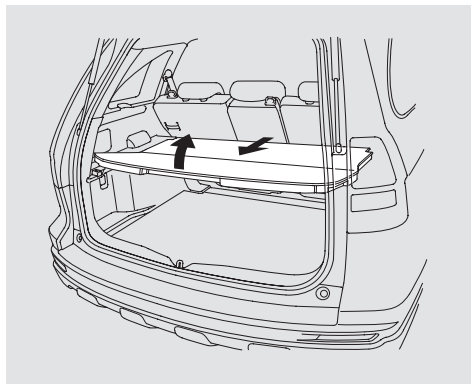
To remove the tonneau cover housing unit from the vehicle, follow step 3, then take it out while pushing the right end of the housing. Do not pull it out forcibly.

Do not put heavy weight on the tonneau cover housing unit. This may damage it.

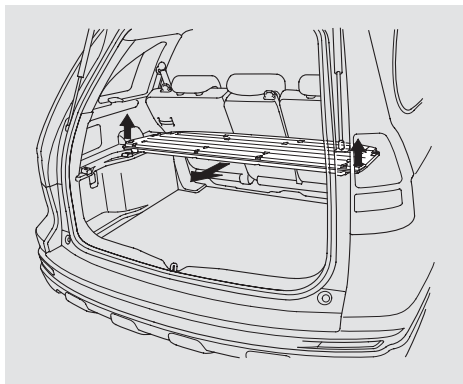




Dual Deck Luggage Shelf (For some types)

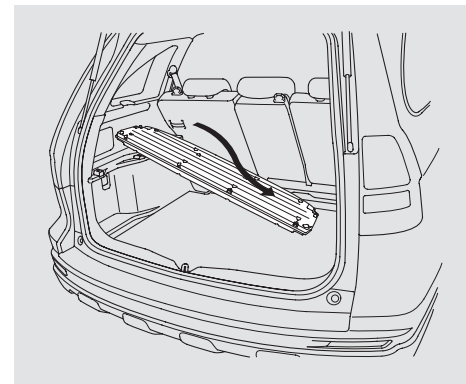


The dual deck luggage shelf will separate the storage area into two storage areas. On the upper area, you can store small and light items. You should place heavy items in the lower storage area. You can remove the dual deck luggage shelf and store it on the luggage area floor to make a larger luggage area.



Make sure to use the dual deck luggage shelf fully opened and securely latched.

To remove the dual deck luggage shelf, fold up the rear half of the shelf forward onto the front half, push up on both sides, then pull it toward you.



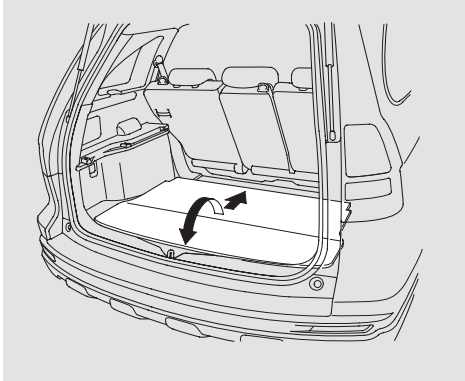
To store the dual deck luggage shelf, lift up either side of it, then move it as shown above.

Place the dual deck luggage shelf on the far side of the luggage floor, then slide it forward while folding out the upper half of the shelf.





Dual Deck Luggage Shelf (For some types)



The dual deck luggage shelf can be placed on the floor as shown above.

Reverse this procedure to return the dual deck luggage shelf to the upper position. Make sure the dual deck luggage shelf is latched securely.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use this shelf if the second row seats are folded down.

Objects placed on the shelf could be thrown forward during a crash or sudden stop and hurt someone.

When any of the rear seats are folded down or forward, do not place any objects on the dual deck luggage shelf. Make sure to store the shelf on the luggage area floor. It could be unlatched during a crash.

The maximum load on the dual deck luggage shelf is 10 kg. This is shown on a label on the left side of the dual deck luggage shelf (see next page). To prevent damage to the dual deck luggage shelf, do not exceed the maximum load.

Make sure all items in the luggage area are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard (See **Carrying Luggage** on page 365).

CONTINUED



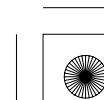


Dual Deck Luggage Shelf (For some types)

NOTICE

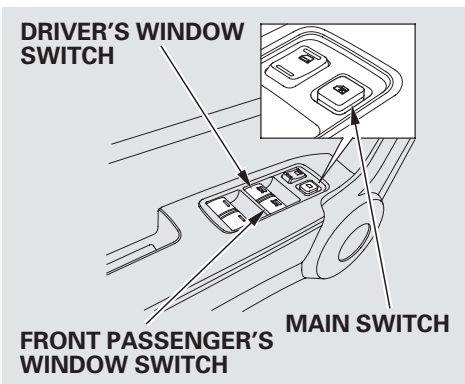
To prevent damage, do not place more than 10 kg on this shelf.

To remind you of how to use the dual deck luggage shelf properly, a label shown below is attached to the shelf.





Power Windows



Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to raise or lower any window. To open a window, push the switch down lightly and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Pull back on the switch and hold it to close the window.

The windows will operate for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. Opening either front door cancels this function.

⚠ WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: *Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).*

The driver's door armrest has a master power window control panel. To open any of the passengers' windows, push down lightly on the appropriate switch, and hold it until the window reaches the desired position. To close the window, pull back lightly on the window switch. Release the switch when the window gets to the position you want.

AUTO – To open the driver's or the front passenger's window fully, push the window switch firmly down, then release it. The window automatically goes down all the way. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

To close the driver's or the front passenger's window fully, pull back the window switch firmly, then release it. The window automatically goes all the way up. To stop the window from going all the way up, push down on the window switch briefly.

CONTINUED





Power Windows

To open or close the driver's or the front passenger's window partially, push down or pull back on the window switch lightly and hold it. The window will stop when you release the switch.

When you push the MAIN switch in, the switch is off, and the passengers' windows cannot be raised or lowered. To cancel this feature, push on the switch again to get it to pop out. Keep the MAIN switch pushed in when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.

AUTO REVERSE – If either of the front windows runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will stop, and then reverse direction. To close the window, remove the obstacle, then use the window switch again.

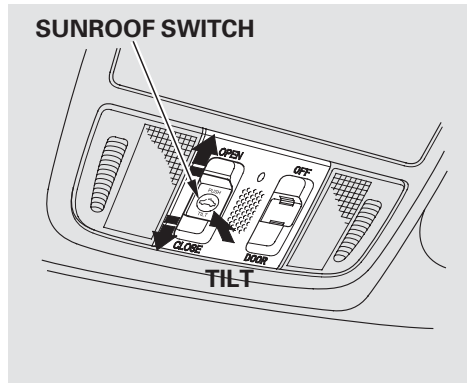
Auto reverse stops sensing when the window is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it.

NOTE: The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.





Sunroof (For some types)



The sunroof can be tilted up in the back for ventilation, or it can be slid back into the roof. Use the switch on the front ceiling to operate the sunroof. You must turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to operate the sunroof.

To tilt up the back of the sunroof, push on the centre of the sunroof switch. To stop the sunroof tilting up fully, push the switch briefly.

To open the sunroof, pull back on the switch lightly and hold it. Release the switch when the sunroof reaches the desired position. Push the switch forward lightly and hold it to close the sunroof. Release the switch to stop the operation.

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

AUTO – To open the sunroof fully, pull back the sunroof switch firmly, then release it. The sunroof automatically opens all the way. To stop the sunroof from opening, push the switch briefly.

To close the sunroof fully, push forward the sunroof switch firmly, then release it. The sunroof automatically closes all the way. To stop the sunroof from closing, push the switch briefly.

CONTINUED





Sunroof (For some types)

AUTO REVERSE – If the sunroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction and then stop. To close the sunroof, remove the obstacle, then use the sunroof switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

On some models

The sunroof has a key-off delay. You can still open and close the sunroof for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door.

NOTICE

If you try to open the sunroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the sunroof panel or its motor.

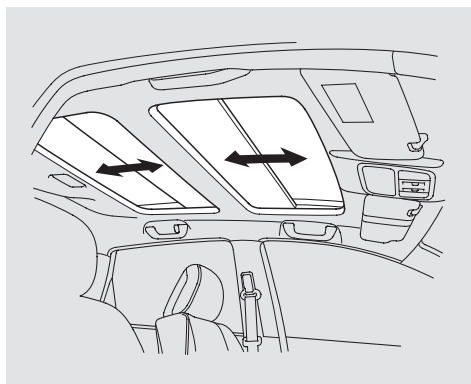
WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

WARNING: Extending the head, arms or other parts of the body through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving can cause serious injury or death.

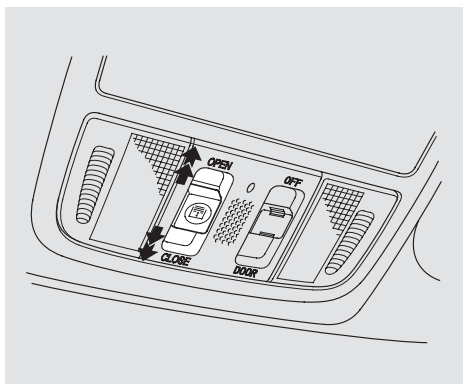




Sunshades (For some types)



Both of the front and rear sunshades can be opened. The front sunshade is rolled up in the centre holder from front to rear, and the rear sunshade from rear to front at the same time. Use the switch on the front ceiling to operate the sunshades. You must turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to operate the sunshades.



To open the sunshades, push the switch backward and hold it. To close them, push the switch forward and hold it. Release the switch when the sunshades reach the desired position, or to stop the operation.

The front and rear sunshades can only be opened or closed together.

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the sunshade on someone's hands or fingers may cause injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunshade before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

CONTINUED





Sunshades (For some types)

AUTO – To open the sunshades fully, push the switch backward firmly, then release it. The sunshades automatically open all the way. To stop the sunshades from opening, push the switch briefly.

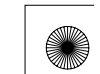
To close the sunshade fully, push the switch forward firmly, then release it. The sunshades automatically close all the way. To stop the sunshades from closing, push the switch briefly.

To open or close the sunshades partially, push the sunshade switch backward or forward lightly and hold it. The sunshade will stop when you release the switch.

AUTO REVERSE – If either of the front and rear sunshades runs into any obstacle while they are closing automatically, each sunshade will reverse direction and then stop. To close the sunshades, remove the obstacle, then use the sunshade switch again.

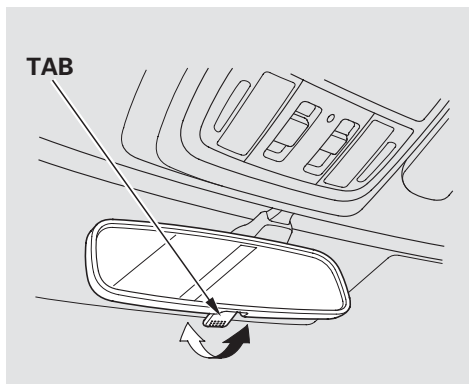
Auto reverse stops sensing when each sunshade is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunshades before closing them.

The sunshades have a key-off delay. You can still open and close the sunshades for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door.



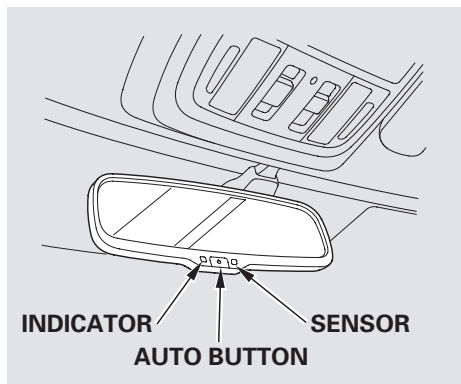


Mirrors



Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

The inside mirror has day and night positions. The night position reduces glare from headlights behind you. Flip the tab on the bottom edge of the mirror to select the day or night position.



On some models

The inside mirror can automatically darken to reduce glare. To turn on this feature, press the button on the bottom of the mirror. The AUTO indicator comes on as a reminder. When it is on, the mirror darkens when it senses the headlights of a vehicle behind you, then returns to normal visibility when the lights are gone. Press the button again to turn off this feature.

NOTICE

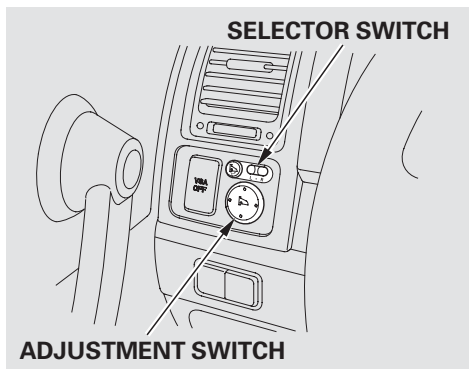
There is also a sensor on the back of the mirror. Items hung on the mirror may block this sensor and affect its performance.





Mirrors

Adjusting the Power Mirrors



1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Move the selector switch to L (left side) or R (right side).

3. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.
4. When you finish, move the selector switch to the centre (off) position. This turns off the adjustment switch to keep your settings.

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror (For some types)

The passenger's outside mirror has a reverse tilt feature. When in reverse, the mirror will tilt down slightly to improve your view as you parallel park. Shifting out of reverse will return the mirror to its original position.

Make sure to turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to use this feature.

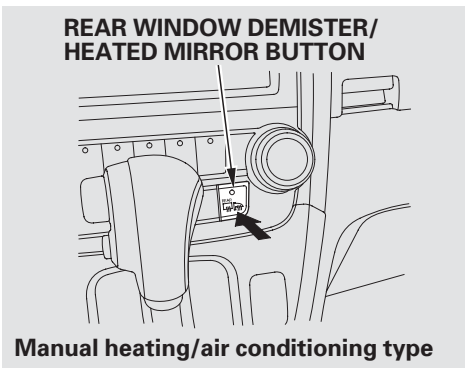
- To tilt the passenger's mirror, place the power mirror selector switch in the passenger's side position.
- To turn the feature off, place the switch in the centre position or the driver's side position.



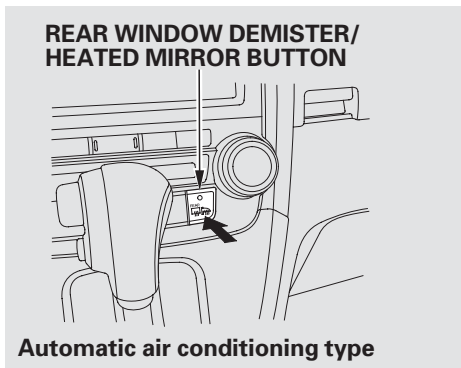


Mirrors

Power Mirror Heaters (For some types)

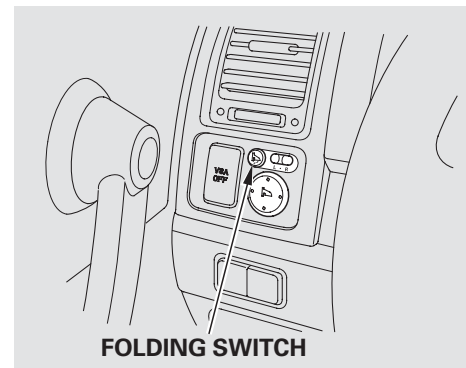


The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, turn on the heaters by pressing the rear window demister button. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters and the demister off.



On some types, this heated mirror function has a timer (see page 156).

Folding Door Mirrors (For some types)



Door mirrors can be folded by the folding switch next to the selector switch, which enables you to park your vehicle in a limited parking space easily. Make sure you fold out the mirrors before you start driving. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, press the folding switch to fold up both outside mirrors simultaneously. To fold out, press the switch again. *CONTINUED*

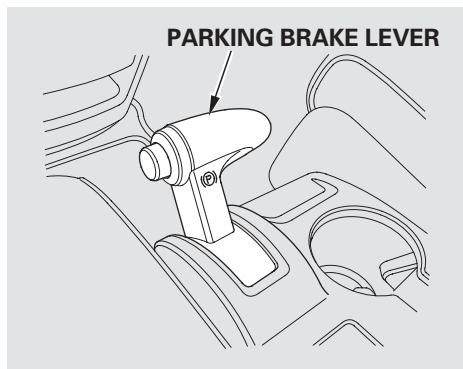




Mirrors, Parking Brake

Never drive your vehicle with the outside mirrors folded.


Parking Brake



To apply the parking brake, pull the lever up fully. To release it, pull up slightly, push the button, and lower the lever. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released (see page 88).

NOTICE

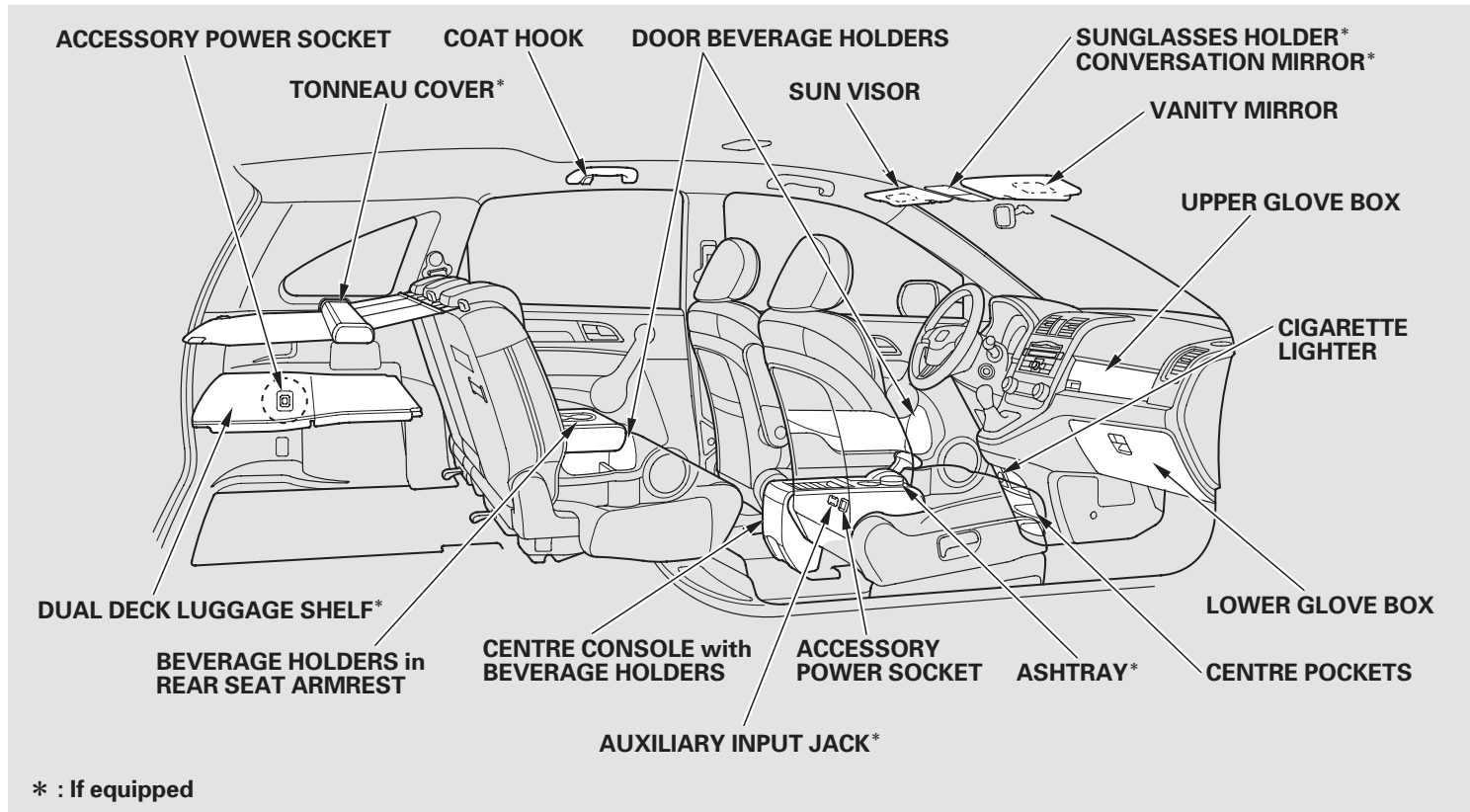
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and hubs. A beeper will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake on.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message on the multi-information display.





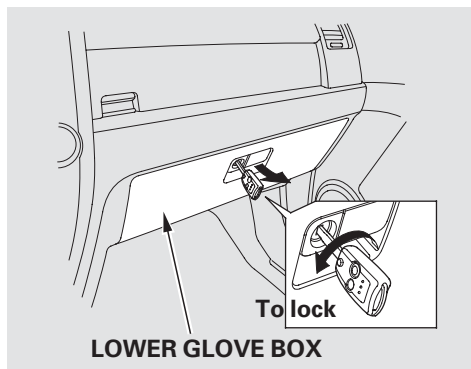
Interior Convenience Items





Interior Convenience Items

Lower Glove Box



Open the lower glove box by pulling the bottom of the handle. Close it with a firm push.

You can lock or unlock the glove box with the ignition key.

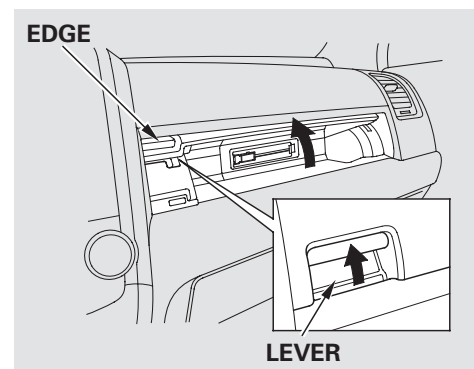
On some types, the glove box light comes on only when the position lights are on.

⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Upper Glove Box



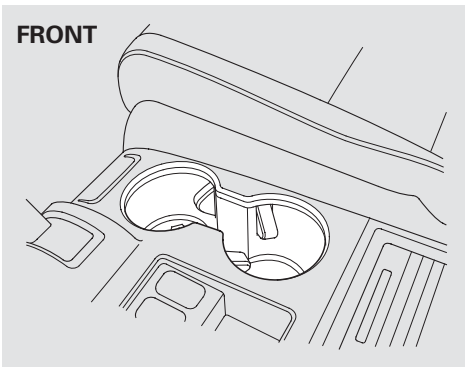
Open the upper glove box by pushing up the lever. Close it by pulling down on the edge under the lever.





Interior Convenience Items

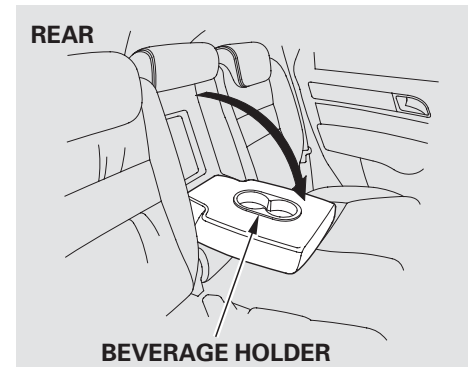
Beverage Holders



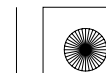
The front beverage holder is in the centre console compartment.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Liquid can also spill from the door pocket beverage holders when you open or close the doors. Use only resealable containers in the door pockets.

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.



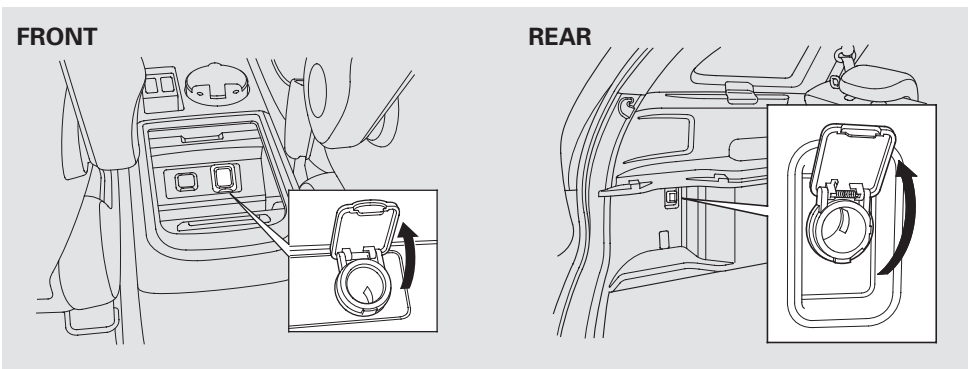
The rear seat also has a beverage holder in the centre armrest. To use it, pivot the armrest down.





Interior Convenience Items

Accessory Power Sockets



Your vehicle has two accessory power sockets. Each socket is intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

To use an accessory power socket, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. They will not power an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

When more than one socket is being used, the combined power rating of the accessories should be 120 watts or less (10 amps).

It is recommended that these accessory sockets are used for genuine Honda accessories.

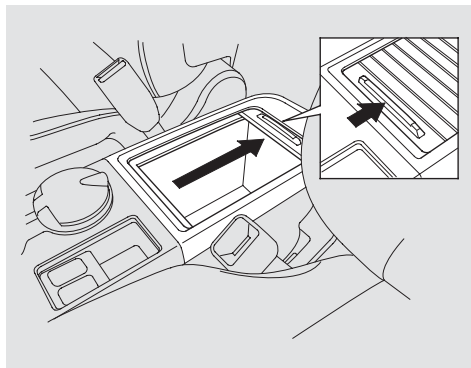
Make sure to put the socket cover back in place to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the socket.





Interior Convenience Items

Console Compartment

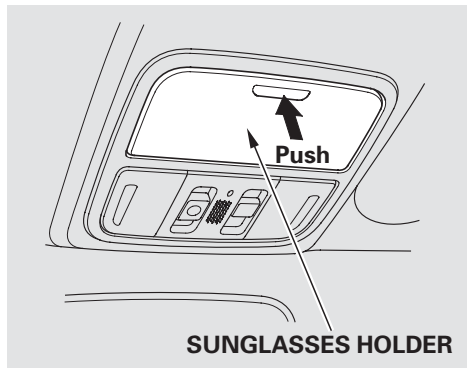


To open or close the console compartment, slide the lid rearward or forward.

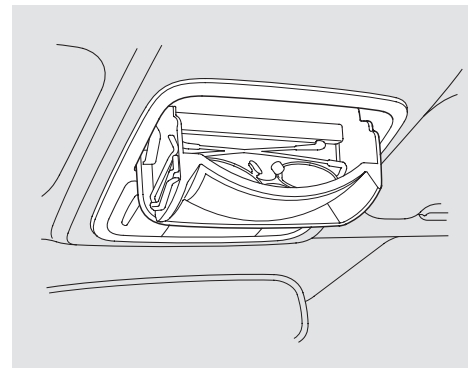
On some types

There is a sunglasses holder in the console compartment. Slide it forward or rearward to access the lower part of the compartment.

Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push then release the raised detent. It will unlatch and swing down. To close it, push it until it latches. Make sure the holder is closed while you are driving.



Some larger styles of sunglasses may not fit in the holder.

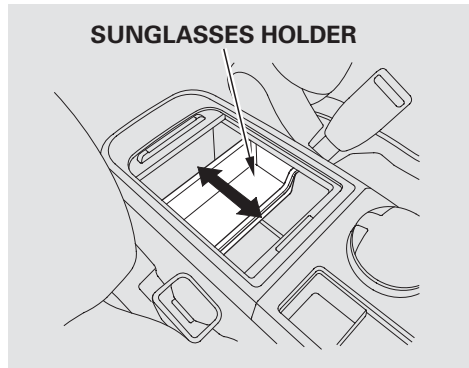
You may also store small items in this holder. Make sure they are small enough to let the holder close and latch, and that they are not heavy enough to cause the holder to pop open while driving.

CONTINUED



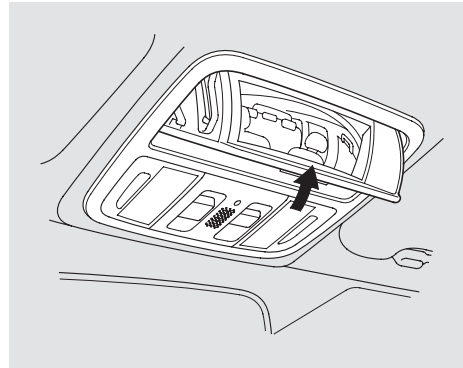


Interior Convenience Items



On some types
The sunglasses holder is located in the centre console compartment.

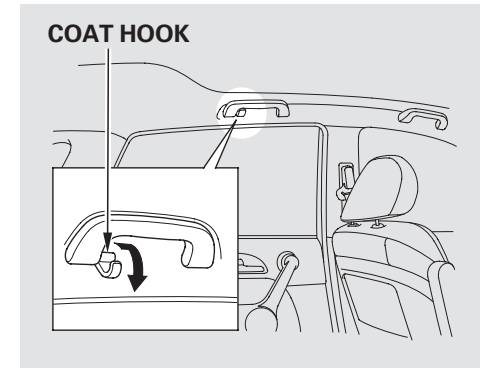
Conversation Mirror (For some types)



The sunglasses holder uses a convex mirror for its bottom panel. You can see all the vehicle passengers in this mirror. To use the mirror, open the sunglasses holder fully, push it to the first detent, and release it.

To switch back to the sunglasses holder, close the conversation mirror and then open the sunglasses holder.

Coat Hook



To use a coat hook, slide it out slightly, then pull it down.

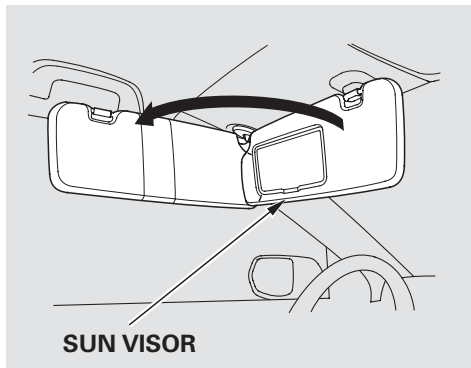
Make sure the coat hook is pulled up when you are not using it. This hook is not designed for large or heavy items.





Interior Convenience Items

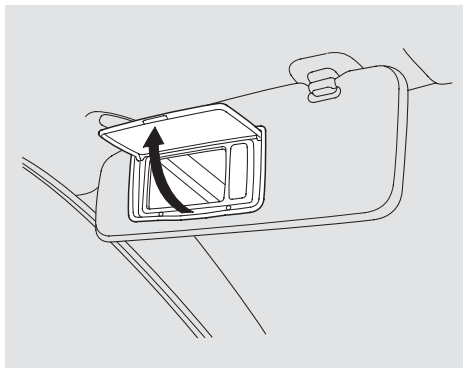
Sun Visor



To use the sun visor, pull it down. You can also use the sun visor at the side window. Remove the support rod from the clip and swing the sun visor toward the side window.

Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle.

Vanity Mirror

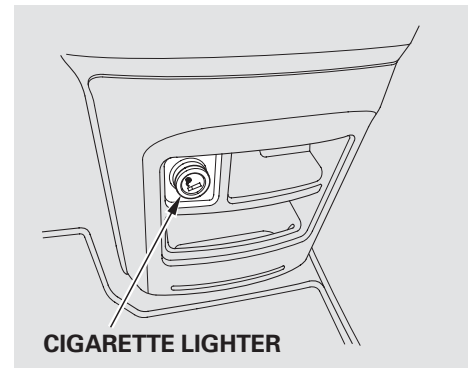


Pull up the vanity mirror cover to use it.

On some types
The light comes on when you pull up the cover.

Make sure you close the cover when you are not using the vanity mirror. The vanity mirror light will not come on if the sun visor is moved to the side window.

Cigarette Lighter



The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position for the cigarette lighter to work. To heat up the lighter, push it in. It will pop out when it is ready for use. Do not hold the lighter in while it is heating up, you could cause it to overheat.

CONTINUED



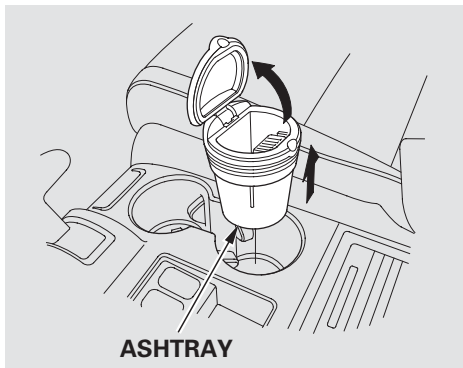


Interior Convenience Items

NOTICE

Do not try to insert any device other than the cigarette lighter in the socket. If you use any other device, the socket will be damaged and you will no longer be able to keep the cigarette lighter locked in the socket.

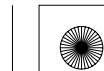
Ashtray



A removable ashtray is equipped with your vehicle. The ashtray fits in the beverage holders. To open it, pull up on the lid.

NOTICE

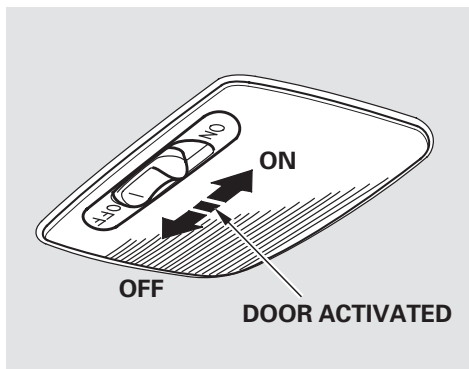
Use the ashtray only for cigarettes, cigars, and other smoking materials. To prevent a possible fire and damage to your vehicle, don't put paper or other things that can burn in the ashtray.





Interior Lights

Ceiling Light



The ceiling light has a three-position switch: ON, Door Activated, and OFF. In the Door Activated (centre) position, the light comes on when you:

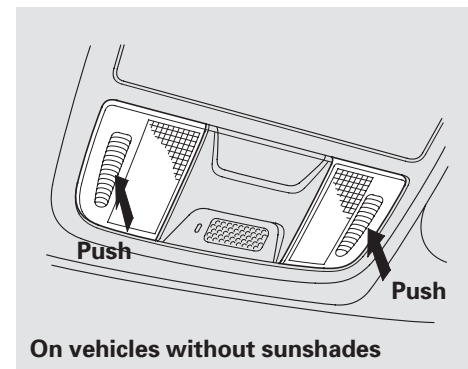
- Open any door.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch. If you do not open a door, the light fades out in about 30 seconds.

- Unlock the doors and the tailgate with the key or remote transmitter.

After all doors are closed tightly, the light dims slightly, then fades out in about 30 seconds. The light turns off before 30 seconds have elapsed if you insert the key to the ignition switch.

If you leave any door open without the key in the ignition switch, the ceiling light will go off after 3 minutes.

Spotlights



On vehicles without sunshades

All Models

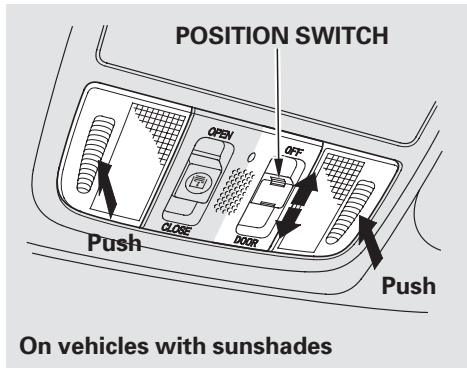
Turn on a spotlight by pushing the lens. Push the lens again to turn it off. You can use the spotlights at all times.

CONTINUED





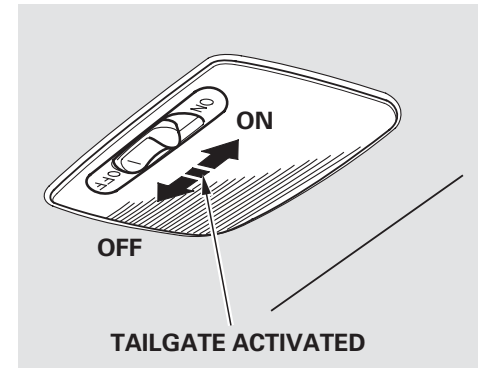
Interior Lights



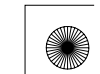
On vehicles with sunshades
 The spotlights have a two-position switch. In the DOOR position, the lights come on when you open any door. In the OFF position, the lights do not come on.

The spotlights (with the switch in the DOOR position) also come on when you unlock the door with the key or the remote transmitter, and when you remove the key from the ignition switch.

Luggage Area Light



The luggage area light has a three-position switch. In the OFF position, the light does not come on. In the centre position, it comes on when you open the tailgate. In the ON position, it stays on continuously.



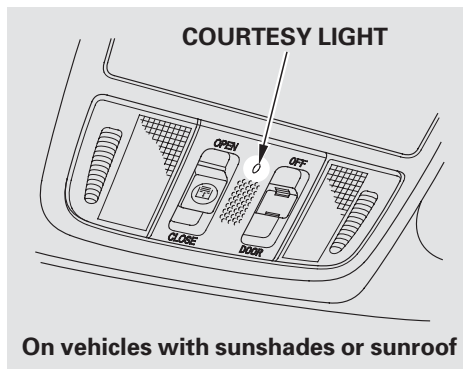


Interior Lights

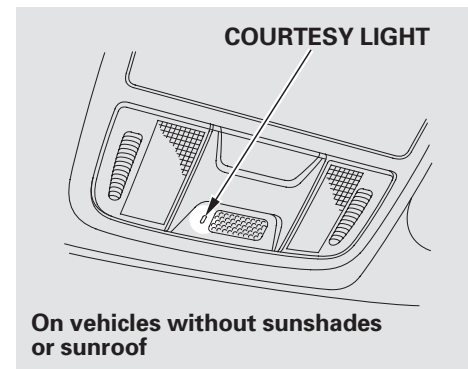
Ignition Switch Light

The ignition switch light comes on when you open the driver's door, and fades out in about 30 seconds after you close the door.

Courtesy Light



The courtesy light between the spotlights comes on when you turn the position lights on. To adjust its brightness, turn the instrument panel brightness control knob on the dashboard, with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position (see page 155).

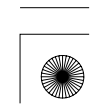
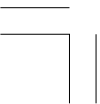




10/09/29 20:08:45 42SWAF30_229



224





Features

The heating and air conditioning system in your vehicle provides a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions.

The standard audio system on some models has many features. This section describes those features and how to use them.

On some types

Your vehicle has an anti-theft audio system that requires a code number to enable it.

On some types

The security system helps to discourage vandalism and theft of your vehicle.

Vents, Heating, and A/C	226
Using the A/C.....	231
Climate Control System.....	233
Sunlight and Temperature Sensors.....	241
Audio System	243
Playing the Radio.....	245
Adjusting the Sound	255
Playing a Disc.....	256
Disc Player/Changer Error Messages.....	267
Optional Disc Changer Error Messages.....	268
Protecting Your Discs.....	269
Playing an iPod®.....	272
iPod® Error Messages	278
Playing a USB Flash Memory Device	279
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages.....	288
Remote Audio Controls.....	289
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	290
Radio Theft Protection.....	291
Setting the Clock	293
Security System	295
Cruise Control.....	298

Adaptive Cruise Control	301
Parking Sensor System.....	319
Rearview Camera and Monitor....	324
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System.....	325





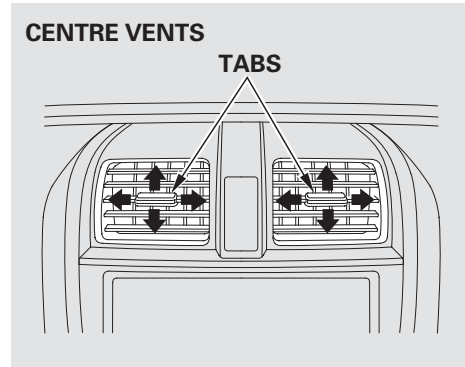
Vents, Heating, and A/C

On vehicles with manual heating/air conditioning system

Proper use of the heating and cooling system can make the interior dry and comfortable, and keep the windows clear for the best visibility.

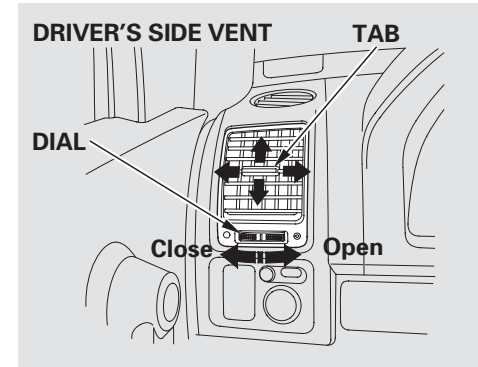
The engine must be running for the heater and air conditioning to generate hot and cold air.

Vent Controls

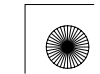


The direction of airflow from the vents in the centre and each corner of the dashboard is adjustable.

To adjust the airflow from each vent, move the tab up-and-down and side-to-side.



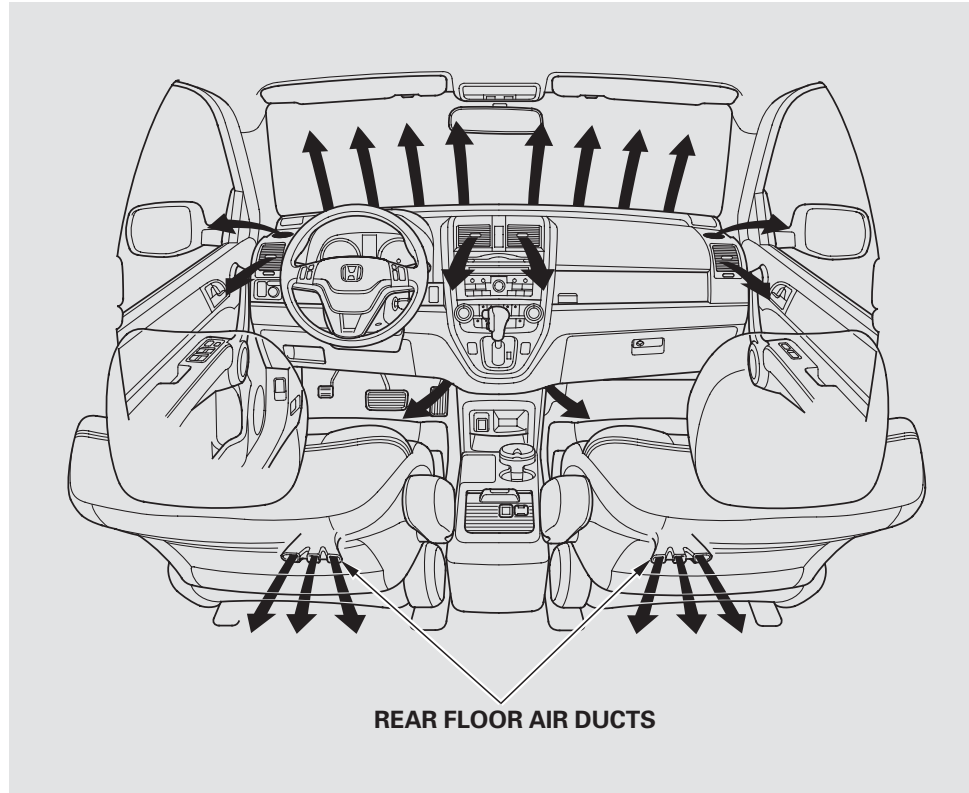
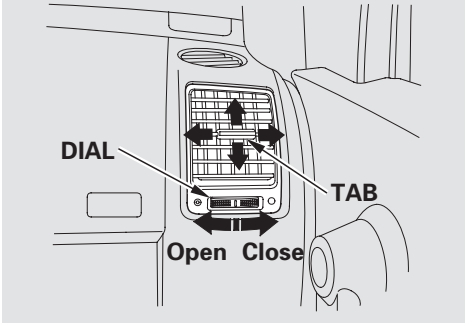
The vents in the corners of the dashboard can be opened and closed with the dials underneath them.



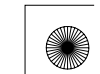


Vents, Heating, and A/C

PASSENGER'S SIDE VENT

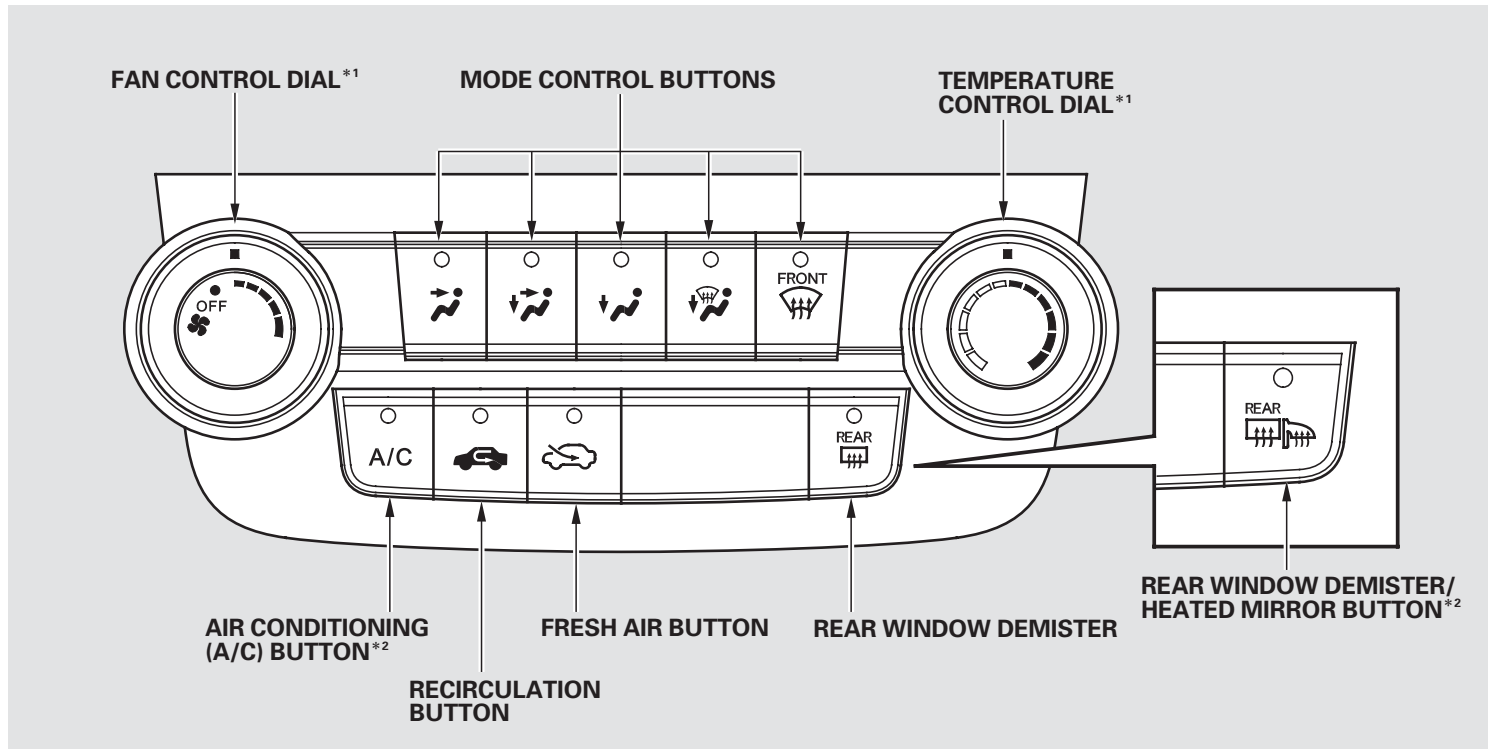


REAR FLOOR AIR DUCTS





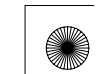
Vents, Heating, and A/C



*1 : On the right-hand drive type, these controls are in opposite locations.

*2 : For some types

228 Features





Vents, Heating, and A/C

Fan Control Dial

Turn the dial clockwise to increase the fan speed and airflow. Turn the dial anticlockwise to decrease them.

Temperature Control Dial

Turning this dial clockwise increases the temperature of the airflow.

Air Conditioning (A/C) Button

If equipped



This button turns the air conditioning on and off. The indicator in the button is on when the A/C is on.

Rear Window Demister Button

This button turns the rear window demister off and on (see page 156).

On some models, this button also operates the heated outside mirrors (see page 211).

Fresh Air and Recirculation Buttons

These two buttons control the source of air going into the system. In fresh air mode , air comes from outside the vehicle. In recirculation mode , the interior air recycles through the system.

The outside air intakes for the heating and cooling system are at the base of the windscreen. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.

The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.

Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.






Vents, Heating, and A/C


Mode Control


Use the mode control buttons to select the vents air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes.

 Air flows from the centre and corner vents in the dashboard.

 Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

 Air flows from the floor vents.


 Airflow is divided between the floor vents and demister vents at the base of the windscreen.

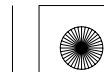
 Air flows from the demister vents at the base of the windscreen.

When you select  or , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C.

Ventilation

The flow-through ventilation system draws in outside air, circulates it through the interior, then discharges it through vents near the tailgate.

1. Set the temperature to the lower limit.
2. Make sure the A/C is off.
3. Select  and fresh air mode.
4. Set the fan to the desired speed.






Vents, Heating, and A/C

Using the Heater

The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air. If the engine is cold, it will be several minutes before you feel warm air coming from the system.


1. Select  and fresh air mode.
2. Set the fan to the desired speed.
3. Adjust the warmth of the air with the temperature control dial.

On Diesel models only

Your vehicle has the hot gas heater system. It assists the heater to warm the air (see page 242).

Using the A/C

On vehicles with air conditioning system
Air conditioning places an extra load on the engine. Watch the engine coolant temperature gauge (see page 100). If it moves near the red zone, turn off the A/C until the gauge reading returns to normal.

1. Turn on the A/C by pressing the button. The indicator in the button comes on when a fan speed is selected.
2. Make sure the temperature is set to maximum cool.
3. Select .
4. If the outside air is humid, select recirculation mode. If the outside air is dry, select fresh air mode.
5. Set the fan to the desired speed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning on the A/C, and setting the fan to maximum speed in fresh air mode.

Dehumidify the Interior

On vehicles with air conditioning system
Air conditioning, as it cools, removes moisture from the air. When used in combination with the heater, it makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.

1. Turn the fan on.
2. Turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select  and fresh air mode.
4. Adjust the temperature to your preference.

This setting is suitable for all driving conditions whenever the outside temperature is above 0°C.








Vents, Heating, and A/C

To Defog and Defrost



To remove fog from the inside of the windows:

1. Set the fan to the desired speed or high for faster defrosting.
2. Turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select  and fresh air mode. On some types, when you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C .
4. Adjust the temperature so the airflow feels warm.
5. Select  to help clear the rear window.
6. To increase airflow to the windscreen, close the side vents.

On some types

When you switch to another mode from , the A/C stays on. Press the A/C button to turn it off.

To Remove Exterior Frost or Ice From the Windows

1. Select  and fresh air mode. On some types, the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C.
2. Select .
3. Set the fan and temperature controls to maximum level.

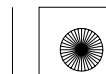
To clear the windows faster, you can close the dashboard corner vents by rotating the wheel below it. This will send more warm air to the windscreen defroster vents. Once the windscreen is clear, select the fresh air mode to avoid fogging the windows.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

To Turn Everything Off

Turning the fan speed control dial all the way to the left shuts the system off.

- Keep the system off for short periods only.
- To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.





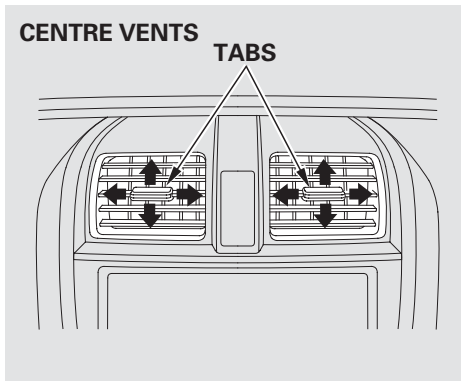
Climate Control System

On vehicles with air conditioning system

The automatic climate control system in your vehicle maintains the interior temperature you select, removes moisture from the air and makes the interior dry. The system also adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels.

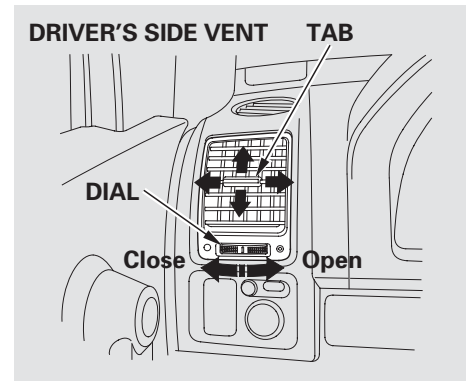
You can adjust the temperatures of the driver's side and the passenger's side independently (see page 240).

In the AUTO mode, the vehicle's interior temperature is independently regulated for the driver and passenger.



To activate the climate control system, the engine must be running.

The direction of airflow from the vents in the centre and each corner of the dashboard is adjustable.



To adjust the airflow from each vent, move the tab in the centre of each vent up-and-down and side-to-side.

The vents in the corners of the dashboard can be opened and closed with the dials underneath them.

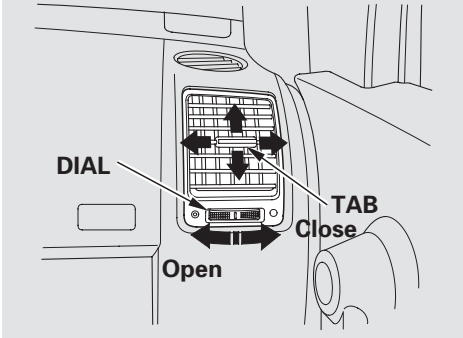
CONTINUED





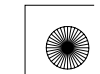
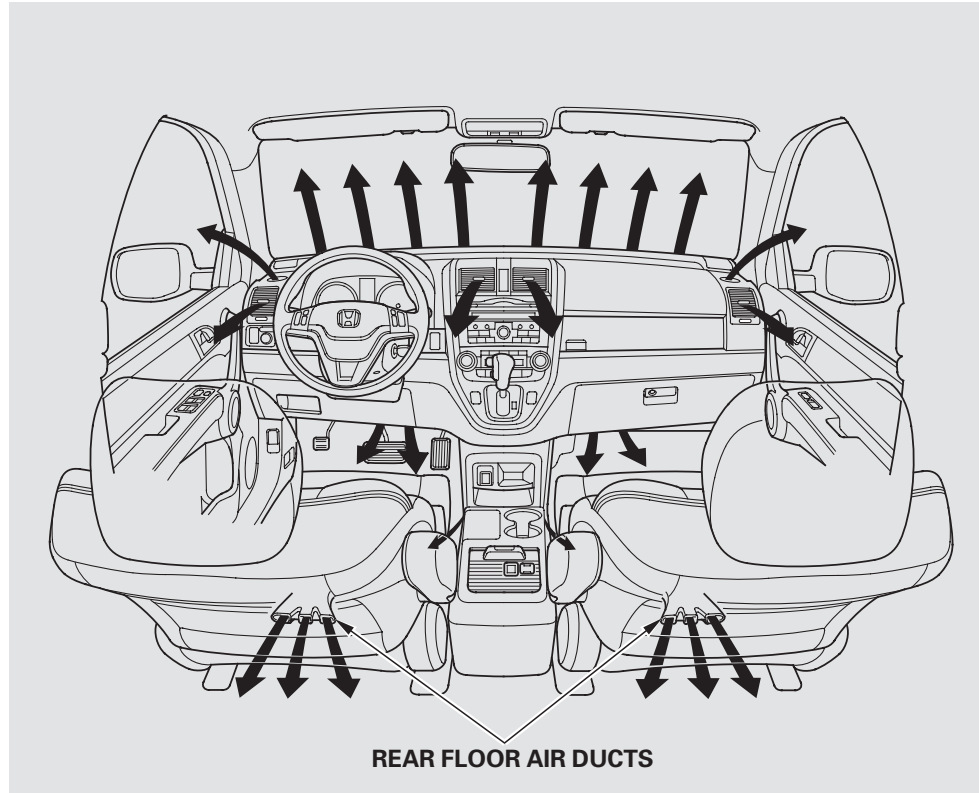
Climate Control System

PASSENGER'S SIDE VENT



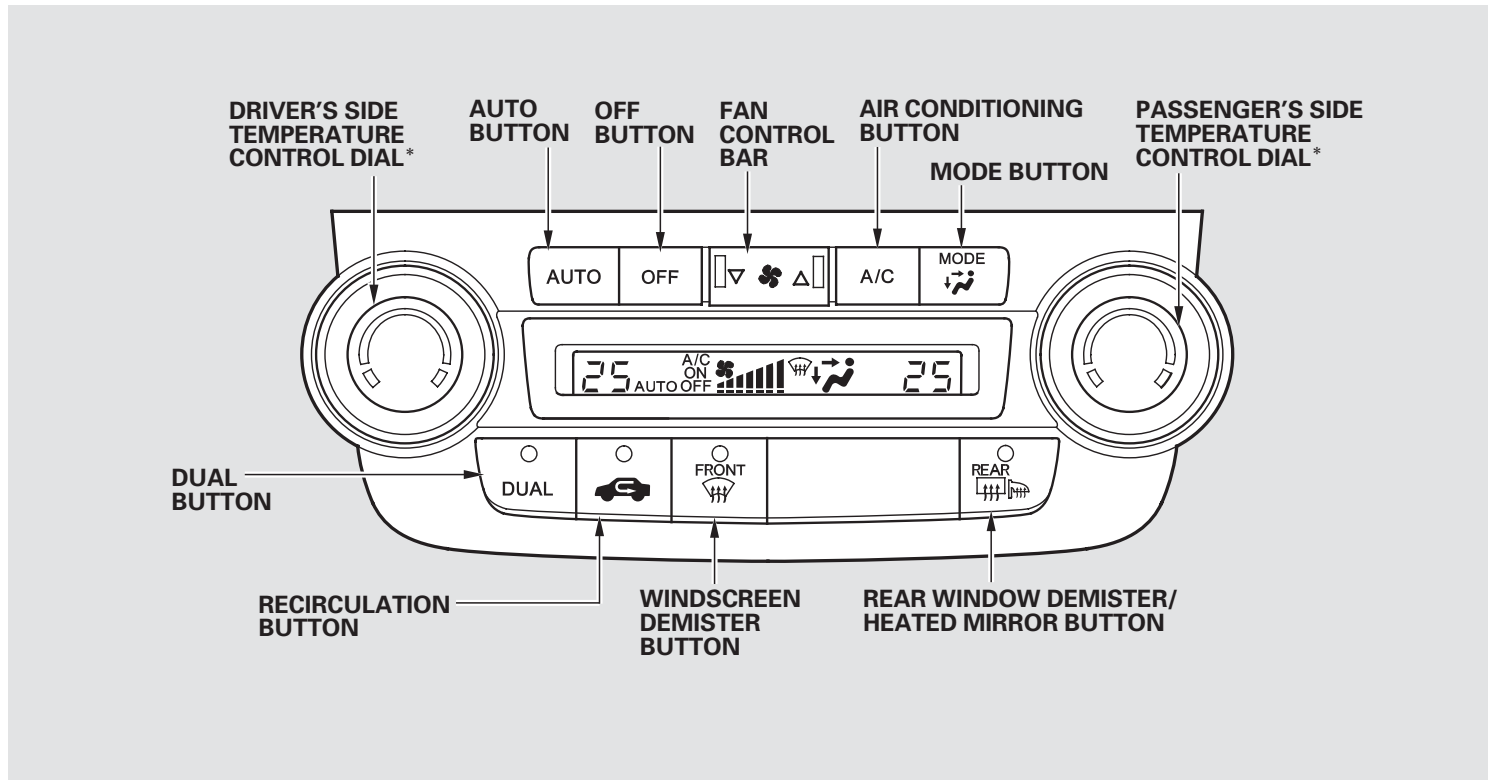
Voice Control System

On vehicles with navigation system
In addition to the standard air conditioning controls, the climate control system in your vehicle can be operated using the voice control system. See the navigation system manual for complete details.

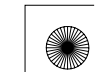




Climate Control System



* : On the right-hand drive type, these controls are in opposite locations.





Climate Control System

Automatic Climate Control

To put the automatic climate control in fully-automatic mode:



1. Press the AUTO button.
2. Set the desired temperature by turning the driver's side temperature control dial. You will see AUTO and the selected temperature in the display. You can also set the passenger's side temperature by turning the passenger's side dial.

The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference.

When you adjust a fan control, the fan is taken out of AUTO mode.

Temperature Control

The driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately. Turn the dial of the appropriate temperature control clockwise to increase the temperature of airflow. Turn the dial anticlockwise to decrease it. Each set temperature is shown in the display.

When you set the temperature to its lower limit () or its upper limit (), the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.

In cold weather, the fan will not come on automatically until the heater starts to develop warm air.

When the indicator in the dual button is on, the driver's side and passenger's side temperature can be controlled independently (see page 240).

On Diesel models only

Your vehicle has the hot gas heater system. It assists the heater to warm the air (see page 242).

Dual Button

You can set the temperatures for the driver's side and the passenger's side separately when this button is pressed (indicator is on). When the indicator in the DUAL button is off, the temperatures for both sides are synchronized to the driver's side set temperature. When defrost mode is selected, dual mode operation is cancelled.





Climate Control System

To Turn Everything Off

If you press the OFF button, the climate control system shuts off completely.

- Keep the system completely off for short periods only.
- To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.

Semi-automatic Operation

You can manually select various functions of the climate control system when it is in fully-automatic mode. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word AUTO in the display to go out.

Air Conditioning (A/C) Button

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning on and off. You will see A/C ON or A/C OFF in the display.

When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the temperature control dial below the outside temperature.

Recirculation Button

When the recirculation indicator is on, air from the vehicle's interior is sent throughout the system again. When the indicator is off, air is brought in from the outside of the vehicle (fresh air mode).

The outside air intakes for the climate control system are at the base of the windshield. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.

The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.

Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

CONTINUED

Features 237





Climate Control System


Fan Control

Select the fan speed by pressing either side of the fan speed control bar (▲ or ▼). The fan speed is shown in vertical bars on the display.


Mode Button

Use the MODE button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes.

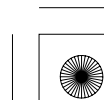
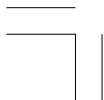
Each time you press the MODE button, the display shows the mode selected.

 Airflow is divided between the floor and corner vents, and the demister vents at the base of the windscreen.

 Air flows from the floor and corner vents.

 Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

 Air flows from the centre and corner vents in the dashboard.







Climate Control System



Windscreen Demister Button

This button directs the main airflow to the windscreen for faster defrosting. It also overrides any mode selection you may have made.

When you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. For faster defrosting, manually set the fan speed to high. You can also increase airflow to the windscreen by closing the corner vents on the dashboard.

When you turn off  by pressing the button again, the system returns to its former settings.

To remove fog from the inside of the windows, set as follows:

1. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C.
2. Adjust the temperature with the driver's side temperature control so the airflow feels warm.
3. Select  to help clear the rear window.
4. To increase airflow to the windscreen, close the corner vents. For faster defogging, manually set the fan speed to high.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

When the indicator in the button is on, the front passenger's temperature cannot be set separately from the driver's.

Rear Window Demister Button

This button turns the rear window demister off and on (see page 156).

Pushing this button also turns the power mirror heaters on and off.






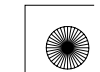
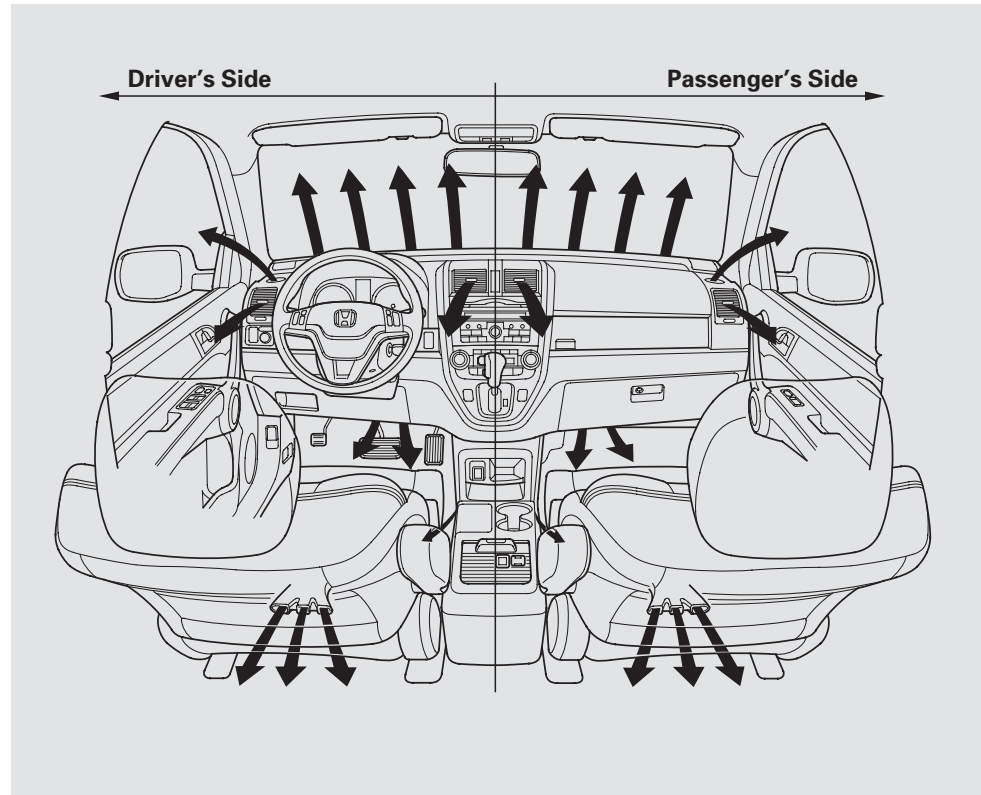
Climate Control System

Dual Temperature Control

The temperatures of the driver's side and the passenger's side can be controlled independently when the indicator in the DUAL button is on.

To adjust the driver's side, turn the driver's side temperature control dial on the climate control panel. To adjust the passenger's side, turn the passenger's side temperature control dial.

Push AUTO or . The selected temperatures appear in the display. When the indicator in the DUAL button is off, you can adjust both sides to the same temperature by adjusting the driver's temperature control dial.



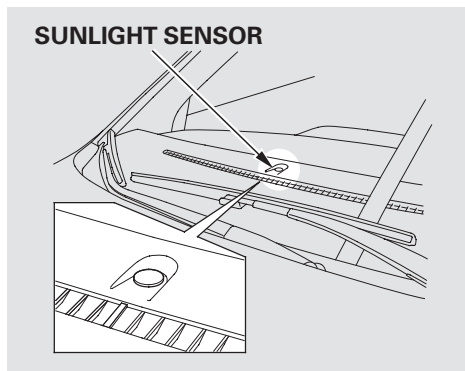


Climate Control System

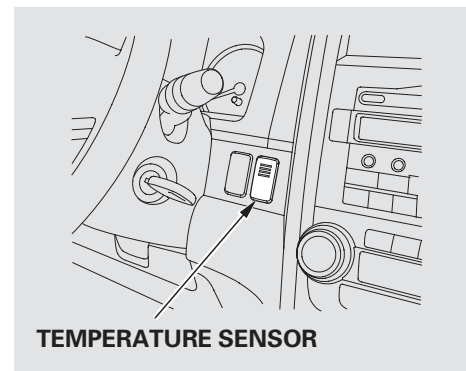
To set the driver's side temperature to a different value than the passenger's side, press the DUAL button, then turn the temperature control dial on the control panel. To set the passenger's side to a different value than the driver's side, turn the passenger's side temperature control dial. You can adjust the passenger's side without pressing the DUAL button first.

When you set the temperature to its lower limit or its upper limit, it will be displayed as "Lo" or "Hi".

Sunlight and Temperature Sensors



The climate control system has two sensors: a sunlight sensor on top of the dashboard, and a temperature sensor next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or spill any liquid on them.





Climate Control System

Hot Gas Heater System

On Diesel models only

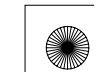
Your vehicle has the hot gas heater system. It assists the heater until the engine warms up after you start the engine. This system uses your vehicle's air conditioning system to warm the air. Under the following conditions, the hot gas heater system operates automatically.

- The engine coolant is cold (under about 75°C).
- The outside temperature is low (under about 5°C).
- Any temperature except for the maximum cool can be set with the driver's side temperature control dial.
- The fan is set to the desired speed.

After the engine warms up or the outside temperature is high, the hot gas heater system will stop automatically.

You may hear some noise from the engine compartment. This is normal; it is the hot gas heater activation.

The hot gas heater system will not activate if the outside temperature is too cold (under -35°C).





Audio System

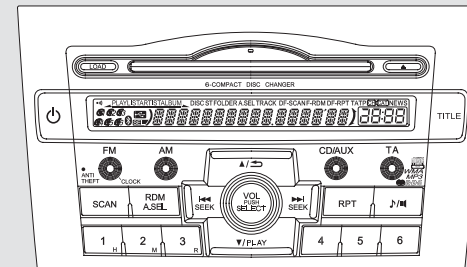
The audio system is standard equipment on some models. This section explains how to operate the standard audio system installed on vehicles without navigation system. Refer to the navigation system owner's manual for information of how to operate the audio system on the vehicle with navigation system. The anti-theft feature may disable the system if it is disconnected from the vehicle's battery. To get the system working again, you must enter a code number (see page 291).

For some EU countries

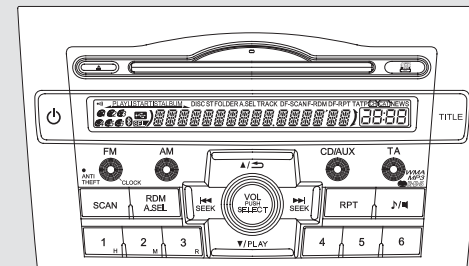
This product conforms to DM 28/8/1995, N. 548, by complying with the requirements specified in DM 25/6/1985 (par. 3, All. A) and DM 27/8/1987 (All. I).

Without navigation system

Audio System with In-dash Disc Changer



Audio System with In-dash Disc Player



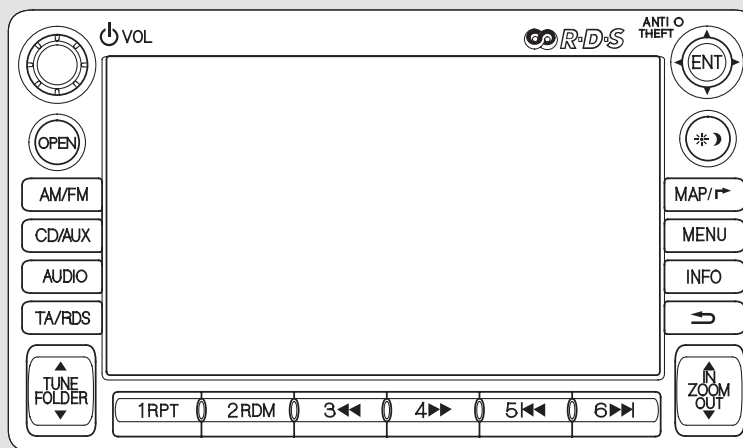


Audio System

Voice Control System

On vehicles with navigation system
In addition to the standard audio controls, the audio system in your vehicle can be operated using the voice control system. See the navigation system manual for complete details.

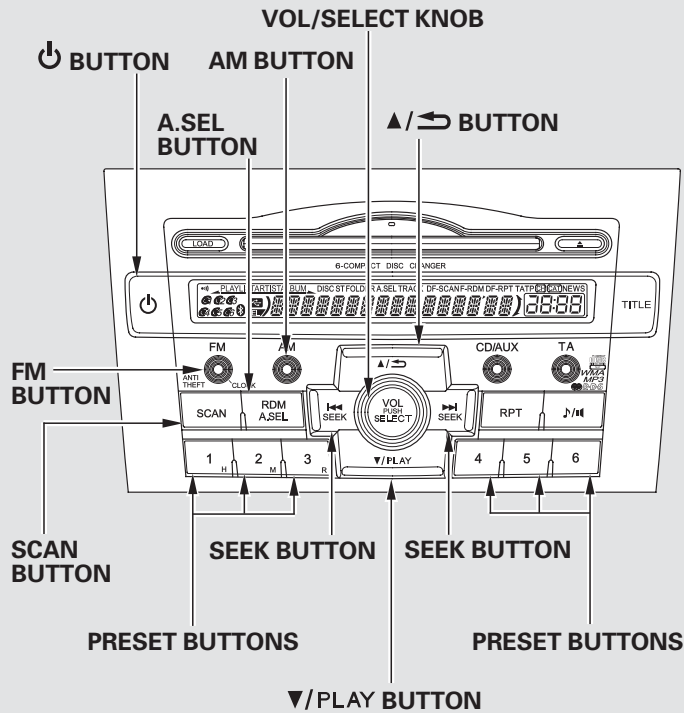
With navigation system



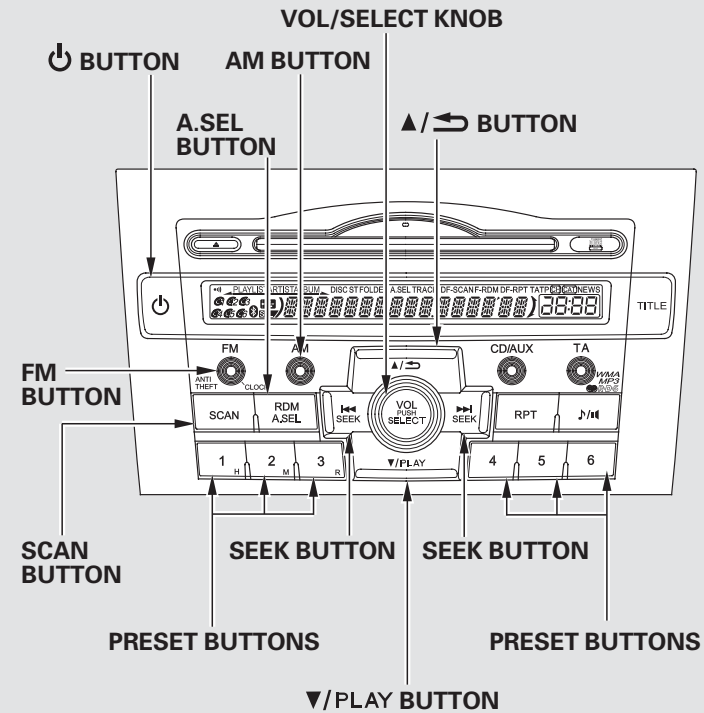


Playing the Radio

Audio System with In-dash Disc Changer



Audio System with In-dash Disc Player





Playing the Radio

To Play the Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. Turn the system on by pushing the FM or AM button. Adjust the volume by turning the VOL/SELECT knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are displayed. To change bands, press the AM or FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

On the AM band, AM noise reduction turns on automatically.

To Select a Station

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, seek, scan, the preset buttons, and auto select.

TUNE – Use the SEEK button to tune to a desired frequency. Press the button to tune to a higher frequency, and the button to tune to a lower frequency.

You can also use the select button and VOL knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Push the select button. You will see “” in the display. Turn the VOL knob clockwise to tune to a higher frequency, or anticlockwise to tune to a lower frequency.

The mode will be cancelled about 10 seconds after you stop adjusting the knob. If you want to cancel the mode within 10 seconds, push the select button, (/↵) button, or (▼/PLAY) button.

SEEK – The SEEK function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press and hold the or button until you hear a beep.

SCAN – The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. When the system finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.





Playing the Radio

Preset — Each preset button can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM.
2. Use the tune, seek, or scan function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the preset number (1 – 6), and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

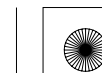
AUTO SELECT — If you are travelling and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Press the A. SEL button. You will see A. SEL flashing in the display, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. The system stores the frequencies of 6 FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see a “0” displayed after pressing a preset button if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons as previously described.

To turn off auto select, press the A. SEL button. This restores the presets you originally set.






Playing the Radio

Radio Data System (RDS)

With your audio system, you can utilize many convenient features provided by the radio data system (RDS).

With the FM band selected, you can keep listening to the same station even if its frequency changes as you enter different regions while you are travelling.

The RDS function turns on automatically when you turn the system on. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the frequency display will change to the station name. Then, the system will automatically keep selecting the frequency with the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the same programmes. This can save you the trouble of retuning to obtain the same station as long as you are in the same RDS network area.

You can turn on or off the RDS function and select the RDS programmes. To switch the function and select the programme, press the  button for more than 2 seconds with the audio system on. You will hear a beep. Press any of the preset buttons (1 through 6) to select the function. Each preset button has the following function. Pressing the preset button switches the function between on and off (24H and 12H on the clock mode).

Preset 1: AF ON/OFF – Alternative frequency function on or off

Preset 2: REG ON/OFF – Regional programme on or off

Preset 3: PS DISP ON/OFF – Programme service function on or off

Preset 4: AUTO TP ON/OFF – Automatic traffic programme on or off

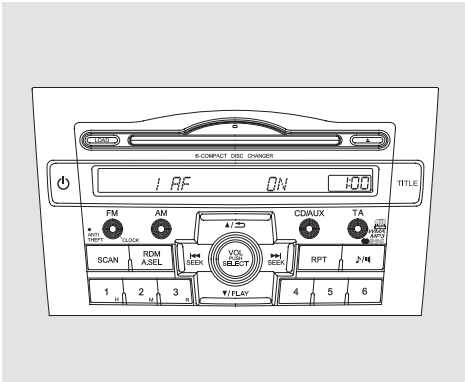
Preset 5: NEWS ON/OFF – News programme on or off


Preset 6: CLOCK 24H/12H





Playing the Radio



To turn on the RDS, select 1 AF ON by pressing the preset 1. To turn off the RDS, select 1 AF OFF. Press the  button again to store the setting.

AF (Alternative Frequency) – This function automatically selects a frequency with the same programme in the RDS network area.

REGIONAL (Regional Programme) – This function keeps the regional programme and does not change the frequency even if the signal becomes too weak.

PS DISP (Programme Service Display) – This function shows the radio station name which you are listening to.

AUTO TP (Automatic Traffic Information Programme) – This function automatically tunes to the radio station which is broadcasting the traffic information.

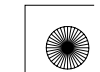
NEWS (News Programme) – This function automatically tunes to the radio station which is broadcasting newscasts.

CLOCK – With this function, you can switch the clock display between 24-hours and 12-hours.

When the signals of the RDS station become so weak that the system can no longer follow the station, the system will hold the last tuned frequency and the display will change from the station name to the frequency.

In some countries, you cannot utilize features provided by RDS as the RDS function is not provided for all stations.

CONTINUED





Playing the Radio

Programme Service Name Display

If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the frequency display will disappear and the station name or PTY information will be displayed. For more information on the PTY, see page 251.

TA (Traffic Announcement) Standby Function

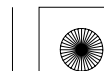
When you press and release the TA button, TA comes on in the display and the system stands by for traffic announcements.

When the automatic traffic information programme (AUTO TP ON) is selected, TP will come on in the display. This indicates that the traffic reports can be received from the traffic information broadcasting station.

AUTO TP cross-references other programme services that broadcast traffic information, and the traffic reports can be received through another programme service in the RDS network area.

You can receive traffic information while you are listening to a disc or playing an appropriate audio device. If the system is tuned to a TP station before playing a disc or an audio device, the system will stand by for traffic announcements with the TA button pressed (TA indicator is on) and the system will switch from disc or AUX mode to the traffic announcement when it begins. You will see TA-INFO in the display. The system will return to the disc or AUX mode when the traffic information is finished.

You can also switch to the normal audio mode while you are listening to the traffic information by pressing the TA button. It does not cancel the TA standby function.





Playing the Radio

To adjust the volume of the traffic announcement, turn the VOL/SELECT knob while the announcement is broadcasting. The adjusted volume level will be stored, then that level will be used on the next traffic announcement. If you adjust the volume below the minimum level, the default level (level 9) will be used the next time. The volume of the PTY NEWS or the PTY ALARM function can also be adjusted (see page 254).

If your vehicle's battery goes dead, or is disconnected, the traffic announcement volume level will be reset to the default setting (level 9).

To turn off the TA function, press the TA button again. TA will go out from the display.

Pressing the TA button will not turn off the TA function while you are listening to the traffic information. It will just switch to the selected audio playing mode.

If you use seek or auto select with the TA function on, the system searches only TP stations.

PTY (Programme Type) Display Function

When either of the ▲/▶ or the ▼/PLAY button is pressed, the display shows you the programme type of the selected RDS station. For example, if the station is broadcasting drama, DRAMA is shown in the display. If it is a station of scientific programmes, SCIENCE is shown. The principal PTYs are shown as follows.

NEWS: Short accounts of facts, events, publicly expressed views, reportage, etc.
CURRENT AFFAIRS: Topical programmes expanding upon the news.

CONTINUED



Playing the Radio

INFORMATION: General information and advice.

SPORT: Programmes concerned with any aspect of sports.

EDUCATION: Educational programmes.

DRAMA: All radio plays and serials.

CULTURE: Programmes concerned with any aspect of national or regional culture.

SCIENCE: Programmes about nature, science, and technology.

VARIED SPEECH: Light entertainment programmes.

POP MUSIC: Commercial music of popular appeal.

ROCK MUSIC: Contemporary modern music.

EASY LISTENING: Light music.

LIGHT CLASSICS M: Light classics; classical music for non-specialist appreciation.

SERIOUS CLASSICS: Traditional classics.

OTHER MUSIC: Other types of music, such as R & B, Reggae.

WEATHER/METR: Weather information.

FINANCE: Programmes concerned with economy.

CHILDREN'S PROGS: Programmes for children.

RELIGION: Programmes concerned with religion.

SOCIAL AFFAIRS: Social affairs programmes.

PHONE IN: Programmes consisting of listener's message.

TRAVEL/TOURING: Programmes concerned with travel.

LEISURE/HOBBY: Programmes about hobbies and recreational activities.

JAZZ MUSIC: Jazz music.

COUNTRY MUSIC: Country music.

NATION MUSIC: National music.

OLDIES M: Oldies music, "Golden age" based programmes.

FOLK MUSIC: Folk music.

DOCUMENTARY: Documentary programmes.





Playing the Radio

When you press either of the **▲/▶** button or **▼/PLAY** button, the display will show different PTYs (see the PTYs list on the previous page).

After you select the desired programme type, the system will search for a station with the same PTY code as the selected programme type. When you use this function for the first time, NEWS will appear as it was preset at the factory.

After your desired PTY is displayed, press either TUNE/SEEK button (**◀SEEK** or **▶SEEK**) within 5 seconds. The system will go into the PTY search mode and search for a station of the selected PTY. If there is no station available in the selected PTY, NO PTY is displayed for about 5 seconds and the PTY search mode is cancelled.

If the selected RDS station does not transmit PTY data, NO PTY is displayed. When the selected station is not an RDS station, NO RDS is displayed for about 5 seconds.

The PTY setting mode is cancelled if no further steps are taken within 5 seconds after selecting the desired PTY with the **▲/▶** or **▼/PLAY** button.

Some stations may broadcast the programmes with different contents from their PTY code.

PTY/News Interrupt Function

To activate this function, press the **⏻** button for more than 2 seconds and select NEWS. The system will hold the last tuned FM station/network PTY while you are listening to the disc. With this function on, playing disc or an appropriate audio device is interrupted and the system switches from disc, AUX or USB mode to the FM newscast when the newscast is broadcasting from the FM station.

You can change the volume level of the interrupted newscast. Refer to page 251 for how to adjust the volume level.

When the programme is changed to another programme or the frequency cannot be received for 10 seconds due to a weak signal, the system will return to the disc mode automatically.

CONTINUED



Playing the Radio

Your audio system has another interrupt function (including TA function). The first activated interrupt function has priority over the others and the indication of the other interrupt function goes out. To activate the other interrupt function, turn off the current interrupt function.


PTY Alarm

PTY code “ALARM” is used for emergency announcements, such as natural disasters. When this code is received, “ALARM” comes on the display and the volume is changed. When the alarm is cancelled, the system will return to the normal operation mode.





Adjusting the Sound

Press the sound () button to select an appropriate setting: bass, treble, fader, balance, subwoofer (if equipped), and SVC (speed-sensitive volume compensation). Turn the VOL/SELECT knob to adjust the setting.

BASS – Adjusts the bass.

TREBLE – Adjusts the treble.

FADER – Adjusts the front-to-back strength of the sound.

BALANCE – Adjusts the balance, or side-to-side strength of the sound.

(If equipped)

SUBWOOFER – Adjusts the strength of sound from the subwoofer speaker.

SVC – Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

Each mode is shown in the display as it changes. Turn the VOL/SELECT knob to adjust the setting to your liking.

Except for SVC

When the level reaches centre, you will see a “C” in the display. Each time the level reaches maximum, minimum or centre, you will hear a beep.

The system will return to the audio display about 10 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode.

Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)

The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

The SVC has four modes: SVC OFF, SVC LOW, SVC MID, and SVC HIGH. Turn the VOL/SELECT knob to adjust the setting to your liking. If you feel the sound is too loud, choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.

Audio System Lighting

You can use the instrument panel brightness control knob to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page 155). The audio system illuminates when the position lights are on, even if the radio is turned off.

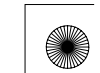
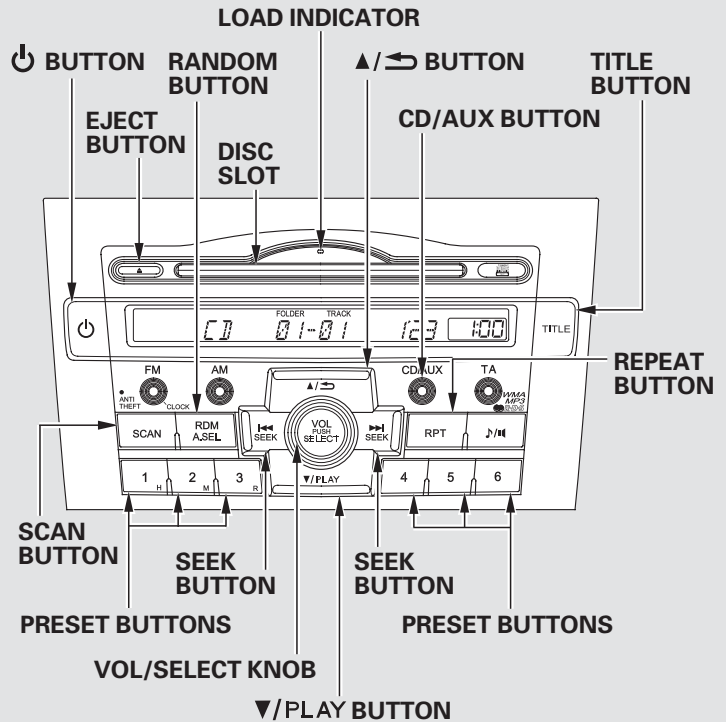
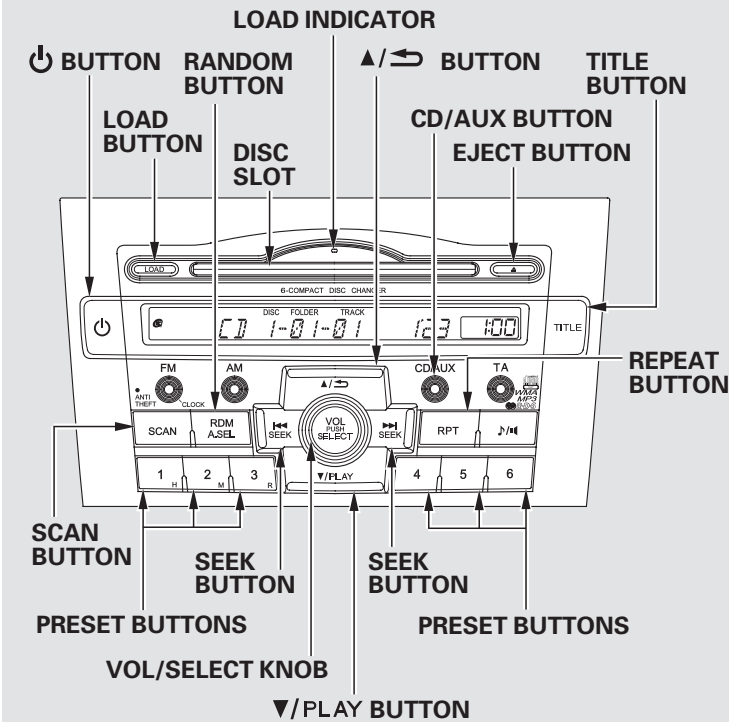




Playing a Disc

Audio System with In-dash Disc Changer

Audio System with In-dash Disc Player





Playing a Disc

To Play a Disc

To load or play discs, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

You operate the disc player/changer with the same controls used for the radio. To select the disc player/changer, press the CD/AUX button. The number of the track playing and the elapsed time are shown in the display. On the in-dash disc changer, the disc number is also displayed. You can also select the displayed information with the TITLE button (see page 260). The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

This audio system can also play CD-Rs and CD-RWs compressed in MP3 or WMA formats. The numbers of the folder and track playing are shown in the display on the disc player. A disc can support up to 255 folders, and each folder can hold up to 255 playable files. A disc can hold up to 999 files in total.

When there are more than 99 folders in a disc, the audio display only shows two digits.

Video CDs and DVDs do not work in this unit.

CONTINUED

Features 257



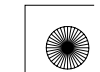


Playing a Disc

NOTE:

If a file on a WMA disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, and then skips to the next file.

Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.





Playing a Disc

To Load a Disc In-dash Disc Player

Insert a disc about halfway into the disc slot. The drive will pull the disc in the rest of the way and begin to play it. The number of the track playing is shown in the display. The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

You cannot load and play 8-cm (3-inch) discs in this unit.

In-dash Disc Changer

Your vehicle's in-dash disc changer holds up to six discs.

1. Press the LOAD button until you hear a beep and see "LOAD" in the display. To load only one disc, press and release the LOAD button. The green disc load indicator will come on.
2. The disc number for an empty position begins blinking.
3. Insert the disc into the disc slot when the green disc load indicator comes on. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see "DISC READ" in the display while the disc load indicator turns red and blinks as the disc is loaded.

You cannot load and play 8-cm (3-inch) discs in this unit.

4. When the disc load indicator turns green and "LOAD" appears in the display again, insert the next disc in the slot. Do not try to insert a disc until "LOAD" appears. You could damage the audio unit.
5. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. If you are not loading all six positions, the system begins reading and playing the last disc loaded.

You can also load a disc into an empty position while a disc is playing by pressing the appropriate side of the preset button. The system stops playing the current disc and starts the loading sequence. It plays the disc just loaded.

CONTINUED





Playing a Disc

Text Data Display Function

Each time you press the TITLE button, the display shows you the text, if the disc was recorded with text data.

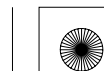
You can see the album, artist, and track name in the display. If a disc is recorded in MP3 or WMA, you can see the folder and file name, and the album, artist, and track tag.

The display shows up to 16 characters of selected text data (the folder name, file name, etc.).

If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator on the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown. You can see up to 31 characters of text data.

If you press and hold the TITLE button again, the display shows the first 15 characters again.

If any letter is not available, it is replaced with “.” (dot) in the display. When the disc has no text data, you will see “NO INFO” on the display.





Playing a Disc

You will also see some text data under these conditions:

- When a new folder, file, or track is selected.
- When you change the audio mode to play a disc with text data or in MP3 or WMA.
- When you insert a disc, and the system begins to play.

When playing a CD-DA with text data, the album and track name are shown in the display. With a disc in MP3 or WMA, the display shows the folder and file name.

In-dash Disc Changer

To select a different disc, press the appropriate preset button (1 – 6). If you select an empty position in the disc changer, the system will try to load the disc in the next available slot.

To Change or Select Tracks/Files

You can use the SEEK buttons while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks (files in MP3/WMA mode).

In MP3/WMA mode, use the ▲/↶ or ▼/PLAY button to select folders in the disc, and use the SEEK button to change files.

In-dash Disc Changer

To select a different disc, use the appropriate preset buttons (1 through 6). If you select an empty position, the system will go into the loading sequence (see page 259).



CONTINUED



Features **261**







Playing a Disc


SEEK – Each time you press and release the  button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA mode). Press and release the  button to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the  , or the  button.

You can also operate the track selection by using the VOL/SELECT knob. Press the VOL/SELECT knob and you will see “SEL” in the display. Turn the knob to switch the track number. Press the VOL/SELECT knob or  button to set your selection. To turn it off, press the  button.

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER SELECTION – To select a different folder, press the  or  button. Press the  button to skip to the next folder, and the  button to skip to the previous folder.

You can also operate the folder and file selection by using the VOL/SELECT knob. Press the VOL/SELECT knob and you will see SEL in the display. Turn the knob to switch the folder number and press the knob to set your selection. Turn the same knob to switch a file, then press it to set your selection. To cancel the selection, press the  button.

REPEAT (TRACK/FILE

REPEAT) – To continuously replay a track (file in MP3/WMA mode), press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display. Press and hold the RPT button to turn it off.





Playing a Disc

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER-REPEAT – This feature, when activated, replays all the files in the selected folder in the order they are compressed in MP3/WMA. To activate folder repeat mode, press the RPT button repeatedly until you see F-RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current folder. Press and hold the RPT button to turn it off.

In-dash Disc Player

Each time you press and release the RPT button, the mode changes from file repeat to folder repeat, then to normal play.

In-dash Disc Changer

DISC-REPEAT – To continuously replay the current disc, press and release the RPT button repeatedly until you see D-RPT in the display. Press and hold the RPT button for 2 seconds again to turn it off.

Each time you press and release the RPT button, the mode changes from file repeat to folder repeat, to disc repeat then to normal play.

RANDOM (Random within a disc) – This feature plays the

tracks within a disc in random order. In MP3/WMA mode, all files in all folders are played in random order. To activate random mode, press the RDM button repeatedly until you see RDM in the display. Press and hold the RDM button to turn it off.

CONTINUED

Features **263**





Playing a Disc

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER-RANDOM – This feature, when activated, plays the files in the current folder in random order, rather than in the order they are compressed in MP3/WMA. To activate folder random play, press the RDM button. You will see F-RDM in the display. The system will then select and play files randomly. This continues until you deactivate folder random play by pressing and holding the RDM button.

Each time you press and release the RDM button, the mode changes from folder random play, to within a disc random play, then to normal play.

SCAN – The SCAN function samples all the tracks on the disc in the order they are recorded on the disc (all files in the current folder in MP3 or WMA mode). To activate the scan feature, press and release the SCAN button. You will see “SCAN” in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each track/file in the disc/folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of scan mode and play the last track sampled.

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER-SCAN – This feature, when activated, samples the first file in each folder on the disc in the order they are recorded. To activate the folder scan feature, press the SCAN button repeatedly. You will see “F-SCAN” in the display. The system will then play the first file in the main folders for about 10 seconds. When it plays a file that you want to continue listening to, press and hold the SCAN button. When the system samples the first file of all folders, F-SCAN is cancelled, and the system plays normally.

In-dash Disc Player

Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes from file scan to folder scan, then to normal play.





Playing a Disc

In-dash Disc Changer

DISC-SCAN – This function samples the first track of each disc in the in-dash disc changer in the order they are stored. To activate disc scan, press the SCAN button repeatedly until you see D-SCAN in the display. The system will then play the first track/file of the first disc for approximately 10 seconds. After playing the first track/file of the last disc, the system plays normally.


Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes from file scan, folder scan, disc scan, then to normal play.

To Stop Playing a Disc


To play the radio when a disc is playing, press the AM or FM button. Press the CD/AUX button again to switch back to the disc player or disc changer.

To play an audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack when a disc is playing, press the CD/AUX button. Press the CD/AUX button again to switch back to the disc player or disc changer.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the () button or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

Removing a Disc from the Player

Press the eject button () to remove the disc. If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 10 seconds and put it in pause mode. To begin playing, press the CD/AUX button.

You can also eject the disc when the ignition switch is off.

CONTINUED

Features **265**





Playing a Disc

Removing Discs from the In-dash Disc Changer

To remove the disc currently in play, press the eject (▲) button. When a disc is removed from a slot, the system automatically begins the load sequence so you can load another disc in that position. If you do not remove the disc from the changer within 10 seconds, the system returns to the previous mode (AM, FM or AUX). The disc will reload into the system and will remain there paused.

To remove a different disc from the changer, first select it with the appropriate preset button. When that disc begins playing, press the eject button. Continue pressing the eject button to remove all the discs from the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off. The disc that was last selected is ejected first.

Operating the Optional Disc Changer (Optional for some types)

An optional six disc changer is available for your vehicle. This disc changer uses the same controls used for the in-dash disc player/changer or the radio.

Load the desired discs in the magazine, and load the magazine in the changer according to the instructions that came with the unit.

To select the disc changer, press the CD/AUX button. The disc and track numbers will be displayed. To select a different disc, use either ▼/PLAY or ▲/▶ button. To select the previous disc, press the ▼/PLAY button, or the ▲/▶ button to select the next disc in sequence.

If you select an empty slot in the magazine, the changer will search for the next available disc to load and play.





Disc Player/Changer Error Messages

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

For additional information on damaged discs, see page 270 .

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
UNSUPPORTED	Track/File format not supported	Current track will be skipped. The next supported track or file plays automatically.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical Error	Press the eject button and pull out the disc(s). Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt see page 270. Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc(s) cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Servo Error	

The ejected disc will not be reloaded automatically.





Optional Disc Changer Error Messages

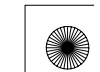
The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

If there is still a problem, the error message will appear again. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. For additional information on damaged discs, see page 270.

Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL PUSH EJECT	FOCUS Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull it out. If the message does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, see your dealer.
PUSH EJECT	Mechanical Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull it out. Check for an error message, and insert the magazine again. If the message does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, see your dealer.





Protecting Your Discs

General Information

- When using CD-R or CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labelled for audio use.
- When recording a CD-R or CD-RW, the recording must be closed for it to be used by the system.
- Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped discs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.
- Handle your discs properly to prevent damage and skipping.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

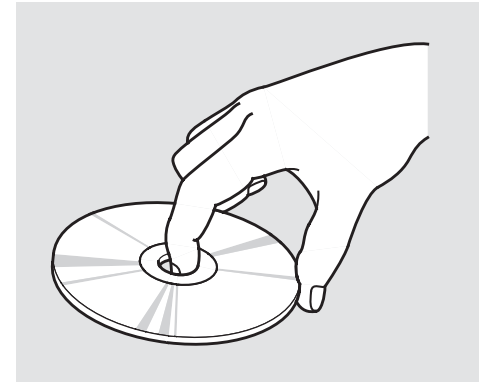
Protecting Discs

When a disc is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep discs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the centre to the outside edge.

A new disc may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the disc player.



Handle a disc by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the disc. These, along with contamination from fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the disc to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.





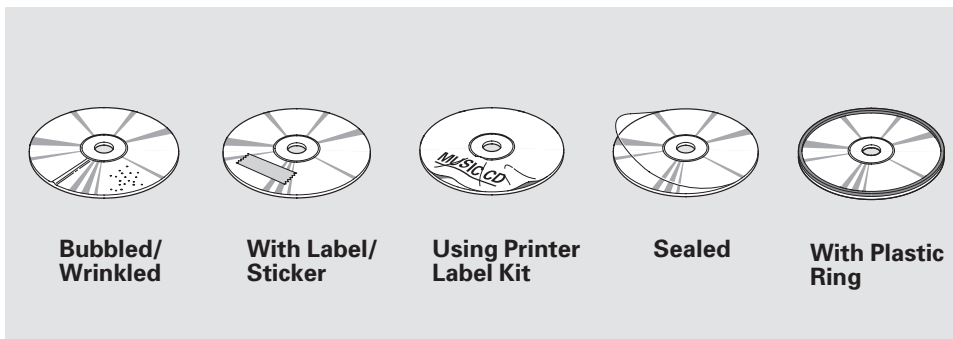
Protecting Your Discs

Additional Information on Recommended Discs

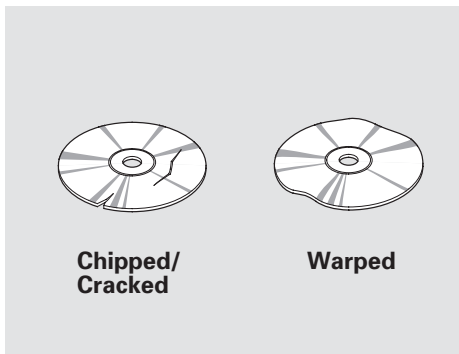
The in-dash disc player/changer has a sophisticated and delicate mechanism. If you insert a damaged disc as indicated in this section, it may become stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples of these discs are shown to the right:

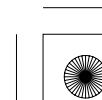
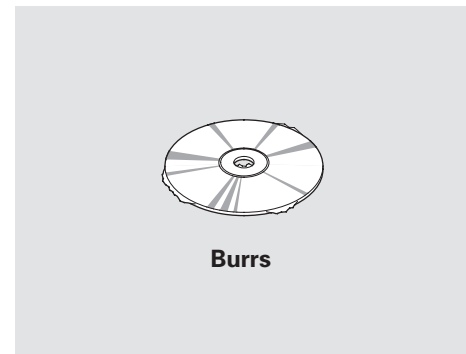
1. Bubbled, wrinkled, labelled, and excessively thick discs



2. Damaged discs



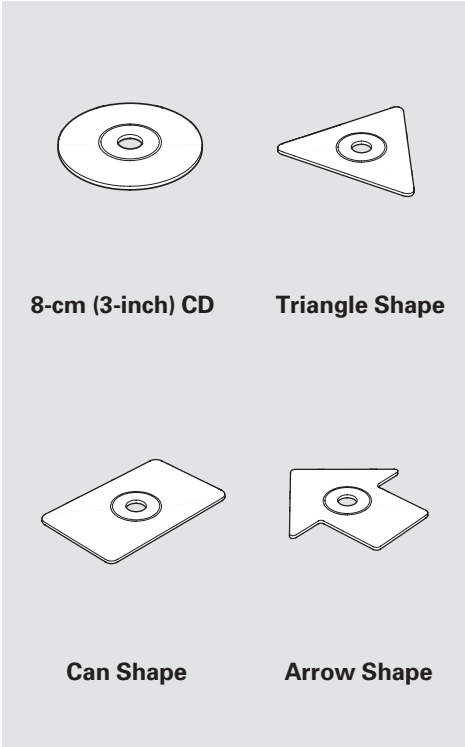
3. Poor quality discs



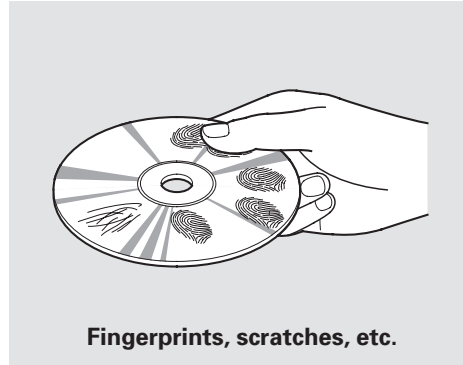


Protecting Your Discs

4. Small, irregular shaped discs



5. Discs with scratches, dirty discs



- CD-R or CD-RW may not play due to the recording conditions.
- Scratches and fingerprints on the discs may cause the sound to skip.

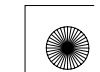
- Recommended discs are printed with the following logo.



- Audio unit may not play the following formats.



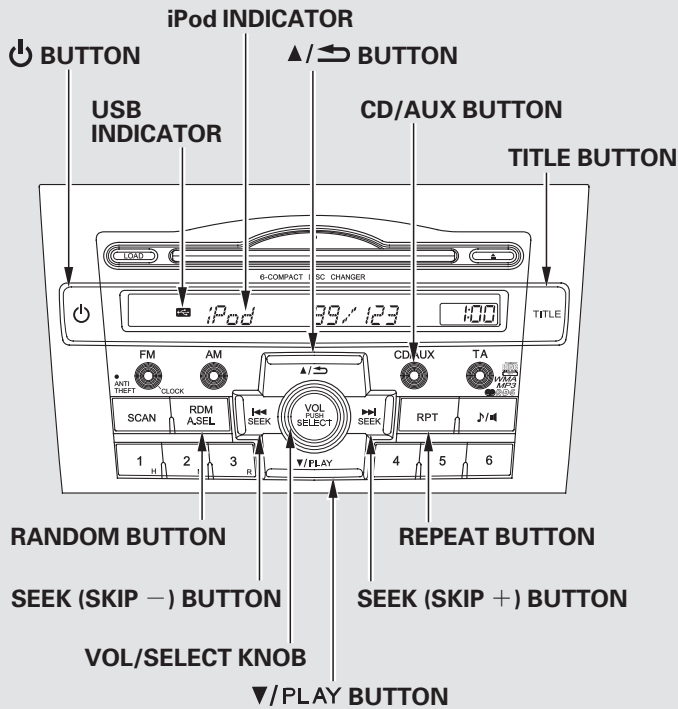
- This audio unit cannot play a Dual-disc®.



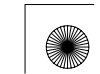
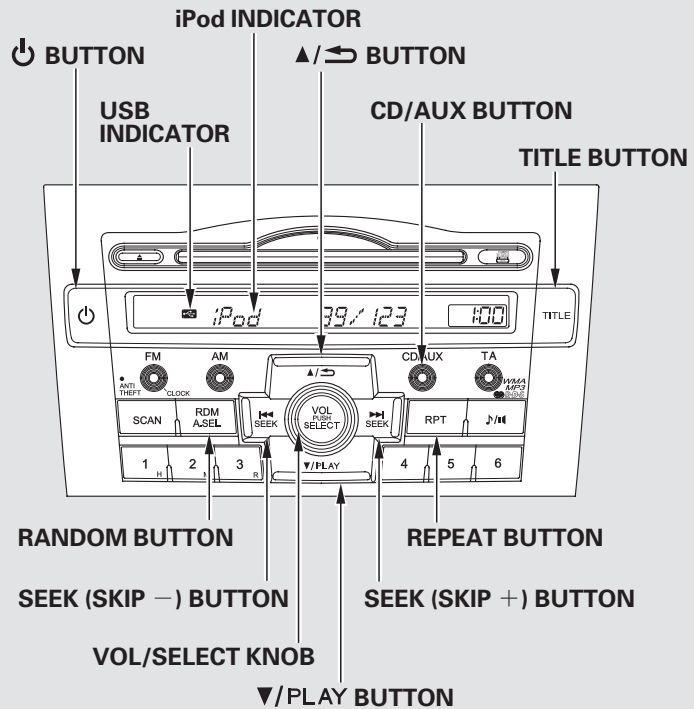


Playing an iPod® (For some types)

Audio System with In-dash Disc Changer



Audio System with In-dash Disc Player





Playing an iPod® (For some types)

To Play an iPod®

This audio system can play the audio files on the iPod® with the same controls used for the in-dash disc player or changer. To play an iPod, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the upper glove box by using your dock connector, then press the CD/AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. The iPod will also be recharged with the ignition switch in these positions.

The audio system reads and plays playable sound files on the iPod. The system cannot operate an iPod as a mass storage device. The system will only play songs stored on the iPod with iTunes.

iPod and iTunes are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

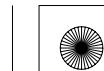
iPod models confirmed to be compatible with your audio system using the USB adapter cable are:

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80 GB/160 GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120 GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160 GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano
iPod touch

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.



CONTINUED



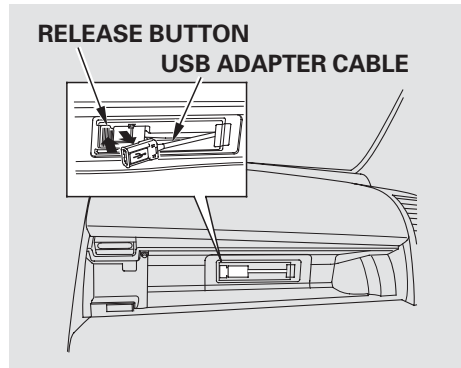


Playing an iPod® (For some types)

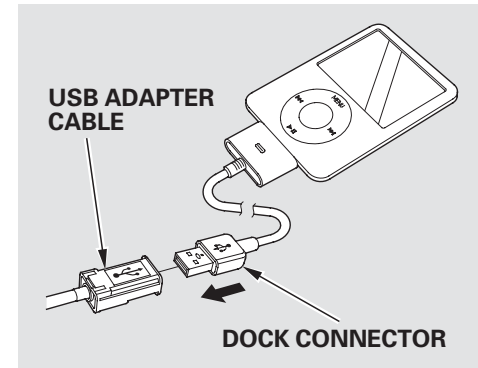
NOTE:

- Do not connect your iPod using a hub.
- Do not keep the iPod in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable between the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle and your dock connector.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.
- Some devices cannot be powered or charged via the USB adapter. If this is the case, use the accessory adapter to supply power to your device.

Connecting an iPod

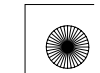


1. Open the upper glove box.
2. Push the release button to release the USB adapter cable.



3. Connect your dock connector to the iPod correctly and securely.
4. Install the dock connector to the USB adapter cable securely.

Make sure to close the glove box before driving.





Playing an iPod® (For some types)

If the iPod indicator does not appear in the audio display, check the connections, and try to reconnect the iPod a few times.

If the audio system still does not recognize the iPod, the iPod may need to be reset. Follow the instructions that came with your iPod, or you can find reset instructions online at www.apple.com/



Text Data Display Function



Each time you press the TITLE button the display mode switches between the album name, the song name, the artist name, or name off (which turns off the text display).

The display shows up to 16 characters of the selected data. If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.

To Change or Select Files

Use the SKIP button while an iPod is playing to select passages and change songs.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the  SKIP button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next song. Press and release  to skip backward to the beginning of the current song. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous song.

To move rapidly within a song, press and hold ( or ) of the SKIP button.





Playing an iPod® (For some types)

To Select a File from iPod Menu

You can also select a file from any list on the iPod menu: playlists, artists, albums and songs, by using the VOL/SELECT knob. Push the VOL/SELECT knob to switch the display to an iPod menu, then turn the same knob to select a desired list. Press the VOL/SELECT knob or ▼/PLAY button to set your selection.

The display shows items on the selected list. Turn the VOL/SELECT knob to select an item, then press the VOL/SELECT knob or ▼/PLAY button to set your selection.

If you select “ALL,” all available files on the selected list are played.

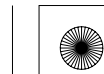
Pressing the ▲/↵ button goes back to the previous display and pressing the TITLE button cancels this setting mode.

To Select Repeat or Shuffle Mode:

You can select any type of repeat and shuffle mode by using the RPT button or the RDM button.

REPEAT — This feature continuously plays a file. To activate the repeat feature, press the RPT button. You will see “RPT” in the display. To turn it off, press the RPT button again.

SHUFFLE ALL — This feature plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order. To activate the shuffle all feature, press the RDM button. You will see “RDM” in the display. To turn it off, press and hold the RDM button.





Playing an iPod® (For some types)

SHUFFLE ALBUM – This feature plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order. The files in each album are played in the recorded order. To activate the shuffle album feature, press the RDM button repeatedly. You will see “F-RDM” in the display. To turn it off, press and hold the RDM button.

Each time you press and release the RDM button, the mode changes from the shuffle all feature, to the shuffle album feature, then to normal play.

NOTE:

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle’s audio system.

To Stop Playing Your iPod

To play the radio, press the AM or FM button. Press the CD/AUX button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the CD/AUX button again to switch to the iPod mode.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

Disconnecting an iPod

You can disconnect the iPod at any time when you see the “OK to disconnect” message* in the iPod display. Always make sure you see “OK to disconnect” message in the iPod display before you disconnect it. Make sure to follow the iPod’s instructions on how to disconnect the dock connector from the USB adapter cable.

*: The displayed message may vary on models or versions. On some models, there is no message to disconnect.

If you reconnect the same iPod, the system may begin playing where it left off, depending on what mode the iPod is in when it is reconnected.

iPod® Error Messages

If you see an error message in the display, see page 278.





iPod® Error Messages (For some types)

If you see an error message on the audio display while playing an iPod, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
USB ERROR	USB ROM Error	There is problem with the USB adapter unit.
BAD USB DEVICE PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	An incompatible device is connected.	Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
iPod NO SONG	No files in iPod	Appears when the iPod is empty. Store some files in the iPod.
UNSUPPORTED VER.	Use of unsupported iPod	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. See page 273 for the specification information for iPods. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
CONNECT RETRY	Recognition failure of iPod	Appears when the system dose not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.

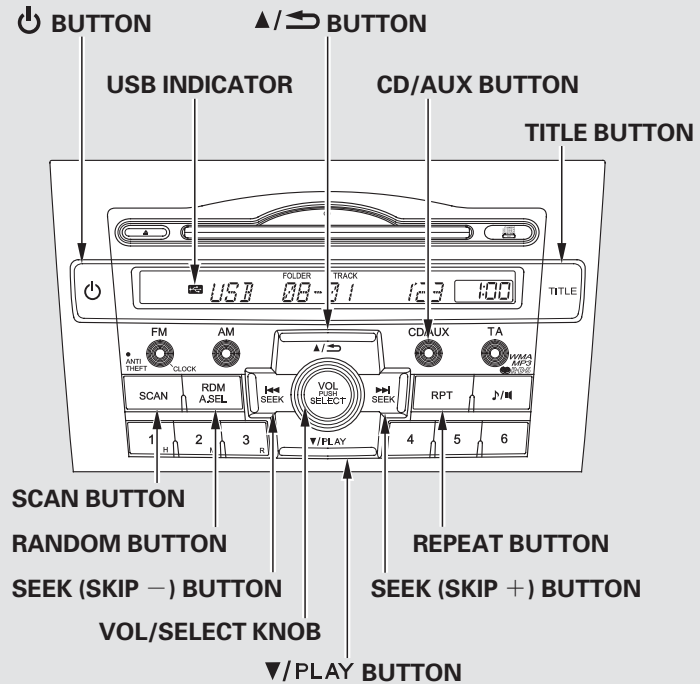
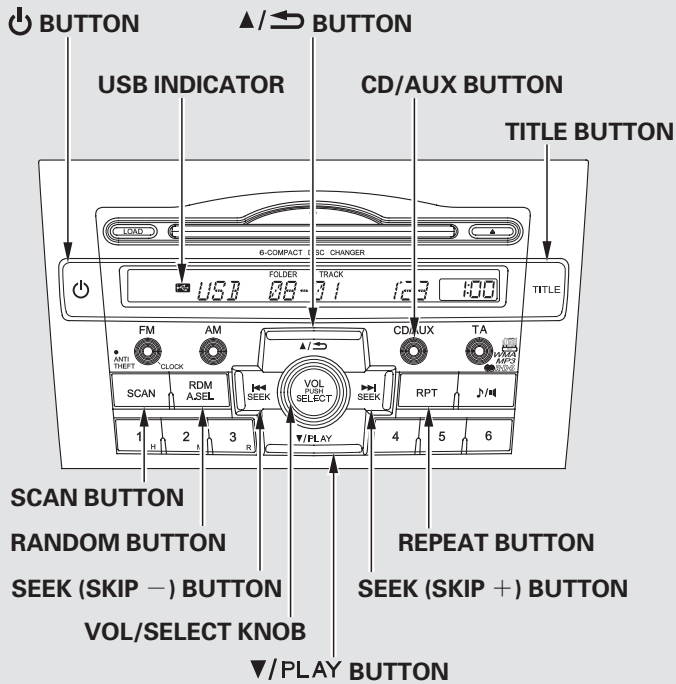




Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)

Audio System with In-dash Disc Changer

Audio System with In-dash Disc Player





Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)

To Play a USB Flash Memory Device

This audio system can select and play the audio files on a USB flash memory device with the same controls used for the in-dash disc player or changer. To play a USB flash memory device, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the upper glove box, then press the CD/AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

The audio system reads and plays the audio files on the USB flash memory device in MP3, WMA or AAC* formats. Depending on the format, the display shows MP3, WMA or AAC when a USB flash memory device is playing. The USB flash memory device limit is up to 700 folders or up to 65535 files.

*: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this audio unit.

The recommended USB flash memory devices are 256 MB or higher, and formatted with the FAT file system. Some digital audio players may be compatible as well.

Some USB flash memory devices (such as devices with security lock-out features, etc.) will not work in this audio unit. For more information, consult your dealer.

NOTE:

- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard drive as the device or your files may be damaged.
- Do not connect your USB flash memory device using a hub.
- Do not use an extension cable to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle.
- Do not keep a USB flash memory device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.
- Depending on the type and number of files, it may take some time before they begin to play.





Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)

- Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.
- Some devices cannot be powered or charged via the USB adapter. If this is the case, use the accessory adapter to supply power to your device.
- The order of files in USB playback may be different from the order of files displayed in PC or other devices etc. Files are played in the order stored in USB flash memory device.

- Depending on the type of encoding and writing software used, there may be cases where character information does not display properly.

Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC format may not be supported. If an unsupported file is found, the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, then skips to the next file.

In WMA or AAC format, DRM (digital rights management) files cannot be played. If the system finds a DRM file, the audio unit displays UNPLAYABLE FILE, and then skips to the next file.

Combining a low sampling frequency with a low bitrate may result in extremely degraded sound quality.

CONTINUED

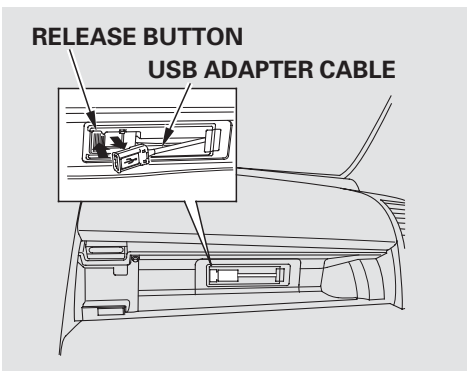
Features 281



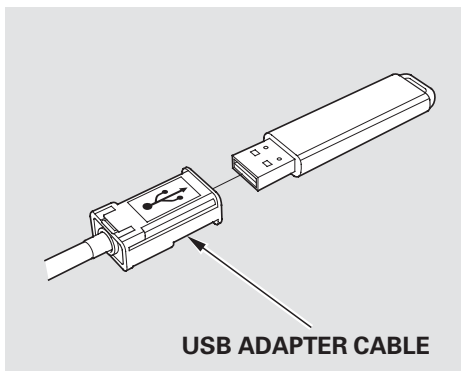


Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)

Connecting a USB Flash Memory Device



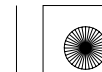
1. Open the upper glove box.
2. Push the release button to release the USB adapter cable.



3. Connect the USB flash memory device to the USB adapter cable correctly and securely.

Make sure to close the glove box before driving.

When the USB flash memory device is connected, the USB indicator is shown in the display.





Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)



Text Data Display Function



Each time you press the TITLE button, the display mode shows you in sequence, the folder name, the file name, the artist name, the album name, the song name, or name off (which turns off the text display).





The display shows up to 16 characters of the selected data. If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator in the display. Press and hold the TITLE button until the next 16 characters are shown.

To Change or Select Files

Use the SKIP button while a USB flash memory device is playing to select passages and change MP3, WMA or AAC file.

SKIP – Each time you press and release the  SEEK button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next MP3, WMA or AAC file. Press and release  to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the , or the  button.

FOLDER SELECTION – To select a different folder, press the  or  button. Press the  button to skip to the next folder, and the  button to skip to the previous folder.

CONTINUED



Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)

To Select a File from Folder and File Lists

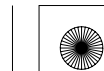
You can also select a folder or file from the list by using the VOL/SELECT knob. Push the VOL/SELECT knob to switch the display to the folder list, then turn the VOL/SELECT knob to select a folder.

Press the VOL/SELECT knob or ▼PLAY button to change the display to the file list, then turn the VOL/SELECT knob to select a file. Press the VOL/SELECT knob or ▼PLAY button to set your selection.

Pressing the ▲/▶ button goes back to the previous display and pressing the TITLE button cancels this setting mode.

To Select Repeat, Random or Scan Mode:

You can select any type of repeat, random and scan modes by using the RPT button, RDM button, or SCAN button.





Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)

REPEAT — To continuously replay an MP3, WMA, or AAC file, press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display. Press and hold the RPT button to return to normal play.

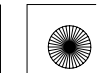
FOLDER REPEAT — This feature replays all the files in the selected folder in the order they are stored. To activate the folder repeat feature, press the RPT button repeatedly. You will see “F-RPT” in the display. To turn it off, press and hold the RPT button.

Each time you press and release the RPT button, the mode changes from file repeat to folder repeat, then to normal play.

RANDOM — This feature plays all the files in random order. To activate the track random feature, press the RDM button. You will see “RDM” in the display. To turn it off, press and hold the RDM button.

CONTINUED

Features **285**





Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)

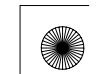
FOLDER RANDOM – This feature plays the files in the current folder in random order. To activate the folder random feature, press the RDM button repeatedly. You will see “F-RDM” in the display. To turn it off, press and hold the RDM button.

Each time you press the RDM button, the mode changes from track random, play to folder random play, then to normal play.

SCAN – This feature samples all files in the current folder in the order they are stored. To activate the scan feature, press the SCAN button. You will see “SCAN” in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each file in the folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the scan mode and play the last file sampled.

FOLDER SCAN – This feature samples the first file in each folder in the order they are stored. To activate the folder scan feature, press the SCAN button repeatedly. You will see “F-SCAN” in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of the first file in each folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the folder scan mode and play the last file sampled.

Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes from file scan to folder scan, then to normal play.





Playing a USB Flash Memory Device (For some types)

To Stop Playing a USB Flash Memory Device

To change modes, press the AM or FM button. Press the CD/AUX button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the CD/AUX button again to switch to the USB mode.

You can also press the MODE button on the steering wheel to change modes.

Disconnecting a USB Flash Memory Device

You can disconnect the USB flash memory device at any time even if the USB mode is selected on the audio system. Always follow the USB flash memory device's instructions when you remove it.

If you reconnect the same USB flash memory device, the system will begin playing where it left off.





USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages (For some types)

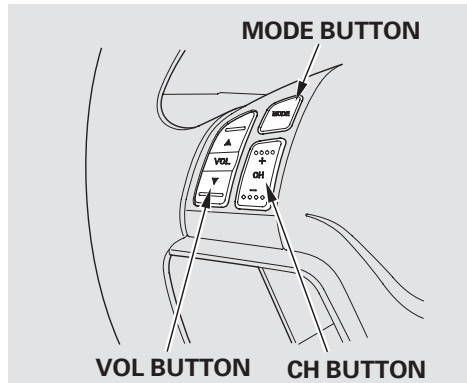
If you see an error message on the audio display while playing a USB flash memory device, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
USB ERROR	USB ROM Error	There is problem with the USB adapter unit.
BAD USB DEVICE PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	An incompatible device is connected.	Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
UNPLAYABLE FILE	Use of unsupported files	Appears when the files in the USB flash memory device are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
USB NO SONG	No files in USB flash memory device	Appears when the USB flash memory device is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash memory device. Save some MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash memory device.
UNSUPPORTED	Use of unsupported USB flash memory device	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. See page 280 for the specification information for the USB flash memory device. If it appears when the supported device is connected, reconnect the device.





Remote Audio Controls (For some types)



Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The VOL button adjusts the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the top or bottom of the button, hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The MODE button changes the mode. Pressing the button repeatedly selects FM, AM (MW), AM (LW), disc (if a disc is loaded), or an audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack or the USB adapter cable. You can select FM1 and FM2 when the auto select feature is not used.

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to change stations. Each time you press and release the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. Press and release the bottom (-) to go back to the previous station.

To activate the seek function, press and hold the top (+) or bottom (-) of the CH button until you hear a beep. The system searches up or down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal.

If you are playing a disc, the system skips to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA format) each time you press the top (+) of the CH button. Press the bottom (-) to return to the beginning of the current track or file. Press it twice to return to the previous track or file.

You will see the track/file number and the elapsed time. If the disc has text data or is compressed in MP3 or WMA, you can also see any other information (track title, file name, folder name, etc.).

In MP3 or WMA mode, you can use the seek function to select folders. Press and hold the top (+) of the CH button until you hear a beep, to skip forward to the first file in the next folder. Press the bottom (-) to skip backward to the previous folder.

CONTINUED





Remote Audio Controls (For some types), Auxiliary Input Jack

If you are playing a USB flash memory device or iPod with the USB adapter cable, press and release the top (+) of the CH button to skip forward to the beginning of the next file. Press the bottom (-) to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it twice to return to the previous file.

When playing a USB flash memory device, you can also use the seek function to skip the folder. To activate this, press and hold either side of the CH button until you hear a beep.

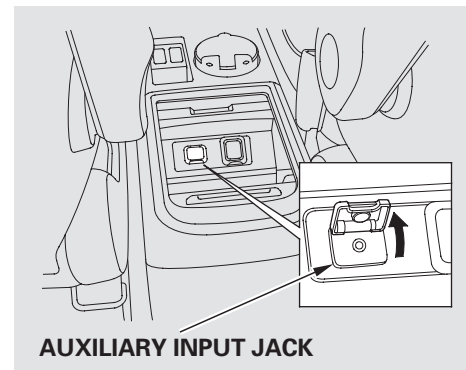
On models with in-dash disc changer

If you are playing a conventional CD (without the text data and not compressed in MP3 or WMA), you can use the seek function to select discs. Press and hold the top (+) of the CH button until you hear a beep, to skip forward to the next disc. Press and hold the bottom (-) to skip backward to the previous disc.

On Navigation model

If you are playing a PC card, press the top (+) of the CH button to advance to the next file. Press the bottom (-) to go back to the previous file.

Auxiliary Input Jack (For some types)



The auxiliary input jack is inside the console compartment. The system will accept auxiliary input from standard audio accessories using a 3.5 mm (1/8 inch) stereo miniplug.

When a compatible audio unit is connected to the jack, press the CD/AUX button to select it.



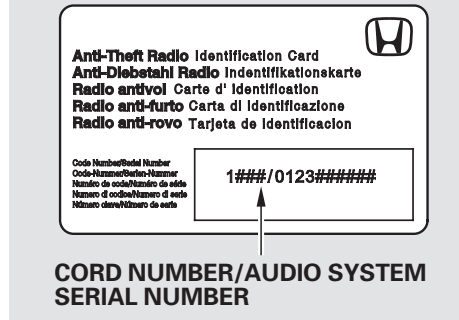


Radio Theft Protection

On vehicles with standard audio system
Your vehicle's audio system will disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, you must enter a specific digit code using the preset buttons (icon on vehicle with navigation system). Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from specific digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

You should have received a card that lists your audio system's code and serial numbers. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this owner's manual.

Example:



If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display the next time you turn on the system. Use the preset buttons to enter the code. On vehicles with navigation system, touch the icon to enter the code number, then touch the Done icon to set the code. The code is on the radio code card included in your owner's manual kit. When it is

entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

If you lose the card, you must obtain the code number from a dealer. To do this, you will need the system's serial number.





Radio Theft Protection

REVERSE SIDE

HANDLING: When the unit is switched on after being disconnected from the battery, "CODE" will be displayed. Enter the code using the preset buttons. Even if "CODE" is still displayed after you enter the code NO., input the code No. again.

HANDLING: When the unit is switched on after being disconnected from the battery, "ENTER CODE" may be displayed on the navi screen. Enter the 4-digit navigation code using the touch screen or the joystick. GPS Initialization may be required. Even if "ENTER CODE" is still displayed after you enter the code NO., input the code No. again.

HANDLING: Quando l'unità è accesa dopo essere stata scollegata dalla batteria, "CODE" verrà visualizzato. Inserire il codice premendo i tasti predefiniti. Anche se "CODE" è ancora visualizzato dopo aver inserito il codice NO., immettere nuovamente il codice NO.

BEDIENUNG: Wenn die Einheit eingeschaltet wird nachdem sie von der Batterie getrennt wurde, wird "CODE" angezeigt. Geben Sie den Code mit den Preset-Tasten ein. Wenn "CODE" weiterhin angezeigt wird, geben Sie die Code-Nummer ein. Wenn "CODE" weiterhin angezeigt wird, geben Sie die Code-Nummer ein.

MANUTENTION: Lorsque l'appareil est allumé après avoir été débranché de la batterie, le mot "CODE" s'affiche. Entrez le code à l'aide des touches de pré-réglage. Si le mot "CODE" est toujours affiché après avoir entré le numéro de code, réentrez le numéro de code.

UIPO: All'attivazione dell'unità dopo aver smesso di collegare la batteria, "CODE" verrà visualizzato. Immettere il codice premendo i tasti di predefinito. Anche se "CODE" è ancora visualizzato dopo aver inserito il numero di codice, immettere nuovamente il codice No.

BANPLÅNING: När enheten startas efter att ha varit avkopplad från batteriet visas "CODE". Använd förinställningarna för att mata in koden. Om "CODE" fortfarande visas efter att du har matat in koden, mata in koden igen.

HANDLING: When the unit is switched on after being disconnected from the battery, "ENTER CODE" may be displayed on the navi screen. Enter the 4-digit navigation code using the touch screen or the joystick. GPS Initialization may be required. Even if "ENTER CODE" is still displayed after you enter the code NO., input the code No. again.

BEDIENUNG: Wenn die Einheit eingeschaltet wird nachdem sie von der Batterie getrennt wurde, wird "ENTER CODE" auf dem Navigationsbildschirm angezeigt. Geben Sie den 4-stelligen Navigationscode über den Touchscreen oder das Joystick ein. Die GPS-Initialisierung kann erforderlich sein. Wenn "ENTER CODE" weiterhin auf dem Navigationsbildschirm angezeigt wird, geben Sie die Code-Nummer ein.

MANUTENTION: Lorsque l'appareil est allumé après avoir été débranché de la batterie, "ENTER CODE" peut être affiché sur l'écran de navigation. Entrez le code de navigation à 4 chiffres à l'aide de l'écran tactile ou du joystick. Une initialisation GPS peut être requise. Même si "ENTER CODE" est toujours affiché après avoir entré le numéro de code, réentrez le numéro de code.

UIPO: Quando l'unità viene accesa dopo essere stata scollegata dalla batteria, "ENTER CODE" può essere visualizzato sullo schermo di navigazione. Immettere il codice di navigazione a 4 cifre utilizzando lo schermo touch screen o il joystick. Potrebbe essere richiesta l'initializzazione GPS. Anche se "ENTER CODE" è ancora visualizzato sullo schermo di navigazione dopo aver inserito il numero di codice, immettere nuovamente il codice No.

BANPLÅNING: När enheten startas efter att ha varit avkopplad från batteriet visas "ENTER CODE" på navigationsbildskärmen. Mata in den 4-siffriga navigationskoden med hjälp av touchskärmen eller joystick. GPS-aktivering kan vara nödvändig. Även om "ENTER CODE" fortfarande visas efter att du har matat in koden, mata in koden igen.

On vehicles with audio system

On vehicles with navigation system

If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over; complete the sequence, then enter the correct code. You have ten tries to enter the correct code. If you are unsuccessful in ten attempts, you must then leave the system on for 1 hour before trying again.

The system will retain your AM and FM presets even if power is disconnected.



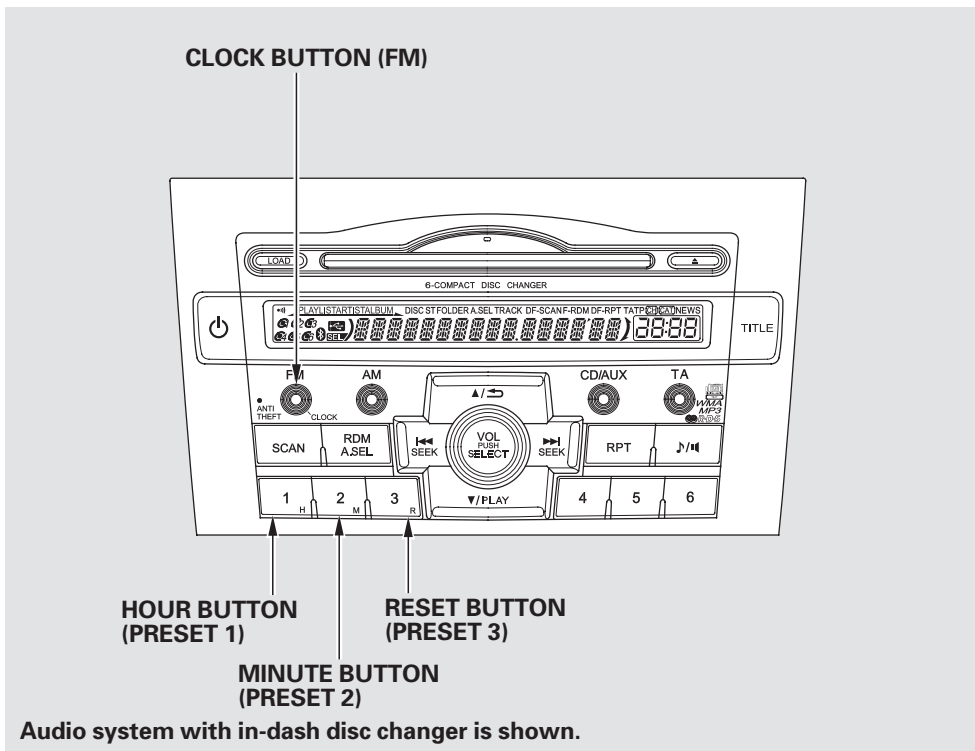


Setting the Clock (On vehicles with audio system)

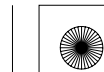
On vehicles without navigation system
To set the time, press the **CLOCK (FM)** button until you hear a beep. The displayed time begins to blink.

Change the hour by pressing the **H (preset 1)** button until the numbers advance to the desired time. Change the minute by pressing the **M (preset 2)** button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

Press the **CLOCK** button again to enter the set time.



CONTINUED





Setting the Clock (On vehicles with audio system)

You can quickly set the time to the nearest hour. If the displayed time is before the half hour, pressing the CLOCK button until you hear a beep, then pressing the R (preset 3) button sets the clock back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, the clock sets forward to the beginning of the next hour.

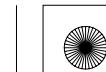
For example: 1:06 will reset to 1:00
1:53 will reset to 2:00

Clock Mode

You can switch the clock mode between 12H and 24H (see page 249).

On vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system receives signals from the global positioning system (GPS), and the displayed time is updated automatically by the GPS. Refer to the navigation system manual for how to adjust the time.



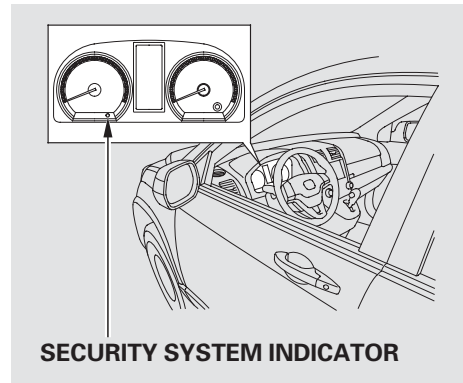


Security System (For some types)

The security system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. The horn sounds (the beeping alarm on vehicles with ultrasonic sensor) and the turn signal lights flash if someone attempts to break into your vehicle or remove the audio unit. This alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets.

If the cause of the alarm continues, alarming will repeat several times at about 5-second intervals.

To turn off an activated system before 30 seconds have elapsed, unlock the driver's door with the ignition key or the remote transmitter.



On vehicles with the ultrasonic sensor, only the remote transmitter can turn off the security system. Unlocking the driver's door with the key cannot turn off the security system and activates the alarm.

The security system sets automatically about 15 seconds (25 seconds on vehicles equipped with the ultrasonic sensor activated) after you lock the doors, bonnet, and tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the tailgate from the outside with the key or remote transmitter. The security system indicator on the instrument panel starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.

To set the ultrasonic sensor along with the security system, you should lock the doors and the tailgate with the key or the remote transmitter.

CONTINUED





Security System (For some types)

When you lock the doors and the tailgate with the key or the remote transmitter, all outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash three times to verify the doors and the tailgate are locked and the security system has set. When you unlock them, these lights flash once.

The security system also sets after you open the driver's door, then lock the doors and the tailgate with the lock tab or master door lock switch on the driver's door while pulling the outside door handle.

Once the security system is set, opening any door or tailgate (without using the key or the remote transmitter), or the bonnet, will cause the system to alarm. It also alarms if the audio unit is removed from the dashboard or the wiring is cut.

The alarm will also be activated if a passenger inside the locked vehicle turns the ignition switch on.

On vehicles with super locking system
When you set the super locking along with the security system, the alarm is not activated if someone tries to open a door with the lock tabs or the master door lock switch.

The security system will not set if the bonnet, tailgate, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and check the indicators on the multi-information display. Close any door or the tailgate indicated on the display. Check the bonnet visually since it is not part of the display, and shut it if necessary.

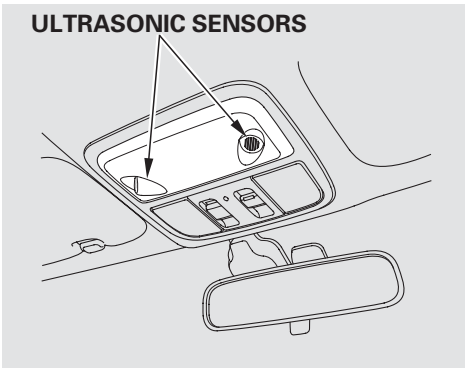
Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.





Security System (For some types)

Ultrasonic Sensor (For some types)



The ultrasonic sensor is only activated when the security system is set by the key or the remote transmitter. It monitors the interior of the vehicle and activates the alarm if someone intrudes into the passenger compartment through a window, or moves in the compartment.

NOTICE

If you set the security system with the windows open, the ultrasonic sensor may activate the alarm unexpectedly when the system senses strong vibrations on the vehicle or loud sound.

You can set the security system without activating the ultrasonic sensor. Pull the driver's outside door handle and pull the lock tab rearward. Release the handle, then close the door. The security system indicator on the instrument panel comes on for 3 seconds, then starts blinking.

Whether the ultrasonic sensor is activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter, not the key.





Cruise Control (For some types)

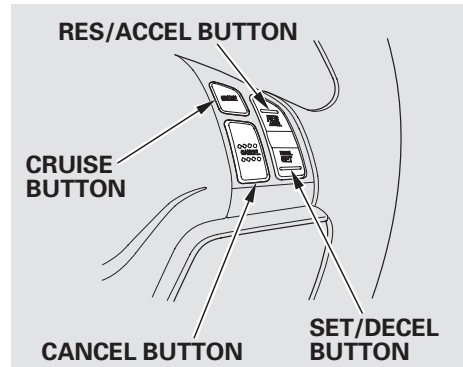
Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 40 km/h (25 mph) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open motorways. It is not recommended for city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

Using Cruise Control



1. Push in the CRUISE button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE MAIN indicator on the instrument panel comes on.

The cruise control system can be left on, even when it is not in use.

2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 40 km/h (25 mph).

3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel comes on to show the system is now activated.

Cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your vehicle speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel the cruise control. To resume the set speed, press the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will come back on.

On vehicles with manual transmission
While the cruise control system is activated, the shift up or down indicator does not work (see page 379).





Cruise Control (For some types)

Changing the Set Speed

You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.
- Push on the accelerator pedal. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed, then press the SET/DECEL button.
- To increase the speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will speed up about 1.6 km/h (1 mph).

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

NOTE: If you need to decrease your speed quickly, use the brakes as you normally would.

- Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will slow down about 1.6 km/h (1 mph).
- Tap the brake or clutch pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will go out. When the vehicle slows to the desired speed, press the SET/DECEL button.

Even with cruise control turned on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake or clutch pedal causes cruise control to cancel.





Cruise Control (For some types)

Cancelling Cruise Control

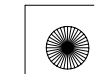
You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake or clutch pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Push the CRUISE button on the steering wheel.

Resuming the Set Speed

When you push the CANCEL button, or tap the brake or clutch pedal, the system will remember the previously set cruising speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 40 km/h (25 mph), and then press and release the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator comes on. The vehicle will accelerate to the same cruising speed as before.

Pressing the CRUISE button turns the system off and erases the previous cruising speed.



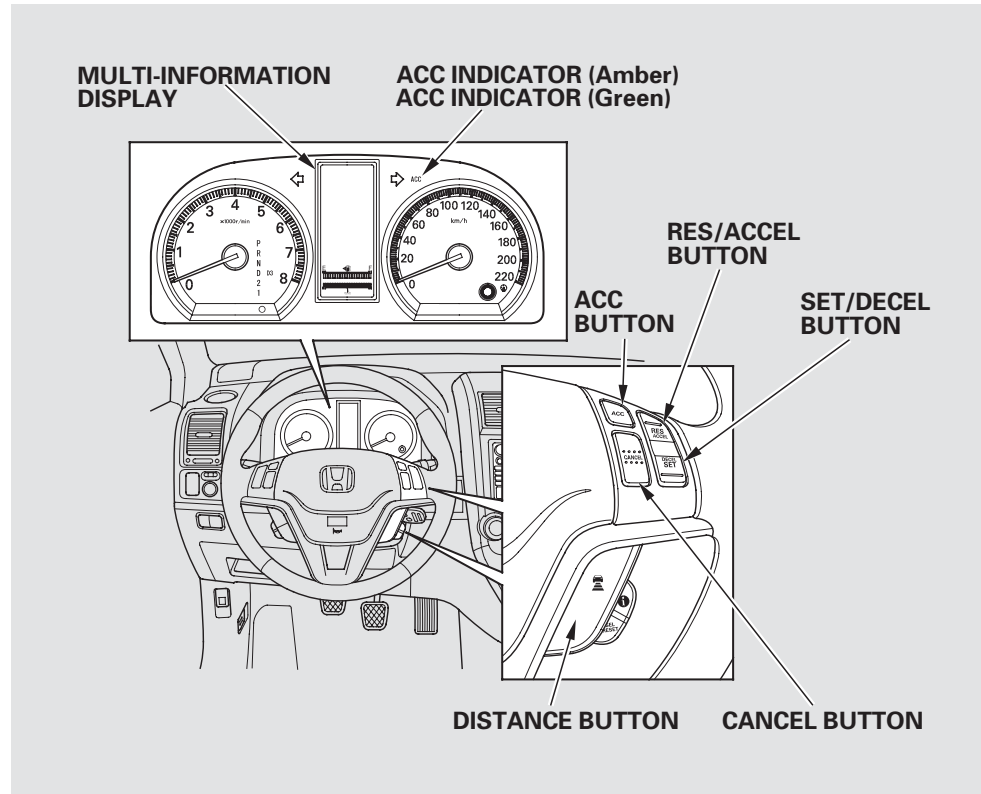


Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

ACC Components

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) consists of a radar sensor in the front grille, the ACC buttons on the steering wheel, and the ACC functions of the multi-information display.

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS). For more information on the radar sensor, see page 392. For more information on CMBS, see page 391.






Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Overview

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) allows you to maintain a set speed and keep the vehicle ahead of you and your vehicle at a safe distance without having to use the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

When the vehicle ahead of you slows down or speeds up, ACC senses the change in distance and compensates by accelerating or braking your vehicle to reach the cruising speed you previously set. The distance between vehicles is based on your speed: the faster you go, the longer the distance will be; the slower you go, the shorter it will be.

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down suddenly or another vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, ACC alerts you by sounding a beeper and displaying a symbol “” (a “BRAKE” message depending on the customize setting) on the multi-information display.

The ACC radar sensor in the front grille can detect and monitor the distance of a vehicle up to 100 meters (328 feet) ahead of your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions

As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Inappropriate use of ACC can result in a serious accident. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

Do not use ACC under these conditions:

- In poor visibility.
- In heavy traffic.
- When you must slow down and speed up repeatedly.
- On winding roads.
- On steep downhill.
- When you enter a toll gate, interchange, service area, parking area, etc. In these areas, there is no vehicle ahead of you, and ACC would still try to accelerate to your set speed.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

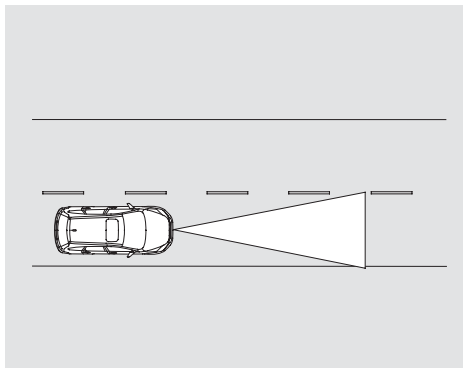
- In bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- On slippery roads (for example, roads covered with ice or snow).

⚠ WARNING

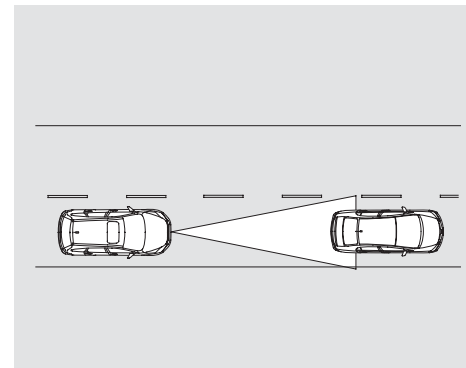
Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

Operating Characteristics



*When there is no vehicle ahead within ACC range
Your vehicle will maintain a set cruising speed.*



*When a vehicle ahead is within ACC range and going slower than your set speed
If the vehicle ahead of you is going slower than your set speed, your vehicle will slow down to the speed of that vehicle. Your vehicle will then follow at a constant distance until the vehicle ahead changes speed again.*


CONTINUED

Features 303

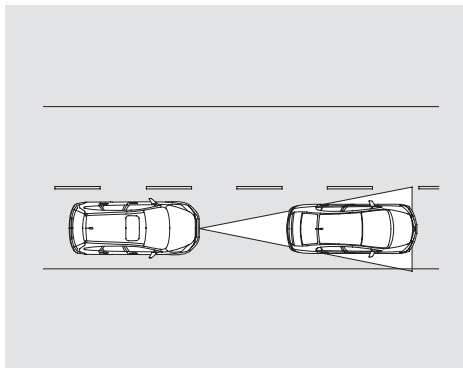




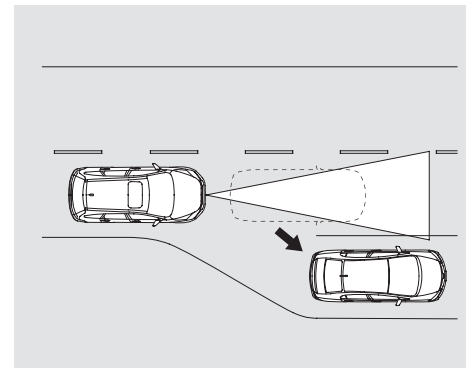
Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, a beeper sounds and a symbol “” or a “BRAKE” message appears on the multi-information display to warn you.

In this case, decelerate your vehicle by pressing the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.



When a vehicle ahead is within ACC range and going at a steady speed
Your vehicle follows the vehicle ahead of it, keeping a constant distance. ACC will not keep your vehicle at a constant distance if the vehicle ahead of you goes out of range of your set speed: above 180 km/h (112 mph) or below 30 km/h (20 mph).



If the vehicle ahead of you changes lanes, ACC no longer tracks it. Your vehicle will then return to your set speed.

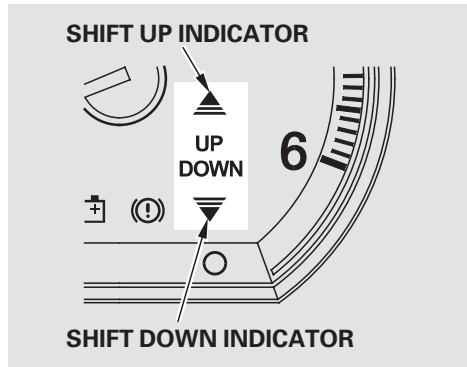
When the brakes are automatically applied, the system may make some noise. However, it is not a malfunction.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Shift Up/Shift Down Indications



On vehicles with manual transmission
With the ACC system set, either shift up or shift down indicator comes on to show you the appropriate timing to shift to a higher or lower gear for better fuel economy (see page 379).

When the ACC system is activated, this function is not available.

Instead of showing the best timing to shift up or down, either indicator comes on to indicate the shifting point of the engine performance limit, corresponding to the gear which you select. Shifting up or down when prompted by the shift up or down indicator allows the engine to run and accelerate smoothly. This helps to keep the ACC operation.

The shift up indicator will come on when the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone (about 5,500 rpm on petrol models, and about 4,200 rpm on diesel models).

At 6,000 rpm on petrol models, and 4,500 rpm on diesel models, the ACC will be deactivated. The ACC will be cancelled when the engine speed goes into the tachometer's red zone.

The shift down indicator will come on appropriately according to the deceleration to prevent the engine from stalling.

If the engine speed goes to below 1,000 rpm, the ACC will also be cancelled.

To protect the engine from damage, never drive with the tachometer reading in the red zone.

If you ignore either shift up or shift down indication, the ACC will be cancelled after about 10 seconds. For information on automatic ACC cancellation and resuming the ACC, see page 314.

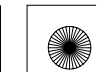




Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Limitations

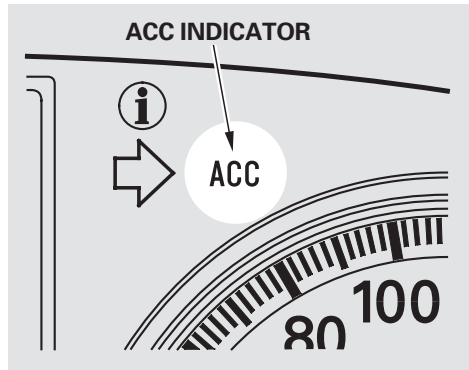
- ACC does not work below 25 km/h (17 mph). It cannot bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
 - ACC will not sound a beeper or display a symbol or a message on the multi-information display to warn you of vehicles going slower than 20 km/h (13 mph) or vehicles that are parked. In these cases, it is up to you to maintain a safe distance by using the brake pedal.
 - ACC may not recognize motorcycles or other small vehicles ahead of your vehicle.
- ACC may react to vehicles beside you or even buildings beside you by momentarily applying the brakes or sounding a beeper under some conditions like the sudden curve, the narrow lane, the abrupt operation of the steering wheel, or the position of your vehicle in the lane.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)


Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)



When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the ACC indicator comes on amber for several seconds.

This indicator comes on when there is a problem with the ACC system. You will also see the symbol “ **ACC** ” or the symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. If this happens, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. The ACC system cannot be used while this indicator is on.

Check Radar Sensor

If the emblem is covered with mud, dirt, wet snow, etc., or if a sticker is on the emblem, the radar sensor of the ACC will be deactivated and the ACC will not work. In this case, you will see the symbol “” on the multi-information display. You will also see the CMBS radar sensor symbol on the multi-information display. If this happens, the CMBS indicator also comes on, and the CMBS system warning symbol/message will be displayed on the multi-information display (see page 392).

Always keep the emblem clean. If it gets dirty, clean it with water or a mild detergent. Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder.

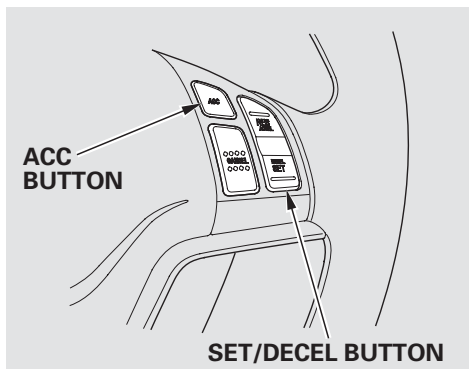
Do not allow anything to impact the radar sensor or the emblem. If the front grille ever needs to be repaired, consult a dealer first.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

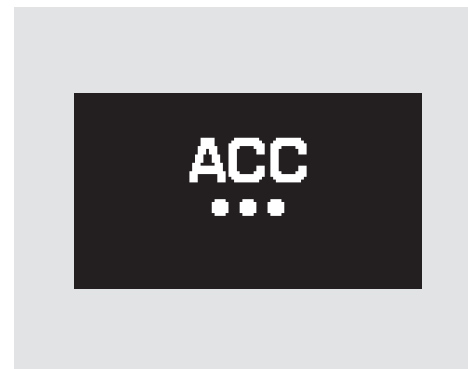
Using the ACC



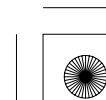
1. Push the ACC button on the steering wheel. The ACC indicator on the instrument panel comes on green, and you will see the symbol “**ACC**” on the multi-information display.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed above 30 km/h (20 mph).

3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel, then release the accelerator pedal.

If you press the SET/DECEL button when the vehicle speed is below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph), you will hear three beeps. This means ACC is not activated, and you cannot set your speed.

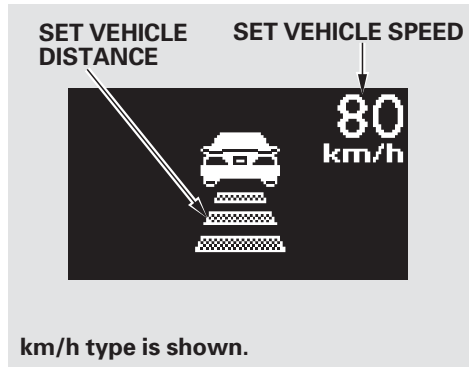


When your speed reaches 30 km/h (20 mph), ACC goes into wait mode, and you will see a symbol as shown above or “ACC STANDBY” message on the multi-information display.





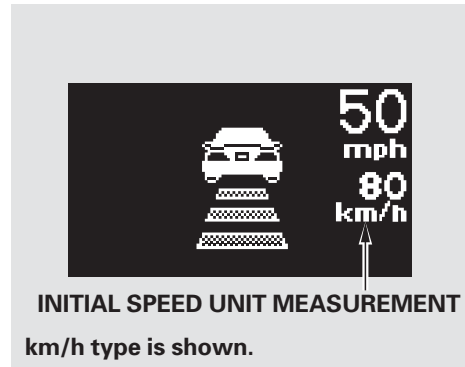
Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)



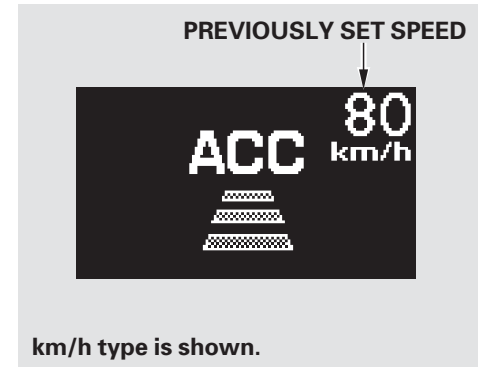
When the speed is set, it is shown along with a vehicle icon and distance bars on the multi-information display.

Refer to page 312 for how to set and change the set distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.

To change the speed unit measurement, see page 126 .



If you change the speed unit measurement from the factory default setting, the initial speed unit measurement is shown under the current unit.



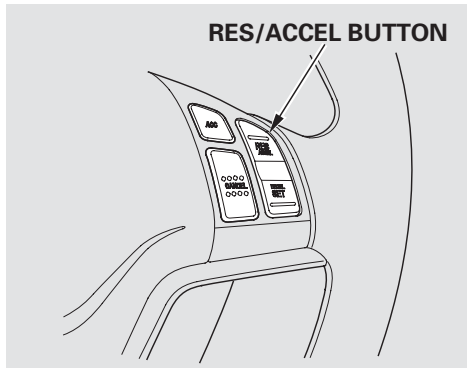
If you cancel ACC by pressing the CANCEL button or by tapping the brake pedal, the previously set cruising speed is shown on the multi-information display. To store this speed as your new cruising speed, press and release the RES/ACCEL button.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Increasing the Set Speed



The set speed can be increased by using the RES/ACCEL button or the accelerator pedal.

To increase the set speed with the RES/ACCEL button, do this:

Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. The vehicle will accelerate. When you reach the speed you want, release the button.

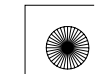
To increase your speed in small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button repeatedly. Each time you do this, the setting speed increases by about 5 km/h (3 mph).

While the vehicle accelerates to the set speed, the set speed on the multi-information display will flash.

If a vehicle ahead of you is driving at a slower speed than the speed you want to set, your vehicle will not accelerate; it will keep some distance between your vehicles.

To increase the set speed with the accelerator pedal, press the accelerator pedal to increase to the speed you want, then press the SET/DECEL button. The set speed will be shown on the multi-information display.

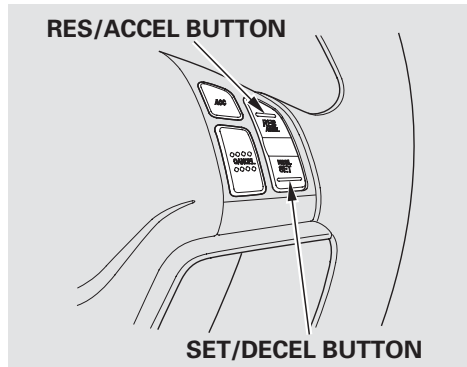
If you do not press the SET/DECEL button, your vehicle will return to the previously set speed. The ACC beeper will not sound while you press the accelerator pedal, no matter how close you get to the vehicle ahead of you.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Decreasing the Set Speed



The set speed can be decreased using the SET/DECEL button or the brake pedal.

To decrease the set speed with the SET/DECEL button, do this:

Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the speed you want.

To slow down in small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button repeatedly. Each time you do this, the setting speed decreases by about 5 km/h (3 mph).

The set cruising speed will be shown on the multi-information display.

On a steep downhill, the vehicle speed may exceed the set cruising speed.

To decrease the set speed with the brake pedal, do this:

Tap the brake pedal. When the vehicle slows down to the speed you want, press the SET/DECEL button. The set speed will be shown on the multi-information display. If you use the brake pedal to decrease speed, and then press the RES/ACCEL button, your vehicle will return to the previously set speed.

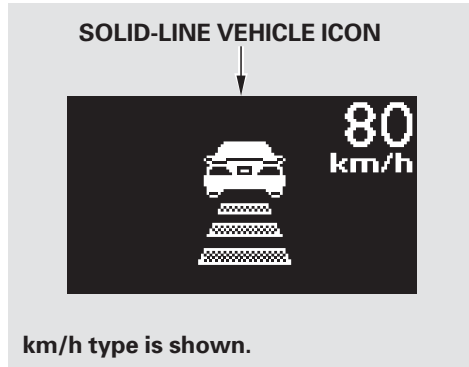
On vehicles with manual transmission
When the ACC is activated, shifting to a lower gear does not slow down the vehicle speed. To slow down, always press the brake pedal.





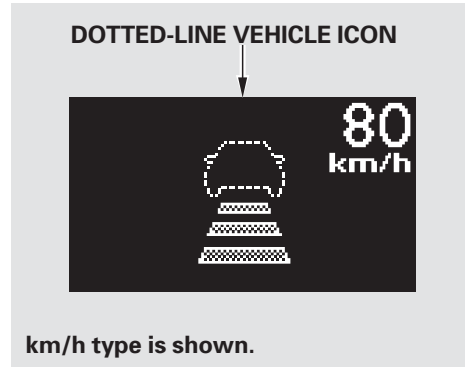
Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Detecting a Vehicle Ahead of You



When the system detects a vehicle ahead of you, a solid-line vehicle icon appears.

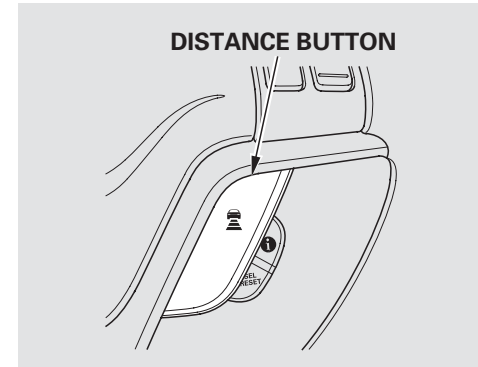
To set the pre-running detect beeper on when the system detects a vehicle, see page 125. On the default setting, the pre-running detect beeper is set to off.



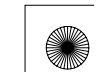
If there is no vehicle ahead of you within ACC range, a dotted-line vehicle icon will be on the multi-information display.

You can customize the “Pre-Running Car Detect Beep” setting (see pages 125 and 126).

Changing Vehicle Distance



With ACC on, the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is controlled and maintained. You can change this distance to one of three ranges: long, middle, or short.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

To change the range, press the **DISTANCE** button. Each time you press the button, the range changes from Long, to Middle, and then to Short.

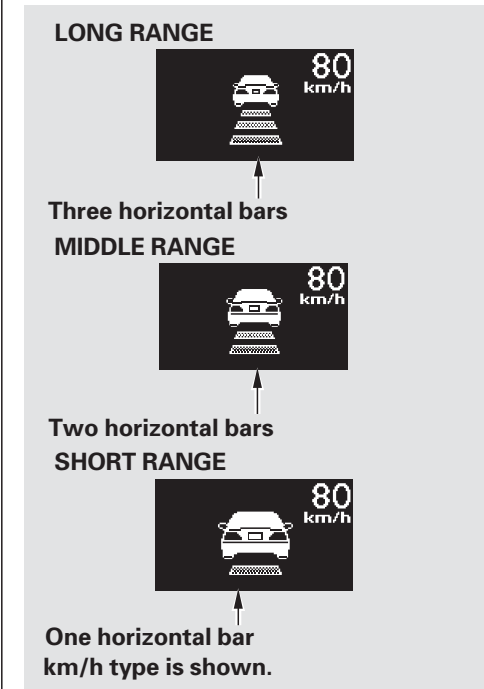
The higher your vehicle speed is, the longer the distance between the vehicle in front will be set as shown below.

	80 km/h (50 mph)	104 km/h (65 mph)
Long	47 metres (154 feet) (2.1 sec)	61 metres (200 feet) (2.1 sec)
Middle	34 metres (111 feet) (1.5 sec)	42 metres (138 feet) (1.5 sec)
Short	26 metres (85 feet) (1.2 sec)	31 metres (101 feet) (1.1 sec)

NOTICE

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking distance from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum distances or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

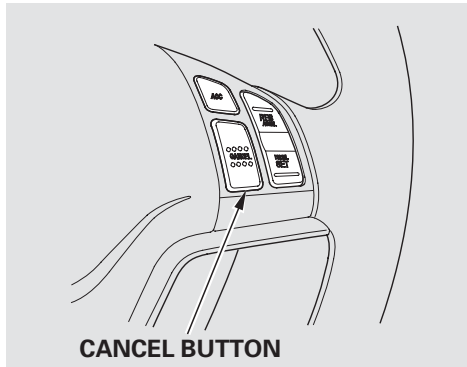
The distance you select is also shown on the multi-information display.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Canceling the ACC



ACC is cancelled whenever you do any of these actions:

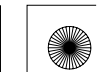
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Tap the brake pedal.
- Press the ACC button. The ACC indicator (green) on the instrument panel goes off.

When you push the CANCEL button or tap the brake pedal to cancel ACC, the set cruising speed stays in memory. When you turn on ACC again, the speed is shown on the multi-information display. To return to that speed, accelerate to over 30 km/h (20 mph), then press the RES/ACCEL button.

If you cancel ACC by pressing the ACC button, the previously set cruising speed is erased from memory.

Automatic ACC Cancellation

When ACC is automatically cancelled, the beeper sounds three times, and an ACC OFF message appears on the multi-information display for 3 seconds.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Any of these conditions may cause ACC to cancel:

- The vehicle speed decreases to below approximately 25 km/h (17 mph).
- Poor weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS or VSA is activated.

- When the trailer stability assist function is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.

On vehicles with manual transmission

- Ignoring either shift up or down indication shown in the tachometer display will cancel the ACC after about 10 seconds.
- The engine speed goes into the tachometer's red zone.
- The engine speed goes to below 1,000 rpm.
- You press and hold the clutch pedal for a while at shifting.
- You shift into neutral temporarily when shifting into a higher or lower gear.

If ACC is cancelled by any of these conditions, wait until the condition improves, then press the RES/ACCEL button to restore ACC. When you do this, the vehicle will resume its set cruising speed.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position after ACC was automatically cancelled, the set speed is erased, and you must enter it again (see page 308).






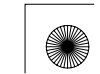


Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

Symbols on the Multi-information Display




The multi-information display shows various symbols related to ACC. For a description of each ACC symbol you may see, refer to the charts as follows.

Symbol/Message	Description
	ACC is on.
	ACC is suspended. A cruising speed can be set by pressing the SET/DECEL button.
 km/h type shown	ACC is standby, and the previously set cruising speed is in memory. The previously set speed can be resumed by pressing the RES/ACCEL button.





Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

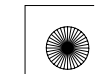
Symbol/Message	Description
 <p>km/h type shown</p>	ACC detects a vehicle ahead of you.
 <p>km/h type shown</p>	ACC does not detect a vehicle ahead of you.
	ACC has been automatically cancelled because its radar sensor in the front grille is dirty.

Symbol/Message	Description
	ACC has been automatically cancelled because of poor weather or other conditions (see page 314). You will hear three beeps.
	Apply the brakes immediately. Your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead of it. You will hear a continuous beep.
	ACC needs to be checked. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



CONTINUED

Features **317**





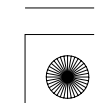
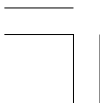
Adaptive Cruise Control (Optional for some types)

(EU models)

EC Directives

This radar sensor system complies with the R & TTE (Radio equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity) Directives.

C €0891





Parking Sensor System (For some types)

Your vehicle has a parking sensor system. The system lets you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and most obstacles while you are parking. When the system is on and your vehicle is nearing an obstacle, you will hear a beeping and see parking sensor indicators on the multi-information display.

To activate the system, push the button on the dashboard with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on. You will hear a beep. To turn the system off, push the button again.

Before moving your vehicle, make sure that the indicator in the button comes on. If it is off, the parking sensor system cannot be activated.



If the parking brake is set (manual transmission) or the shift lever is in the Park position (automatic transmission), the parking sensor system will not be activated even with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position.

All obstacles may not always be sensed. Even when the system is on, you should look for obstacles near your vehicle to make sure it is safe to park.



The system has two front corner sensors, two rear corner sensors, and two rear centre sensors. The rear centre sensors work when the shift lever is in reverse (R), and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

CONTINUED





Parking Sensor System (For some types)





The corner sensors work only when the shift lever is in any position (except for Park on vehicles with automatic transmission) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

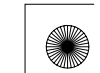
Indicators and Beeper Operation on the Multi-information Display
When you turn the system on, a beeper sounds once.

When the system senses an obstacle, the appropriate indicator comes on, and a beeper sounds as shown in the following tables.

Corner Sensor Operation

Example shown: Obstacle is at the left front of the vehicle.





Distance	About 40-50 cm (16-20 in) 	About 30-40 cm (12-16 in) 	About 30 cm (12 in) or less 
Indicator	Upper left indicator stays on 		
Beeper	Steady	Rapid	Continuous





Parking Sensor System (For some types)

Rear Centre Sensor Operation

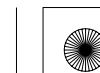
Distance	About 1-1.8 m (40-70 in) 	About 0.6-1 m (24-40 in) 	About 0.6 m (24 in) or less 
Indicator	Bottom indicator stays on 		
Beeper	Steady	Rapid	Continuous



If the system develops a problem, you will see all indicators or the indicators with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display, and a beeper sounds continuously.

CONTINUED

Features **321**



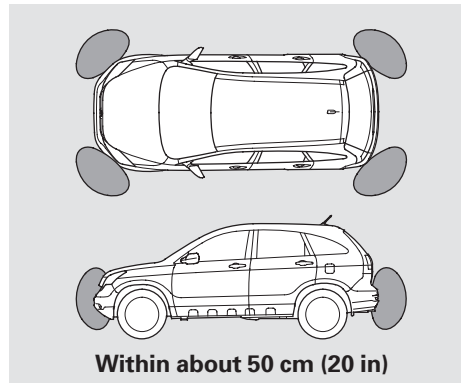


Parking Sensor System (For some types)

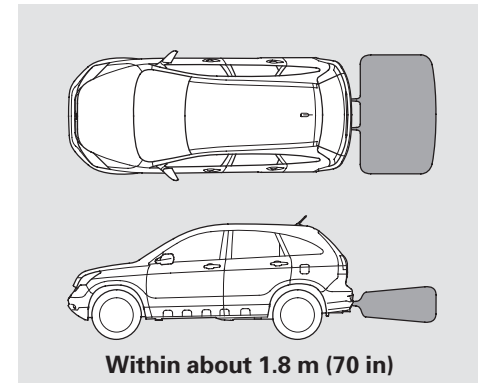
Very often, a sensor covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. is the cause of this display. Check the sensors first. If the indicators stay on or the beeper does not stop, have the system checked by your dealer.

If there is a problem in any of the sensors, the appropriate sensor indicator(s) will come on and stay on. In this case, the remaining sensors can be operated properly.

If there is a problem with the parking sensor system and/or a beeper sounds continuously, you may turn off the system temporarily and stop the beeper by pressing the parking sensor system button.

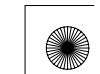


The range of the corner sensors and the rear centre sensor are limited. Each corner sensor is capable of sensing an obstacle only when your vehicle is 50 cm (20 in) or closer.



The rear centre sensor senses an obstacle that is behind your vehicle 1.8 m (70 in) or closer.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.





Parking Sensor System (For some types)

The system may not function properly under these conditions:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, etc.
- When the vehicle is on a rough road, on grass, or on a hill.
- After the vehicle has been sitting out in hot or cold weather.
- When the system is affected by some electrical equipment or devices generating an ultrasonic wave.
- When operating the vehicle in bad weather.

The system may not sense thin or low objects, or sonic-absorptive materials such as snow, cotton, or sponge.

The system cannot sense objects directly under the bumper.

If you install a towbar on your vehicle, this may cause the alarm when the parking sensor system is activated.

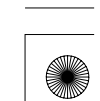
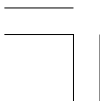
When you tow a trailer, do not turn on the parking sensor system. The trailer behind your vehicle will cause the alarm to be activated.





Rearview Camera and Monitor (For some types)

On vehicles with navigation system
Refer to the navigation system manual for operation of the rearview camera.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) allows you to place and receive phone calls using voice commands, without handling your mobile phone.

To use HFT, you need a Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

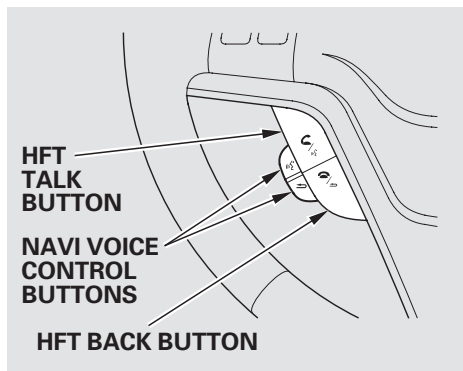
Visit

www.hondahandsfree.com

All phones may not operate identically, and some may cause inconsistent operation of the HFT system.

NOTE: Before selling or discarding your vehicle, make sure to delete the stored phone data.

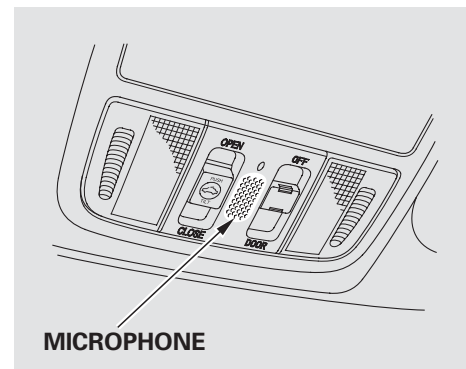
Using HFT HFT Buttons



HFT Talk button — Press and release to give a command or answer a call.

HFT Back button — Press and release to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel the command.

Voice Control Tips



- Air or wind noise from the dashboard and side vents and all windows may interfere with the microphone. Adjust or close them as necessary.
- Press and release the HFT Talk button each time you want to make a command. After the beep, speak in a clear, natural tone.

CONTINUED





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

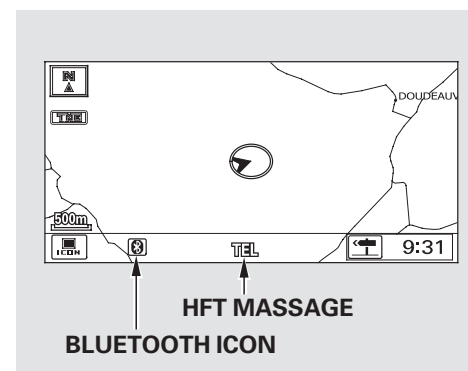
- Try to reduce all background noise. If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, commands may be misinterpreted.
- Many commands can be spoken together. For example, you can say “Call 123-456-# # # #” or “Dial Peter.”
- When HFT is in use, navigation voice commands cannot be recognised.
- To change the volume level of HFT, use the audio system volume knob or the steering wheel volume controls.

Help Features

- To hear general HFT information, including help on using HFT buttons, Voice control, or making a call, say “Tutorial.”
- For help at any time, including a list of available commands, say “Hands free help.”

Information Display

As an incoming call notification, you will see the following display:



When there is an incoming call, or HFT is in use, “TEL” will appear at the bottom of the map screen.

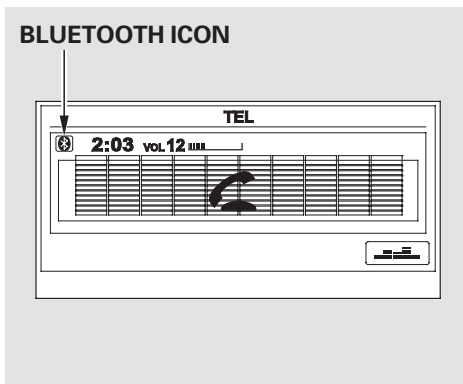
However, when the current street is shown, and AUDIO INFO icon is visible, “TEL” will not appear when there is an incoming call.





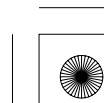
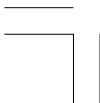
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

The Bluetooth icon  will also appear on the display when a phone is linked.



A notification that there is an incoming call, or HFT is in use, will appear on the navigation screen when the audio system is on.

The “” indicator will also appear when a phone is linked.

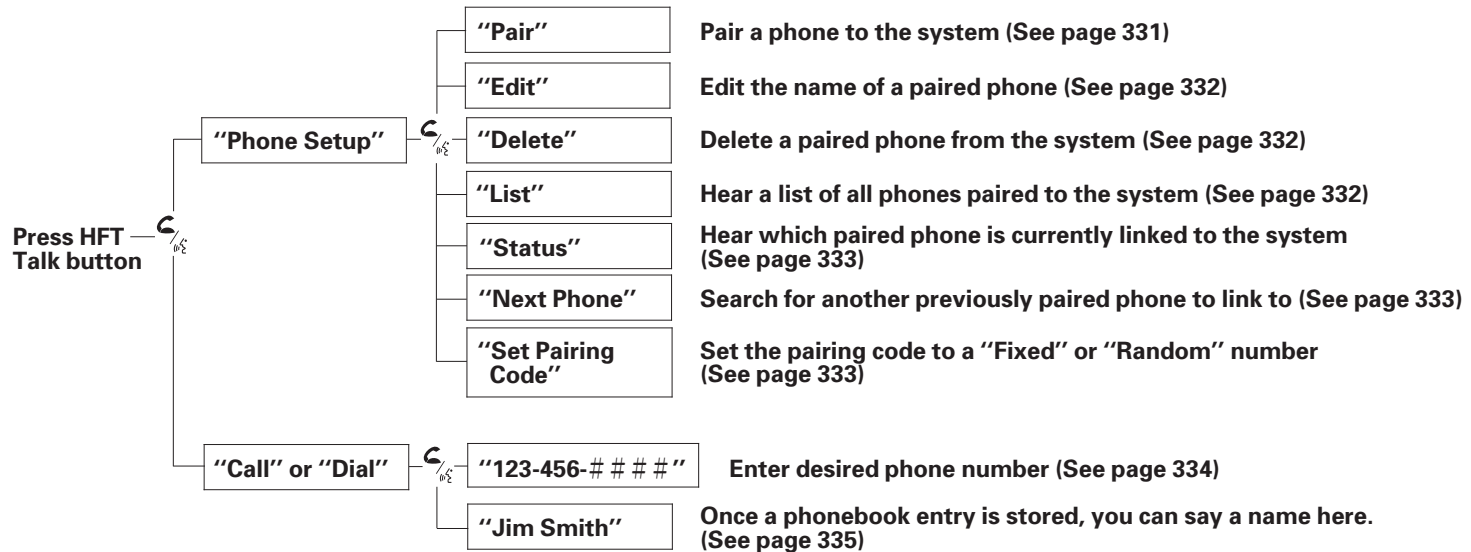




Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

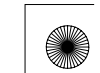
How to Use HFT

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.



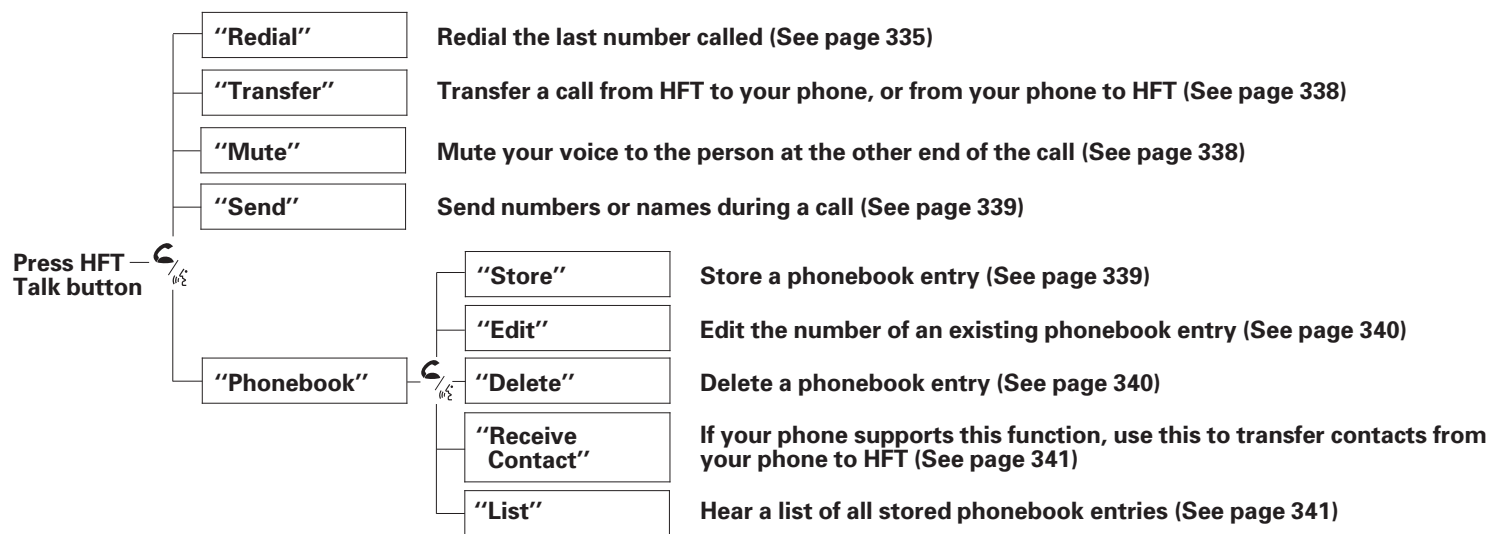
Press and release the HFT Talk button each time you give a command.

328 Features



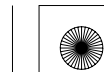


Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)



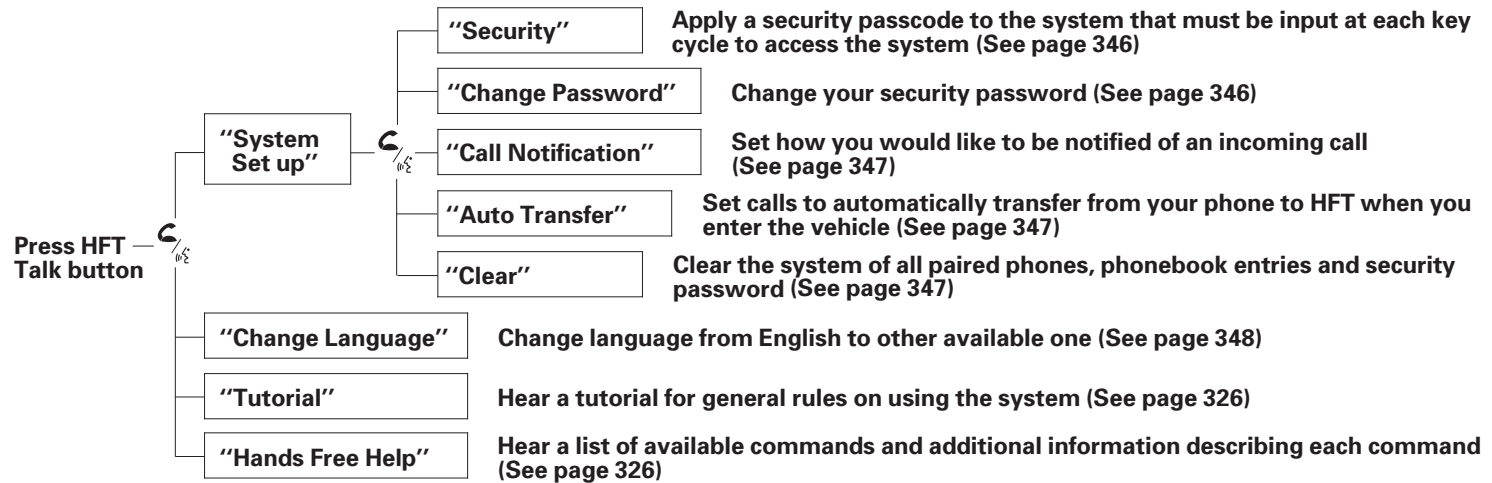
 Press and release the HFT Talk button each time you give a command.

CONTINUED
Features **329**





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)



 Press and release the HFT Talk button each time you give a command.

330 Features





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

To use HFT, you need to pair your Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone to the system.

Phone Setup

This command group is available for paired mobile phones.

Phone pairing tips

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Your phone must be in discovery or search mode to pair. Refer to your phone's manual.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFT.
- If after three minutes your phone is not ready to pair or a phone is not found, the system will time out and return to idle.

To pair a mobile phone:

1. Press and release the HFT Talk button. If you are pairing a phone for the first time, HFT will give you information about the pairing process. If it is not the first phone you are pairing, say "**Phone setup**" and say "**Pair.**"
2. Follow the HFT prompts and put your phone in discovery or search mode. HFT will give you a 4-digit pairing code and begin searching for your phone.
3. When your phone finds a Bluetooth device, select HFT from the options and enter the 4-digit code from the previous step.
4. Follow the HFT prompts and name the newly paired phone.

CONTINUED



Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

To rename a paired phone:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Edit**” after the prompts.
3. If there is more than one phone paired to the system, HFT will ask you which phone’s name you want to change. Follow the HFT prompts and rename the phone.

To delete a paired phone:

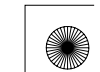
Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Delete**” after the prompts.
3. HFT will ask you which phone you want to delete. Follow the HFT prompts to continue with the deletion.

To hear the names of all paired phones:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**List**” after the prompts.
3. HFT will read out all the paired phone’s names.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

To hear which paired phone is currently linked:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Status**” after the prompts.
3. HFT will tell you which phone is linked to the system.

To change from the currently linked phone to another paired phone:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Next phone**” after the prompts.
3. HFT disconnects the linked phone and searches for another paired phone.
4. Once another phone is found, it is linked to the system. HFT will inform you which phone is now linked.

If no other phones are found or paired, HFT will inform you that the original phone is linked again.

To change the pairing code setting:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phone setup.**”
2. Say “**Set pairing code**” after the prompts.
3. If you want HFT to create a random code each time you pair a phone, say “**Random.**” If you want to choose your own 4-digit code to be used each time, say “**Fixed**” and follow the HFT prompts.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

Making a Call

You can make calls using any phone number or a name in the HFT phonebook. You can also redial the last number called.

Bluetooth is the wireless technology that links your phone to HFT. HFT uses a Class 2 Bluetooth, which means, the maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 10 meters (30 feet).

During a call, HFT allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you remove the key from the ignition switch. However, this may weaken the vehicle's battery.

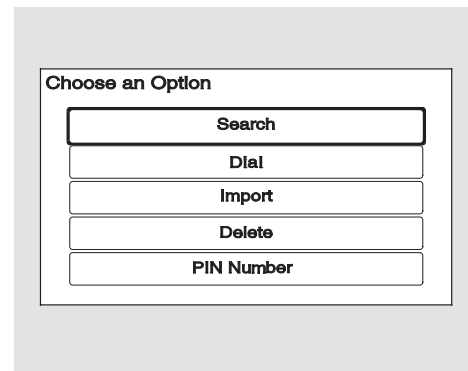
To make a call using a phone number (talk button):

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Call**” or “**Dial**.”
2. Follow the HFT prompts and say the phone number you want to dial.
3. Follow the HFT prompts to confirm the number and say “**Call**” or “**Dial**.”

Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers.

To make a call using a phone number (navigation display):

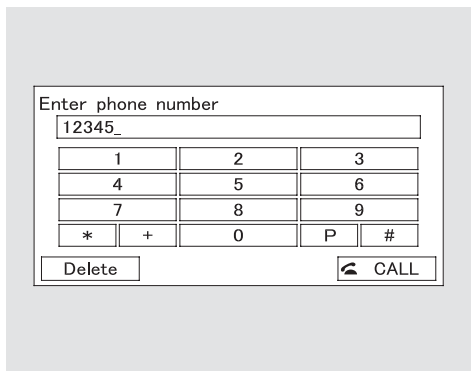


1. Press the INFO button, then select “**Mobile Phonebook**.”
2. Select “**Dial**.”





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)



3. The navigation display will change as shown above. Enter a call number.
4. To make the call, select **"CALL."**
5. To end the call, select **"Hang-up."**

To make a call using a name in the HFT phonebook:

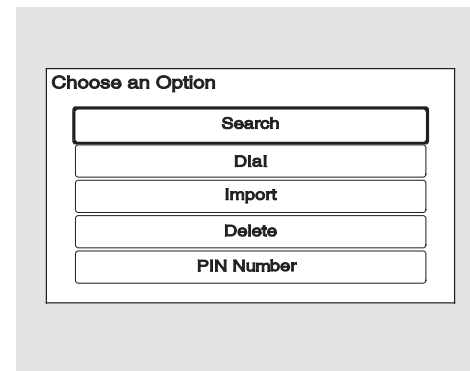
Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say **"Call"** or **"Dial."**
2. Follow the HFT prompts and say the name stored in the HFT phonebook that you want to call.
3. Follow the HFT prompts to confirm the name and make the call.

To redial the last number called by HFT:

Press and release the HFT Talk button and say **"Redial."**

To make a call from an imported phonebook:



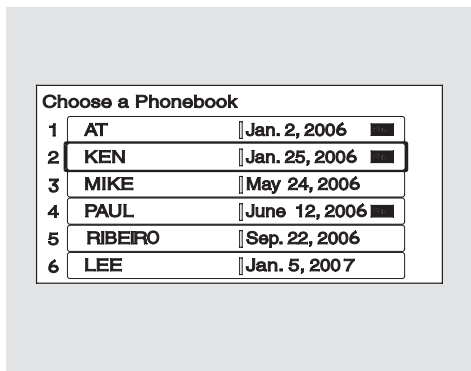
1. Press the INFO button, then select **"Mobile Phonebook."**
2. Select **"Search."**

CONTINUED



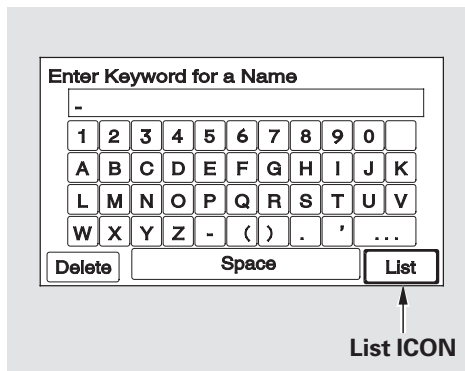


Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)



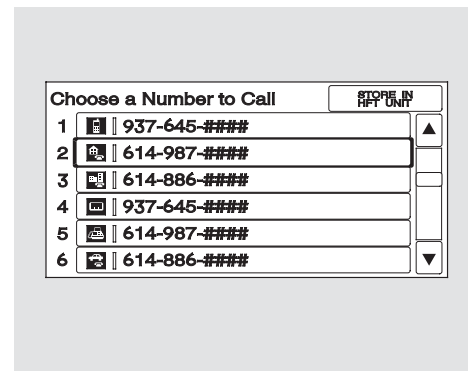
3. Select a phonebook you want to choose a phone number from.

If the phonebook you select is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the PIN to access it. See page 344 for more information.



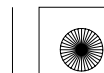
To search for a specific name in the phonebook, enter the keyword for either the first or last name.

To display all names in the phonebook, select the “List” option.



4. Select the name. All the phone numbers stored for that name will be listed.

5. Select the phone number, and HFT begins dialing.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

If you choose “**Store in HFT Unit,**” the phone number will be stored in HFT, so that you can call it using HFT’s name tag by voice.

To make a call using a paired phone via HFT

You can also make a call from your paired phone in the vehicle. The call will be transferred to HFT automatically.

NOTE: Never try to dial from your phone directly if the vehicle is moving.

Receiving a Call

When you receive a call, an incoming call notification (if activated) will play and interrupt the audio system if it is on.

Press the HFT Talk button to answer the call, or the HFT Back button to hang up.

Call Waiting

If your phone has Call Waiting, press and release the HFT Talk button to put the original call on hold and answer the incoming call.

To return to the original call, press the HFT Talk button again. If you don’t want to answer the incoming call, disregard it and continue with your original call. If you want to hang up the original call and answer the new call, press the HFT Back button.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

Transferring a Call

You can transfer a call from HFT to your phone, or from your phone to HFT.

Press and release the HFT Talk button and say “**Transfer.**”

Automatic Transferring

A call on the phone will be automatically transferred to the HFT system when you get into the vehicle and turn on the ignition switch.

If you make a call from your phone while in the vehicle, the call will also be transferred to the HFT system.

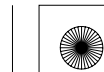
NOTE: Never try to dial from your phone directly if the vehicle is moving.

Muting a Call

You can mute your voice to the person you are talking to during a call.

To mute your voice during a call, press and release the HFT Talk button and say “**Mute.**”

To unmute your voice, press and release the HFT Talk button and say “**Mute**” again.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

Send Numbers or Names During a Call

HFT allows you to send numbers or names during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

To send a name or number during a call:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Send.**”
2. Follow the HFT prompts and say the name or number you want to send.
3. Follow the HFT prompts to send the tones and continue the call.

NOTE: To send a hash (#), say “hash.” To send a star (*), say “star.”

Phonebook

You can store up to 50 names with their associated numbers on HFT. The numbers you store cannot be only phone numbers but other types, such as account numbers or passwords, which can be sent during a menu-driven call.

To store a phonebook entry:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**Store**” after the prompts.
3. Say a name you want to list as your phonebook entry.
4. Say the number you want to store for the name entry.
5. Follow the HFT prompts and say “**Enter**” to store the entry.

CONTINUED





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

NOTE:

- Avoid using duplicate name entries.
- Avoid using “home” as a name entry.
- It is easier for HFT to recognise a multisyllabic or longer name. For example, use “**Peter**” instead of “**Pete,**” or “**John Smith**” instead of “**John.**”

To edit the number stored in a name:

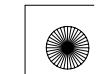
Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**Edit**” after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts and say the name entry you want to edit.
4. When asked, say the new number for that name.
5. Follow the HFT prompts to complete the edit.

To delete a name:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**Delete**” after the prompts.
3. Say the name you want to delete and follow the HFT prompts to complete the deletion.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

To list all names in the phonebook:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**List**” after the prompts.
3. HFT begins reading the names in the order they were stored.
4. If you hear a name you want to call, immediately press the HFT Talk button and say “**Call.**”

To store a specific phone number from your mobile phone directly to the HFT phonebook (available on some phones):

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Phonebook.**”
2. Say “**Receive contact**” after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts, select a number from your mobile phone, and send it to HFT.
4. Follow the HFT prompts and name the number, or say “**Discard**” if it is not the number you want to store.
5. Follow the HFT prompts if you want to store another number.

Mobile Phonebook

(available on some phones)

If you select **Mobile Phonebook** from the Information screen menu, you will see four HFT options.

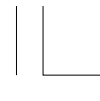
For a list of mobile phones that are compatible with this feature:

Visit

www.hondahandsfree.com

CONTINUED

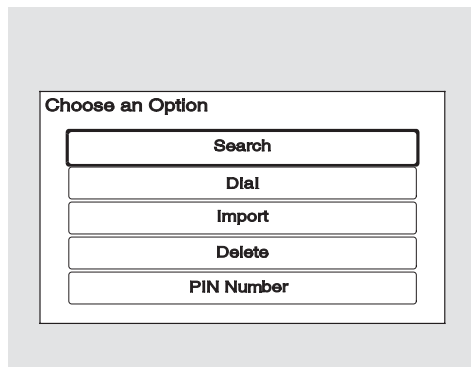
Features **341**



Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

Import:

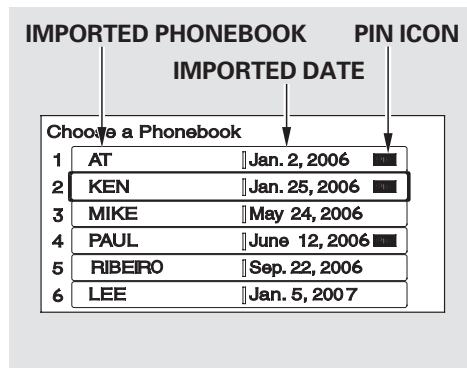
The entire phonebook data of the mobile phone that is linked to HFT can be imported to the navigation system.



Select **"Import,"** and HFT will begin importing the phonebook. Select **"OK"** after the import is completed.

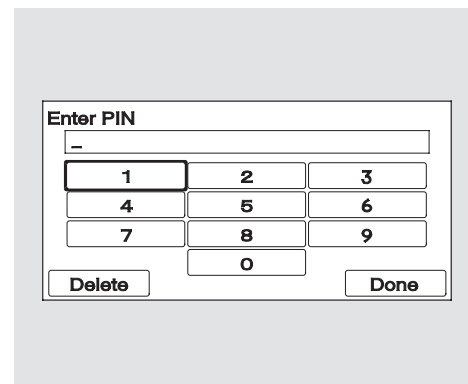
Search:

Once a phonebook has been imported, you can search the phone numbers by the person's name.

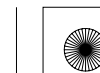


Select **"Search,"** and a list of imported phonebooks will be displayed.

Select a phonebook from the list.



If the phonebook is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the 4-digit PIN.





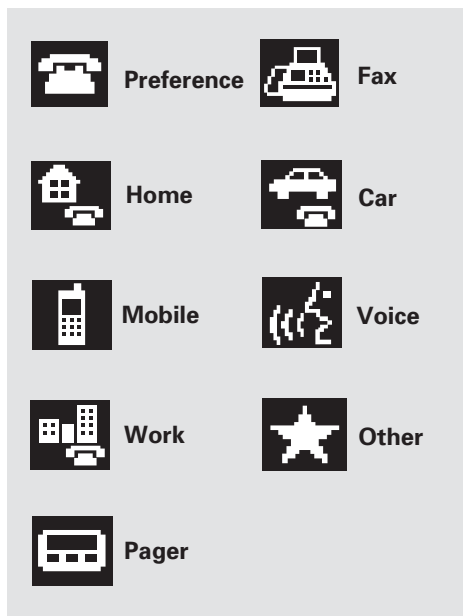
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)



To search for a specific name in the phonebook, enter the keyword for either the first or last name.

To display all names in the phonebook, select the “List” option.

Select a person from the list. Up to three category icons are displayed in the left side of the list:

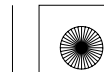


These indicate how many numbers are stored for the name. If a name has more than three category icons, “...” is displayed.

Select the person’s number you want to call, and press the HFT Talk button.



CONTINUED





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

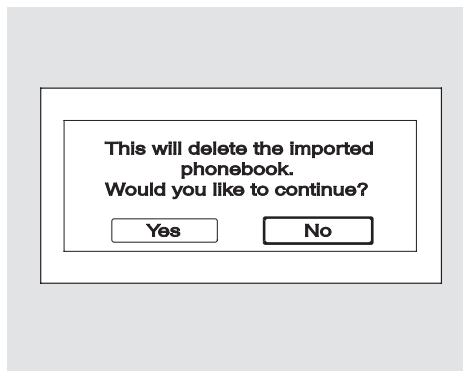
Delete:

You can delete any imported phonebook.

Select **“Delete,”** and a list of imported phonebooks will be displayed.

Select a phonebook you want to delete. If the phonebook is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the 4-digit PIN number.

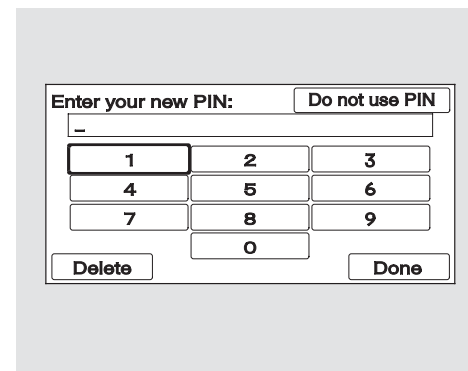
After making a selection, the following screen will appear.



Select **“Yes,”** then **“OK”** to complete the deletion.

PIN Number

You can add, change, or remove a PIN number from any phonebook.



To add a PIN:

If you have selected a phonebook without a PIN, you will see the above display.

Enter the new 4-digit PIN. You will have to re-enter the PIN for confirmation.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

To change the PIN to a new number:

Enter your current PIN

-		
1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9
	0	

Delete Done

Select the phonebook you want. The display will change as shown above.

Enter the current PIN for this phonebook.

Enter your new PIN: Do not use PIN

-		
1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9
	0	

Delete Done

The display will change as shown above.

Enter the new 4-digit PIN number. You will be asked to re-enter the PIN for verification.

To remove a PIN:

Select “PIN number,” then select “Do not use PIN” after you enter the current PIN.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

System Setup

This command group allows you to change or customize HFT's basic settings.

To set a 4-digit password to lock the HFT system for security purposes:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

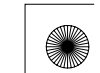
1. Say "**System setup.**"
2. Say "**Security**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts and say the 4-digit password you want to set.
4. Follow the HFT prompts to confirm the number.

NOTE: Once a password is set, you will need to enter it to use HFT each time you start the vehicle. If you forget the password, your dealer will have to reset it for you, or you will have to clear the entire system (see page 347).

To change your security passcode:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup.**"
2. Say "**Change password**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts and say the new 4-digit password.
4. Follow the HFT prompts to confirm the number.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

To select either a ring tone or a prompt as the incoming call notification:*

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**System setup.**”
2. Say “**Call notification**” after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts and say “**Ring tone**” or “**Prompt.**” You can also say “**Off**” for no audible incoming call notification.

* : The default setting is a ring tone.

To activate or deactivate the auto transfer function:

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**System setup.**”
2. Say “**Auto transfer**” after the prompts.
3. HFT will let you know if auto transfer is on or off, depending on the previous setting. Follow the HFT prompts to change the setting.

To clear the system:

This operation clears the password, paired phones, all names in the HFT phonebook, and all imported phonebook data.

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**System setup.**”
2. Say “**Clear**” after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFT prompts to continue to complete the clearing procedure.

You can also clear the system when you have forgotten the password and cannot access HFT. When HFT asks you for the password, say “**System clear.**” Paired phones, all names in the HFT phonebook and all imported phonebook data will be lost.



Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

Change Language

To change the system language between English, French, Italian, German and Spanish:

Press and release the HFT Talk button before a command.

1. Say “**Change language.**”
2. Follow the HFT prompts to select the desired language.

If you have not named your paired phone in the language you just selected, HFT will ask you to name it in the current language.

For example, when French is your currently selected language, you can give voice commands in French.

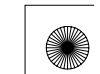
Quick Language Selection

To quickly change the language:
Press and release the HFT Talk button and say a command.

1. Say the language you want to change to in that language.
2. Follow the HFT prompts.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® name and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd. is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.





Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System (For some types)

HFT System Limitations

When using voice control, the HFT system call is placed on hold, or the HFT system stops its voice recognition. The HFT system call will continue when voice control command is ended. To operate the HFT system again, press the Talk button. Then after the beep, say the appropriate command.

In addition, you cannot use the HFT system while receiving a PTY alarm.

For information of DoC (Declaration of Conformance)

EU models

Hereby, *Johnson Controls Automotive*, declares that this *Hands-Free Telephone System* is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

www.jciblueconnect.com/faq/EU_DoC.pdf

Except EU models

For additional conformance information: www.jciblueconnect.com/faq

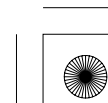
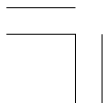




10/09/29 20:33:28 42SWAF30_355



350





Before Driving

Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what fuel to use and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period	352
Fuel Recommendation	352
Petrol models	352
Diesel models.....	353
Service Station Procedures	354
Refueling.....	354
Opening and Closing the Bonnet	356
Oil Check.....	357
Engine Coolant Check	360
Fuel Cutoff Switch.....	361
Fuel Economy	362
Accessories and Modifications	363
Carrying Luggage.....	365





Break-in Period, Fuel Recommendation

Break-in Period

Help assure your vehicle's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 1,000 km.

During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km.
- Do not change the oil until the scheduled maintenance time.
- Do not tow a trailer.

You should also follow these recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are replaced.

Fuel Recommendation

Petrol models

Petrol of the recommended Research Octane Number (RON) may not be available in some areas. In this case, petrol of a lower octane may be used temporarily if it does not cause engine "knocking." This will result in decreased engine performance.

Engine Type ID*1	Recommended Petrol	
	Type	RON (MIN)
R20A2	UNLEADED*2	95
K24Z4	UNLEADED*2	91

* 1 : See the ENGINE NUMBER on engine assembly (see page 566).

* 2 : Using petrol containing lead will damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. This contributes to air pollution.

Oxygenated Fuels

(For EU countries)

Oxygenated fuels are blended with petrol and ethanol or ether compound. Your vehicle is also designed to operate on oxygenated fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 22% ETBE by volume, based on the EN228 standards. For more information, ask your dealer.





Fuel Recommendation

Diesel models

Except for South Africa models

Your vehicle is designed to use only Diesel Fuel (also known as Automotive gas oil and Derv).

You need to use the proper fuel for EN590 and also vary the fuel depending on the season.

The quality of diesel fuel (Derv) can vary in different countries, and only clean and good quality fuel should be used.

Your vehicle is not designed to use Biodiesel (pure or high concentration more than specified by EN590). For more information, ask your dealer.

Select the proper fuel according to the regional or climatic conditions. Use of inadequate fuel may reduce engine power. In this case, the symbol “PGM-FI” may appear on the multi-information display.

The engine peak power may be restricted at starting the engine when the outside temperature is extremely low.

This will help the fuel flow for the normal engine operation.

For proper fuel selection, “DIESEL” is marked on the fuel fill cap.

NOTICE

Serious damage may occur if petrol is used in diesel engines.

Diesel models

For South Africa models only

Your vehicle is designed to use only Diesel Fuel (also known as Automotive gas oil and Derv).

You need to use proper Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel and vary the fuel depending on the season.

Your vehicle is not designed to use Biodiesel. For more information, ask your dealer.

The quality of diesel fuel (Derv) can vary in different countries, and only clean and good quality fuel should be used.

CONTINUED

Before Driving **353**



Fuel Recommendation, Service Station Procedures

Select the proper fuel according to the regional or climate condition. Use of inadequate fuel may reduce engine power. In this case, the symbol “PGM-FI” may appear on the multi-information display.

The engine peak power may be restricted at starting the engine when the outside temperature is extremely low.

This will help the fuel flow for the normal engine operation.

For proper fuel selection, “Ultra Low Sulfur DIESEL” is marked on the fuel fill lid.

NOTICE

Serious damage may occur if petrol is used in diesel engines.

Refueling



1. Park with the left side closest to the service station pump.
2. Open the fuel fill door by pulling on the handle located under the lower corner of the dashboard.

⚠ WARNING

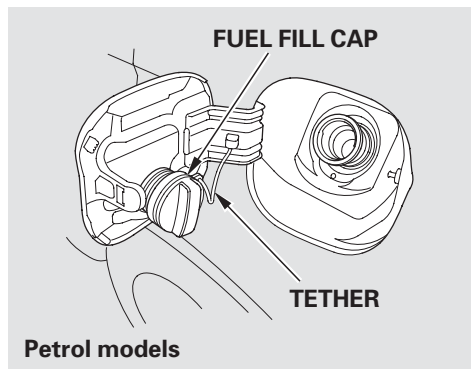
Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

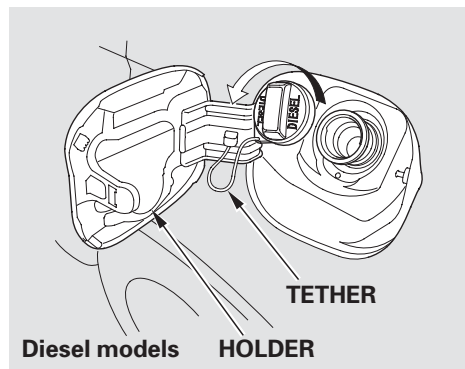




Service Station Procedures



3. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank equalizes.



Place the fuel fill cap in the holder on the fuel fill door. To prevent the fuel fill cap from becoming lost, it is attached to the fuel fill door with a tether.

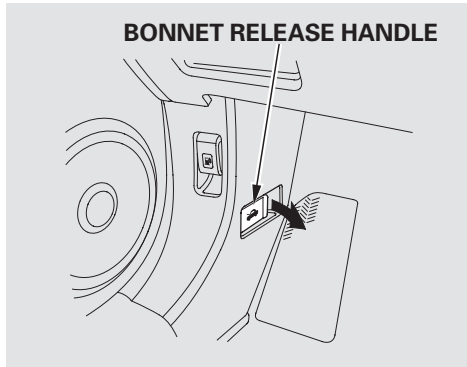
4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to “top off” the tank. This leaves some room in the fuel tank for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.
5. Screw the fuel fill cap back on until it clicks at least once.
6. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches.



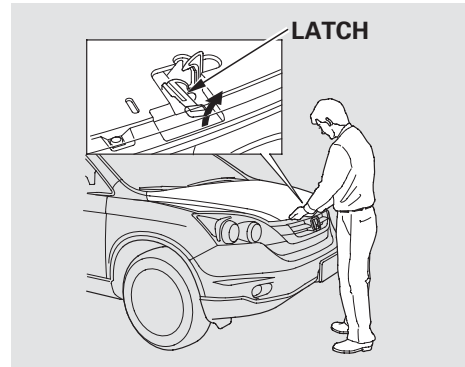


Service Station Procedures

Opening and Closing the Bonnet

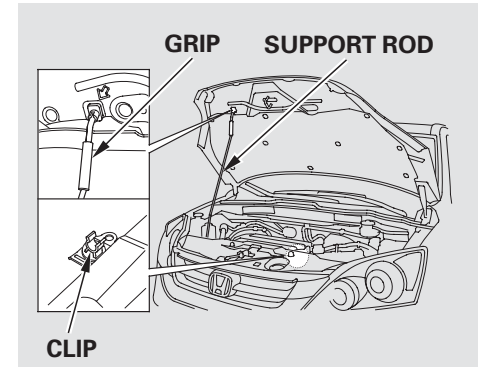


1. Park the vehicle, and set the parking brake. Pull the bonnet release handle under the lower corner of the dashboard. The bonnet will pop up slightly.

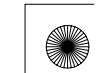


2. Put your fingers between the front edge of the bonnet and the front grille. The bonnet latch handle is above the “H” logo. Push this handle up to release the bonnet. Lift the bonnet.

If the bonnet latch handle moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the handle, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



3. Holding the grip, pull the support rod out of its clip. Insert the end into the hole in the bonnet designated by an arrow.





Service Station Procedures

To close the bonnet, lift it up slightly to remove the support rod from the hole. Put the support rod back into its holding clip. Lower the bonnet to about 30 cm (a foot) above the fender, then let it drop. Make sure it is securely latched.

NOTICE

On Diesel models
Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

Oil Check

All engines consume oil as part of their normal operation, therefore, the engine oil level must be checked regularly, for example when refuelling. Always check the oil before a long journey.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

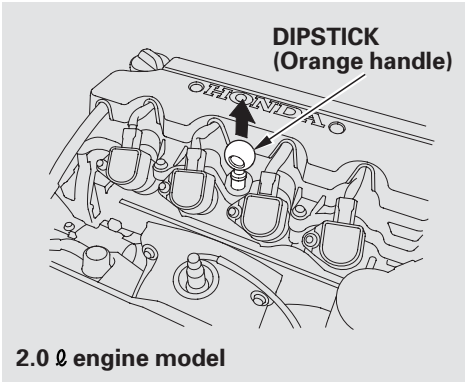
Make sure the engine is warmed up and the vehicle is parked on level ground. Turn off the engine and wait approximately 3 minutes before checking the oil level.

CONTINUED

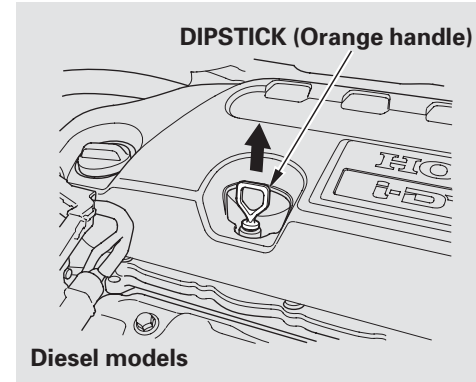
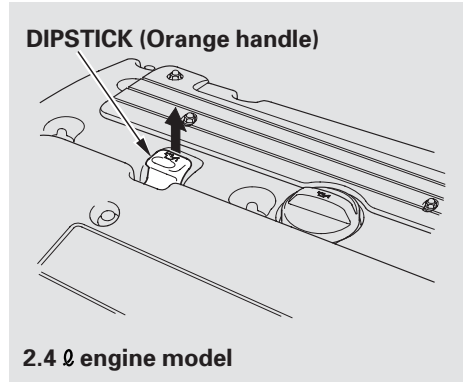




Service Station Procedures



1. Remove the dipstick (orange handle).

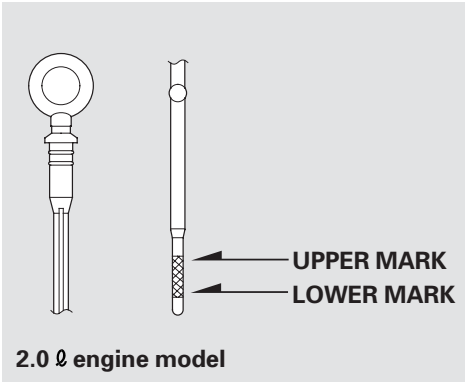


- Remove the dipstick carefully, so you do not spill the oil. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment.
2. Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
 3. Insert the dipstick all the way back into its hole.

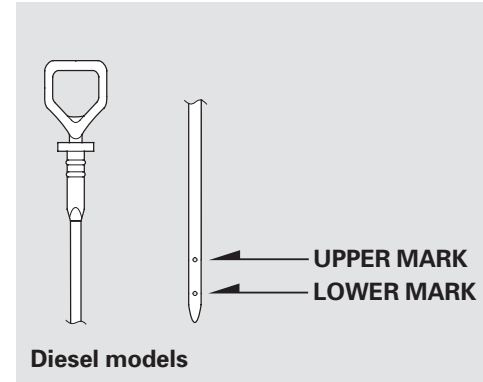
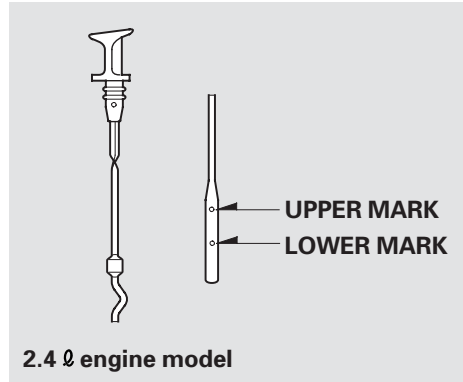




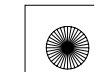
Service Station Procedures



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.



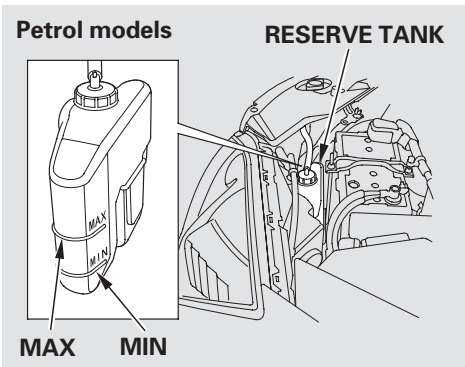
If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Engine Oil** on page 442 on petrol models, 444 on diesel models.





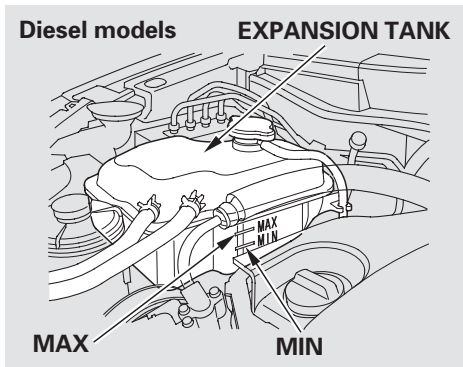
Service Station Procedures

Engine Coolant Check



On Petrol models

Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 446 for information on adding the proper coolant.



On Diesel models

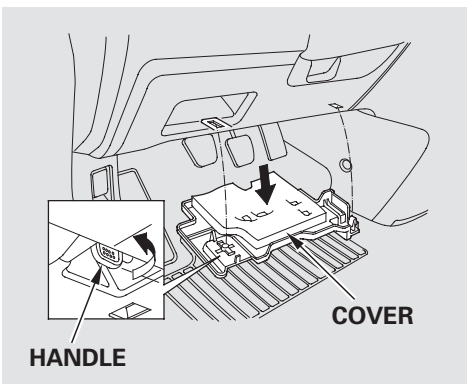
The coolant level in the expansion tank should be checked only when the engine and the cooling system are cold. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 448 .

Refer to **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 428 for information about checking other items on your vehicle.

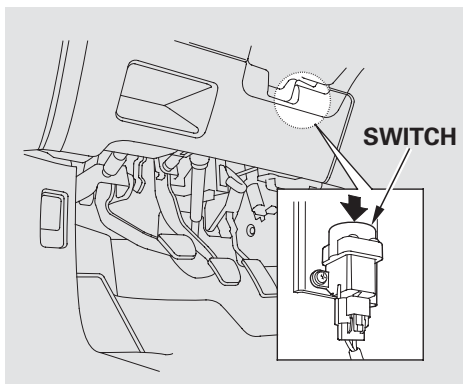




Fuel Cutoff Switch (For some types)



The fuel cutoff switch is behind the instrument panel. To access the switch, turn the handle anticlockwise on the lower instrument panel, then remove the cover while releasing the tab. Extend your arm to the back of the instrument panel from the underside.



In a collision or sudden impact, this switch automatically cuts off the fuel supply to the engine.

After the switch has activated, it must be reset by pressing the button before the engine can be restarted.

⚠ WARNING

Leaking fuel can ignite or explode, causing you to be seriously or fatally injured.

Always check for fuel leaks before resetting the switch.





Fuel Economy

Improving Fuel Economy

- Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance schedule. See **Owner's Maintenance Checks** (see page 428).

For example, an underinflated tyre causes more “rolling resistance,” which uses more fuel.

The build-up of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel economy and reduces the chance of corrosion.

- Drive moderately. Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking use more fuel.
- Always drive in the highest gear possible.
- Combine several short trips into one.
- The air conditioning puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Use the fresh-air ventilation when possible.

- *On vehicles with manual transmission* Shift up and shift down indicators on the instrument panel show the best timing to shift to a higher or lower gear, so you will keep the engine operating in its most economical range.
- Try to maintain a constant speed. Every time you slow down and speed up, your vehicle uses extra fuel. If equipped, use the cruise control or adaptive cruise control (ACC) when appropriate.





Accessories and Modifications

Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Honda accessories, can make it unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

Accessories

Your dealer has genuine Honda accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle.

Although non-Honda accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

⚠ WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antenna, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 552) or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the rear windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact your dealer for assistance. If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.





Accessories and Modifications

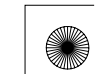
Modifying Your Vehicle

Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-Honda components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

Some examples are:

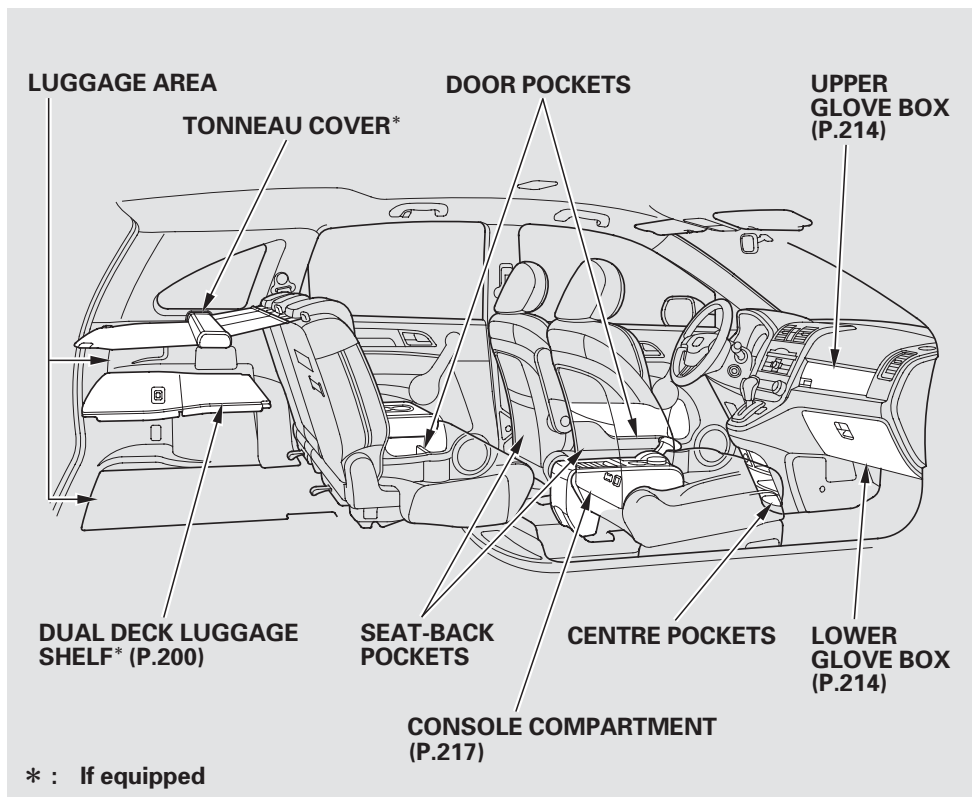
- Lowering your vehicle with a non-Honda suspension kit that significantly reduces ground clearance can allow the undercarriage to hit speed bumps or other raised objects, which could cause the airbags to deploy.
- Raising your vehicle with an aftermarket suspension kit can affect the handling and stability.
- Non-Honda wheels, because they are a universal design, can cause excessive stress on suspension components.

- Larger or smaller wheels and tyres can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems ineffective.





Carrying Luggage



Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas:

- Upper glove box
- Lower glove box
- Door and seat-back pockets
- Luggage area, including the rear seats when folded up or down.
- Console compartment
- Centre pockets
- Upper and lower luggage areas with the dual deck luggage shelf (if equipped)
- Roof-rack (if installed)

However, carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of luggage, be sure to read the following pages.





Carrying Luggage

Load Limits

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, luggage and towbar must not exceed the maximum permissible weight. The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight. Refer to page 570 for the maximum permissible weight and maximum permissible axle weight.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Carrying Items in the Passenger Compartment

- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, and proper operation of the seats. Do not stack items higher than the back of the front seats.
- Keep the lower glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.





Carrying Luggage

- If you fold the rear seats up or down, tie down items that could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop. Also, keep all luggage below the bottom of the windows. If it is higher, it could interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Try to secure the items with rope or cord so they will not shift while you are driving. Do not stack items higher than the back of the front seats.

Refer to pages 190 and 192 for folding rear seats.

If equipped

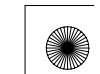
Do not use the dual deck luggage shelf with any rear seat folded up or down.

Carrying Luggage in the Luggage Area or on a Roof Rack

- Distribute luggage evenly on the floor of the luggage area, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible. Try to secure the items with rope or cord so they will not shift while you are driving.
- Do not place items on the tonneau cover (if equipped), or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop.
- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the tailgate, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of **carbon monoxide poisoning**, follow the instructions on page 76 .

- If you carry any items on a roof rack, be sure the total weight of the rack and the items does not exceed 75 kg (165 lbs).

Concerning means of lashing and retaining devices offered on the accessory market, please contact your dealer.





Carrying Luggage

Carrying Luggage on the Dual Deck Luggage Shelf



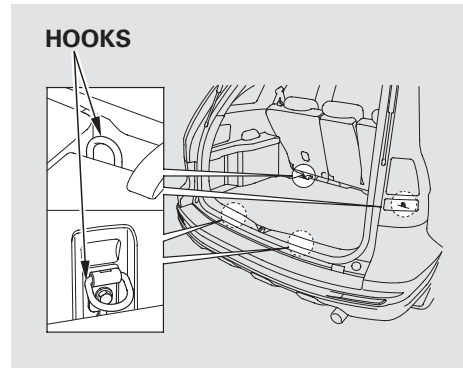
On vehicles with dual deck luggage shelf

Do not put any items on the dual deck luggage shelf that could block your view or be thrown around the vehicle during a crash.

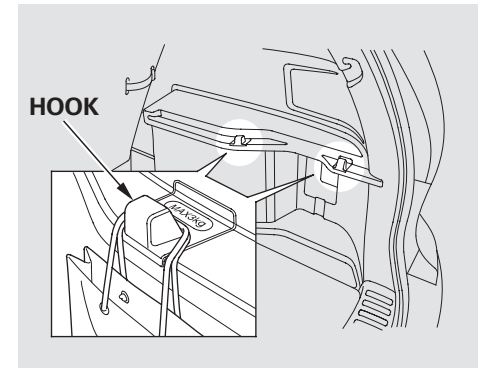
Do not use the dual deck luggage shelf if the rear seats are folded down.

Do not exceed the dual deck luggage shelf load limit of 10 kg.

Luggage Hooks

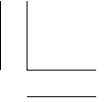


To secure luggage, use the four floor hooks in the luggage area. Make sure all stored items are secured before driving.



On some types
Your vehicle also has luggage hooks on the side panel in the luggage area. They are designed to hold light items. Heavy objects may damage the hook. Make sure any items put on each hook weigh less than 3 kg (6.5 lbs).

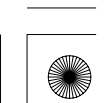
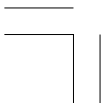




Carrying Luggage

Optional Separation Net

The separation net can be used to hold back soft, lightweight items stored in the luggage area. Heavy items should be properly secured on the floor of the luggage area. The net may not prevent heavy items from being thrown forward in a crash or a sudden stop.

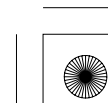
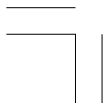




10/09/29 20:36:42 42SWAF30_375



370

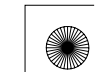




Driving

This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the automatic and manual transmissions. It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS), and facts you need if you are planning to tow a trailer.

Driving Guidelines.....	372
Preparing to Drive	373
Starting the Engine (Petrol models)	374
Starting the Engine (Diesel models).....	375
Manual Transmission.....	376
Automatic Transmission.....	381
Parking.....	387
Braking System.....	388
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)	389
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS).....	391
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	402
Deflation Warning System	404
Driving in Bad Weather	409
Towing a Trailer	411
Trailer Stability Assist.....	419
Off-Road Guidelines	421





Driving Guidelines

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance that allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

Because your vehicle rides higher off the ground, it has a high centre of gravity that can cause it to roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher roll over rate than other types of vehicles.

To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres whenever possible.

- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that would raise the centre of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy luggage on the roof.

Your vehicle is equipped with a four-wheel drive (4WD) system. When the system senses a loss of front-wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This gives you better traction and mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two-wheel drive vehicle.

See page 421 for off-road driving guidelines.





Preparing to Drive

You should do the following checks and adjustments before you drive your vehicle.

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the bonnet is fully closed.
3. Check that the tailgate is fully closed.
4. Visually check the tyres. If a tyre looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure.
5. Check that any items you may be carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

6. *On vehicles with power adjustable seats*
Check the seat adjustment (see page 181).

On vehicles with manual adjustable seats
Check the seat adjustment (see page 182).

7. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page 209).
8. Check the steering wheel adjustment (see page 159).
9. Make sure the doors are securely closed.

10. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 21).
11. When you start the engine, check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the multi-information display (see pages 86 and 101).





Starting the Engine (Petrol models)

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. *Manual transmission:*
Push the clutch pedal down all the way and shift the transmission to neutral.

Automatic transmission:
Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.

4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to the START (III) position. Do not hold the key in the START (III) position for more than 15 seconds at a time. If the engine does not start right away, pause for at least 10 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. See **Immobilizer System** on page 162 .

NOTICE

The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 meters (8,000 feet) adds to this problem.

If the outside temperature is below freezing, or if your vehicle has not been driven for several days, warm up the engine for a few minutes before driving (prohibited in Germany! § 30 StVO).





Starting the Engine (Diesel models)

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. *Manual transmission*
Push the clutch pedal down all the way and shift the transmission to neutral.

Automatic transmission

Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.

4. Turn the ignition key to the ON (II) position. Wait until the glow plugs indicator turns off.

You may hear some noise near the fuel tank (located under the rear seat) for a while after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. This is normal: it is the fuel system priming automatically.

5. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to the START (III) position, and release the key as soon as the engine is running. If the engine does not start right away, do not hold the key in START (III) for more than 15 seconds at a time (20 seconds in cold weather). Pause for at least 20 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. See **Immobilizer System** on page 162 .

Cold Climates

In very cold climates the battery charging and oil pressure indicators may take several seconds to go off. Similarly, engine cranking times will also increase.

Warming Up

In the interests of fuel economy, it is advisable to start driving straight away, remembering that harsh acceleration or labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached can damage the engine.

NOTICE

The engine must not be run above fast idle speed until the oil pressure warning indicator goes off. This will ensure that the engine and turbocharger bearings are properly lubricated before being run at normal driving speeds.

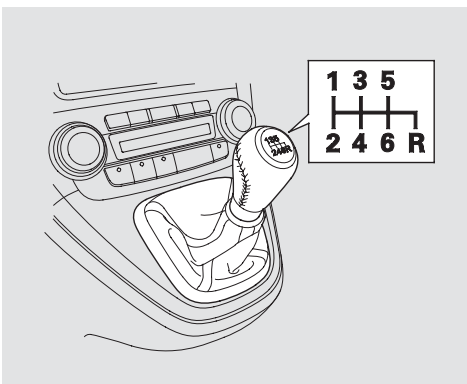
Ignition Switching Off

To avoid the possibility of damaging the turbocharger bearings through inadequate lubrication, **ALWAYS** allow the engine to idle for 10 seconds before turning off the engine.





Manual Transmission



The manual transmission is synchronized in all forward gears for smooth operation. It has a lockout so you cannot accidentally shift from any forward gear to reverse while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed (see page 380).

When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually. When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause excessive clutch wear.

Come to a full stop before you shift into reverse. You can damage the transmission by trying to shift into reverse with the vehicle moving. Push down the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into reverse, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they won't "grind."





Manual Transmission

When slowing down, you can get extra braking from the engine by shifting to a lower gear. This extra braking can help you maintain a safe speed and prevent your brakes from overheating while going down a steep hill. Before downshifting, make sure the engine speed will not go into the tachometer's red zone in the lower gear. Refer to the maximum allowable speeds charts.



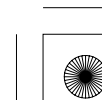
⚠ WARNING

Rapid slowing or speeding-up can cause loss of control on slippery surfaces. If you crash, you can be injured.

Use extra care when driving on slippery surfaces.

NOTICE

Do not rest your hand on the shift lever while driving; pressure transmitted from your hand may cause premature wear to the gear selector mechanism.





Manual Transmission

Maximum Allowable Speeds

The speeds in this table are the maximum allowable speeds in each gear. If you exceed these speeds, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

Before downshifting, make sure the vehicle will not exceed the maximum allowable speed specified by the chart for the lower gear to avoid engine damage.

2.0 l engine model

Gear	Maximum allowable speeds
1st	44 km/h (28 mph)
2nd	86 km/h (53 mph)
3rd	133 km/h (83 mph)
4th	165 km/h (103 mph)
5th	206 km/h (129 mph)

2.4 l engine model

Gear	Maximum allowable speeds
1st	46 km/h (28 mph)
2nd	88 km/h (55 mph)
3rd	136 km/h (85 mph)
4th	171 km/h (107 mph)
5th	213 km/h (133 mph)

2.2 l engine model (diesel)

Gear	Maximum allowable speeds*
1st	36 km/h (22 mph)
2nd	70 km/h (44 mph)
3rd	115 km/h (71 mph)
4th	155 km/h (96 mph)
5th	185 km/h (115 mph)

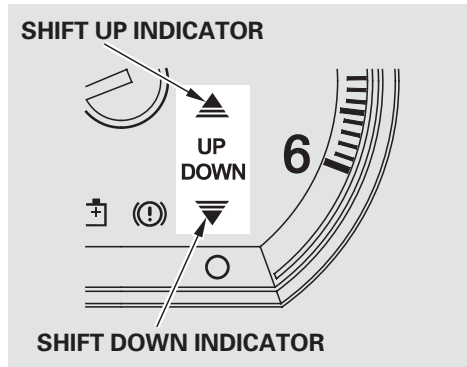
* : The values shown are the speeds when the engine is at 4,500 rpm.





Manual Transmission

Shift Up/Shift Down Indicators



The shift indicator light may be used as a guide to help you change gear when you would like to drive to achieve better fuel efficiency.

Either shift up or shift down indicator will come on at the best time to shift to a higher or lower gear for better fuel economy. You can achieve better fuel economy by accelerating and decelerating slowly, and shifting when prompted by the

shift up or down indicator.

The shift down indicator prompts you to shift to a lower gear according to your acceleration when you are climbing a hill or for faster accelerating on a level road.

This indicator will not prompt to downshift to first gear. It is up to you to downshift to first gear to increase engine braking. Avoid sudden engine braking.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

If there is a problem with the shift up or down indication system, both of the shift up and shift down indicators will not come on. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

⚠ WARNING

The shift indicator is only a guide to help you achieve better fuel economy. Never refer to the Shift Indicators when road and traffic conditions are unsuitable or when it may distract you.

On vehicles with adaptive cruise control (ACC) system
With the ACC system activated, either shift up or shift down indicator also comes on to show you the shifting point of the engine performance limit, corresponding to the gear which you select. For more information, see page 305 .

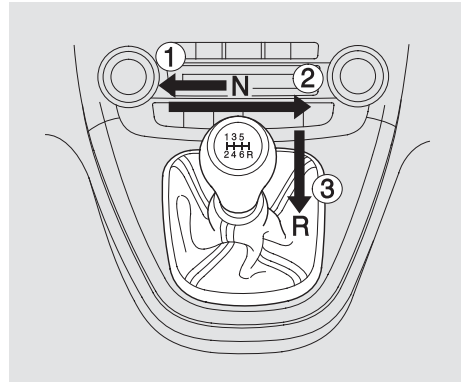




Manual Transmission

Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout so you cannot accidentally shift from any forward gear to reverse while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed. If you cannot shift to reverse when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



1. With the clutch pedal pressed, move the shift lever to the first/second gear side of the neutral gate, then shift to reverse.

2. If you are still unable to shift to reverse, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position.
3. Press the clutch pedal, and shift to reverse.
4. With the clutch pedal still pressed, start the engine.

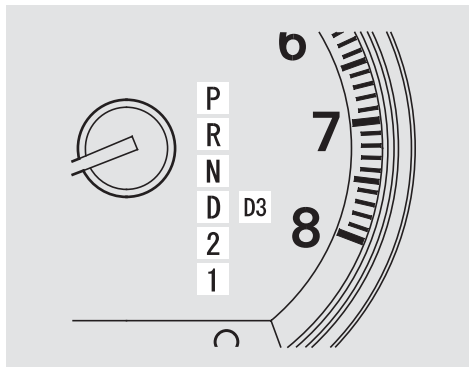
If you need to use this procedure to shift to reverse, your vehicle may be developing a problem. Have it checked by your dealer.





Automatic Transmission


Shift Lever Position Indicators



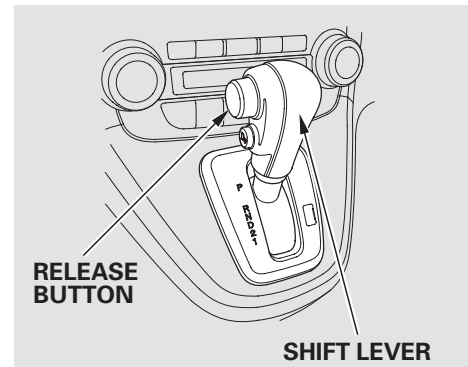
These indicators on the instrument panel show which position the shift lever is in.

The “D” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the “D” indicator, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Avoid rapid acceleration, and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

When the “D” indicator warns of a possible problem with the transmission, you will see the symbol “,” or, the symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message.

Shifting



To shift from Park to any position, press firmly on the brake pedal, and press the release button on the side of the shift lever, then move the lever. You cannot shift out of Park when the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) or ACCESSORY (I) position.

CONTINUED





Automatic Transmission

To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button.
R to P N to R D to 2 2 to 1	Press the shift lever release button.
1 to 2 2 to D D to N N to D R to N	Move the shift lever.
D3 to D D to D3	Press the D3 button.

Park (P) – This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and have your foot off the accelerator pedal. Press the release button on the side of the shift lever to move it.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see **Shift Lock Release** on page 385 .

To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. You must also press the release button to shift into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

Reverse (R) – Press the brake pedal and the release button on the side of the shift lever to shift from Park to reverse. To shift from reverse to neutral, come to a complete stop and then shift. Press the release button before shifting into reverse from neutral.



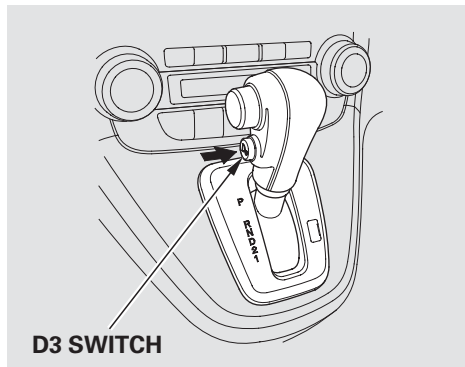


Automatic Transmission

Neutral (N) – Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to the Park position if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another gear.

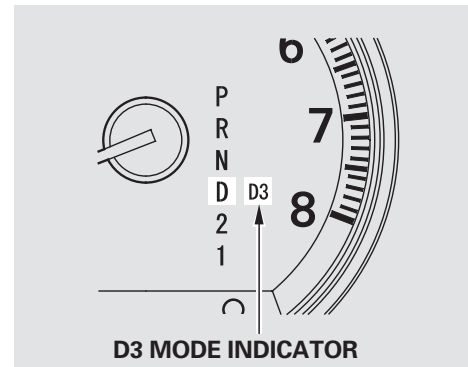
Drive (D) – Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically selects a suitable gear (1 through 5) for your speed and acceleration. You may notice the transmission shifting up at higher engine speeds when the engine is cold. This helps the engine warm up faster.

D3 Mode



Press the D3 switch on the side of the shift lever to turn this mode on or off; the D3 mode indicator comes on whenever the D3 mode is selected.

D3 mode can be turned on or off only when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position and the shift lever is in the D position.



When the D3 mode is on, the transmission selects only the first three gears. Use D3 mode when towing a trailer, or to provide engine braking when going down a steep hill. D3 mode can also keep the transmission from cycling between third and fourth gears in stop-and-go driving.

CONTINUED





Automatic Transmission

Shifting out from the D position will cancel the D3 mode, and the D3 indicator will go out. Selecting the D position again will resume the D3 mode and the indicator comes on.

Turning the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position turns this mode off. When you restart the engine, select the D position and press the D3 mode switch again to use this mode.

The D3 mode indicator also comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

Second (2) – To shift to second, press the release button on the side of the shift lever. This position locks the transmission in second gear. It does not downshift to first gear when you come to a stop.

Use second gear:

- For more power when climbing.
- To increase engine braking when going down steep hills.
- For starting out on a slippery surface or in deep snow.
- To help reduce wheel spin.
- When driving downhill with a trailer.

First (1) – To shift from second to first, press the release button on the side of the shift lever. This position locks the transmission in first gear. By upshifting and downshifting through 1, 2, D3, and D, you can operate the transmission much like a manual transmission without a clutch pedal.

Petrol models

If you shift into first position when the vehicle speed is above 50 km/h (31 mph), the transmission shifts into second gear first to avoid sudden engine braking.

Diesel models

If you shift into first position when the vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph), the transmission shifts into second gear first to avoid sudden engine braking.





Automatic Transmission

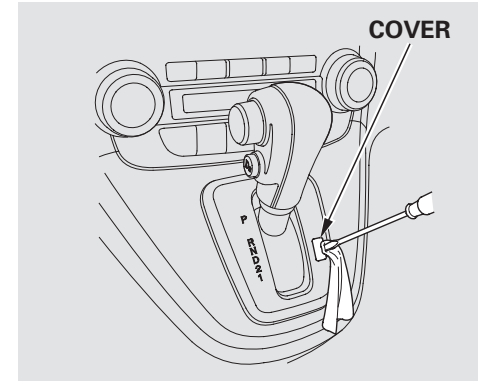
Engine Speed Limiter

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

Shift Lock Release

This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal and pressing the release button does not work.

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.



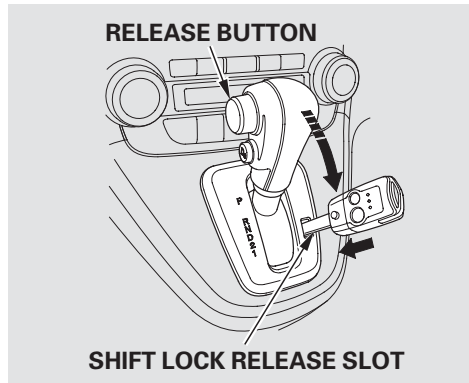
3. Put a cloth on the edge of the shift lock release slot cover to prevent scratches. Using a small flat-tip screwdriver or metal fingernail file, carefully pry on the edge of the cover to remove it.

CONTINUED

Driving **385**



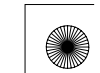
Automatic Transmission



4. Insert the key in the shift lock release slot.
5. Push down on the key while you press the release button on the shift lever and move the shift lever out of Park to neutral.

6. Remove the key from the shift lock release slot, then reinstall the cover. Make sure the notch on the cover is on the passenger's side. Press the brake pedal, and restart the engine.

If you need to use the shift lock release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.





Parking

Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly, or your vehicle may roll if it is parked on an incline.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission.

Parking Tips

- Make sure the windows are closed.
 - Turn off the lights.
 - Place any packages, valuables, etc., in the luggage area or take them with you.
 - Lock the doors and the tailgate.
- On vehicles with security system*
Check the indicator on the instrument panel to verify that the security system is set.
- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The hot three way catalytic converter could cause these materials to catch on fire.

- If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb. If you have a manual transmission, put it in first gear.
- If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb. If you have a manual transmission, put it in reverse gear.
- Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes.





Braking System

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The emergency brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

On vehicles with collision mitigation braking system
When the brake pedal assist is activated, the e-pretensioners tighten the front seat belts (see page 32).

Resting your foot on the pedal keeps the brakes applied lightly, builds up heat, reduces their effectiveness and reduces brake pad life. In addition, fuel economy can be reduced. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by taking your foot off the accelerator and downshifting to a lower gear.

Check the brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Be extra cautious in your driving.

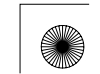
Braking System Design

The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.

Brake Wear Indicators

All four brakes have audible brake wear indicators.

If the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive, metallic screeching sound when you apply the brake pedal. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will screech all the time. It is normal for the brakes to occasionally squeal or squeak when you apply them.





Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than a person can do it.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”


You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and you may hear some noise. This is normal: it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.



ABS Indicator

If the ABS indicator comes on, the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system, but without anti-lock. You should have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

If the ABS indicator comes on while driving, test the brakes as shown on page 551.

You will also see the symbol “” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

CONTINUED

Driving **389**





Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the EBD system may also be shut down.

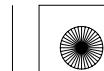
Test your brakes as instructed on page 551 . If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

Important Safety Reminders
ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during braking.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent the loss of stability. Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock.





Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

On vehicle with the Adaptive Cruise Control System

Overview

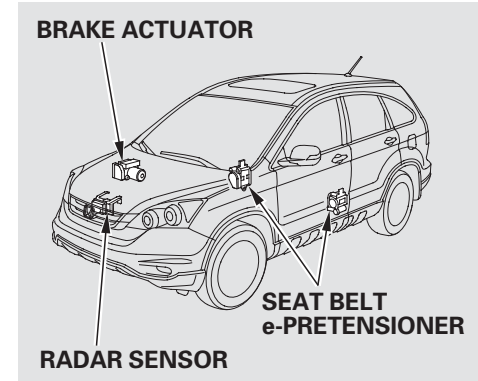
The collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) can assist the driver when there is a possibility of colliding with the vehicle in front of yours. It is designed to reduce the speed of your vehicle before an unavoidable collision occurs and, if possible, to alert you to a potential collision while there is time for the driver to prevent it. Here is a brief description of what the CMBS can do:

- When your speed is above 15 km/h (10 mph), the CMBS radar sensor in the front grille can sense a vehicle ahead of you. When your vehicle gets too close to the vehicle ahead of you, the system may activate a warning beep, causing automatic application of the brakes, and causing the e-pretensioners to tighten the

front seat belts (see page 32).

- The CMBS does not activate if the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is less than 15 km/h (10 mph). CMBS may also not activate if you turn the steering wheel to avoid the collision.

When the CMBS activates, the brake lights also come on.



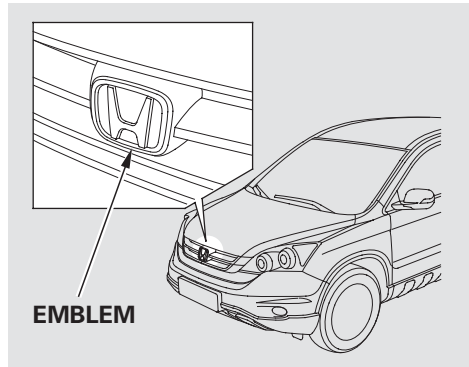
The CMBS consists of a radar sensor in the front grille, a brake actuator in the engine compartment, an indicator on the instrument panel, seat belt e-pretensioners on the front seats, and an on/off switch on the dashboard.



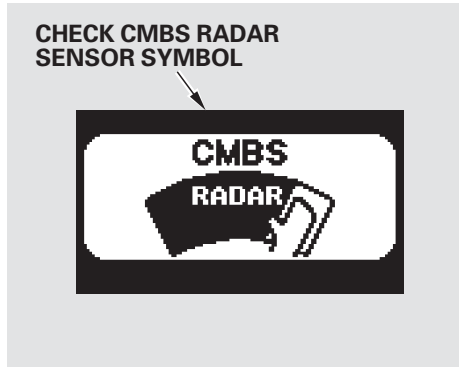


Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Radar Sensor

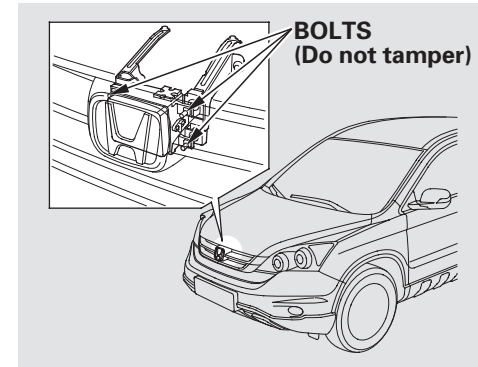


The radar sensor is located behind the emblem in the front grille. If the emblem is covered with mud, dirt, dead leaves, wet snow, etc., or if you put a sticker on it, the CMBS will automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator on the instrument panel will come on (see page 95).



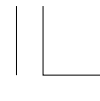
You will also see the symbol above and the symbol “ **CMBS** ,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

Always keep the emblem clean. If it gets dirty, clean it with water or a mild detergent. Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder.



There are three bolts on the sides of the radar sensor. Do not tamper with these bolts, or you may cause the system to malfunction.






Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Do not allow anything to impact the radar sensor or the emblem. If either of these parts receives a strong impact, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS off switch, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the front grille ever needs to be repaired, consult a dealer first.

If the front emblem or the radar sensor ever needs to be removed, take your vehicle to a dealer.

NOTICE

When the CMBS is on, the radar sensor constantly scans for vehicles directly ahead of you. This means that driving on a road with a few or no vehicles could cause the symbol “” to appear on the multi-information display. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

Certain conditions may cause the radar aim to be temporarily out of proper range, such as the following two examples:

- Your vehicle is tilted because of a heavy load in the rear or from modifications to the suspension. Do not overload your vehicle (see Carrying Luggage on page 365), and do not make any modifications to the suspension (see Accessories and Modifications on page 363).
- The tyres are not correctly maintained. Always make sure the tyre pressures are correct (see page 486), and that the tyres are the correct size and in good condition (see Tyres on page 486).





Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

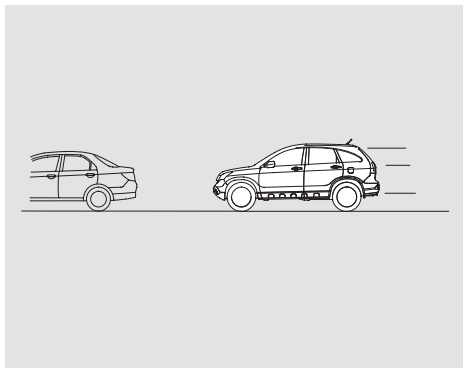
(EU models)

EC Directives

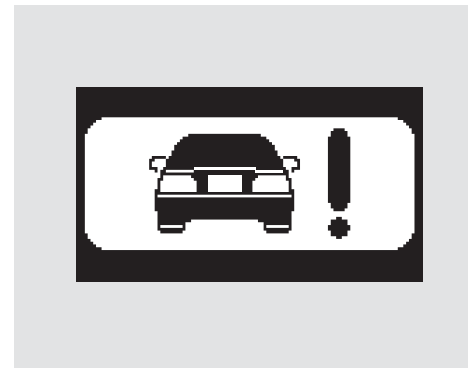
This radar sensor system complies with the R & TTE (Radio equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity) Directives.

CE0891

Collision Alarm



If the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle or object ahead of you, it alerts you with an audible and a visual alarm.

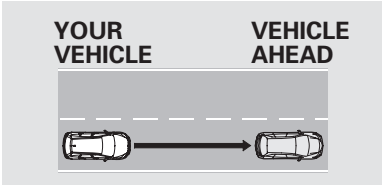

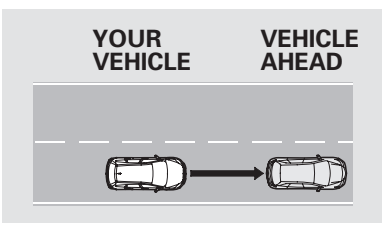

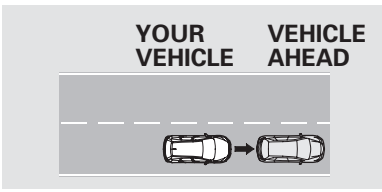



The audible alarm is a constant beeping sound; the visual alert is an amber coloured symbol as shown above or a “BRAKE” message that flashes on the multi-information display. If either of the alarms comes on, take the appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

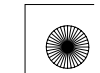




Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Distance between vehicles		CMBS			
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle.	E-pretensioner	Audio & Visual WARNING	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	—	A beep sounds and “  ” flashes on the multi-information display.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Retracts the driver’s seat belt gently a few times, providing a physical warning. 		Lightly applied
Stage three*		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.	Forcefully tightens driver and front passenger seat belts. 		Forcefully applied

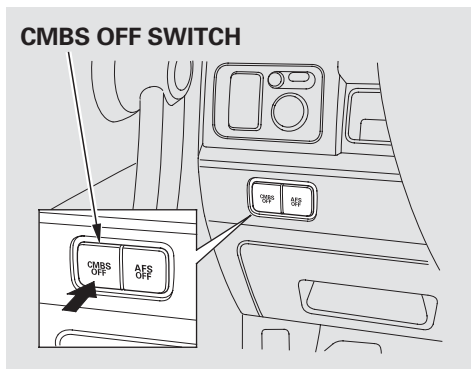
*: Depending on the circumstances, CMBS may not go through all of the alert stages before initiating the last stage.
CONTINUED





Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

CMBS OFF Switch



To turn the CMBS off, press and hold the CMBS off switch under the driver's side vent until you hear a beep. The CMBS indicator on the instrument panel comes on to remind you, and a CMBS OFF message appears on the multi-information display. To turn the system back on, press and hold the switch again until you hear a beep.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the system will be in the previously selected on or off setting.

If you turn it off, by pressing the CMBS off switch, the CMBS indicator comes on and stays on to remind you that the CMBS is deactivated.

Automatic Shut Off

Any of the conditions below can cause the CMBS to shut off. When the system shuts off, the CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on, and the symbol “**CMBS**” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message appears on the multi-information display for about 5 seconds.

- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- Extended off-road or mountainous driving.
- Driving your vehicle with the parking brake applied.
- Driving your vehicle in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- A dirty radar sensor cover on the front grille.

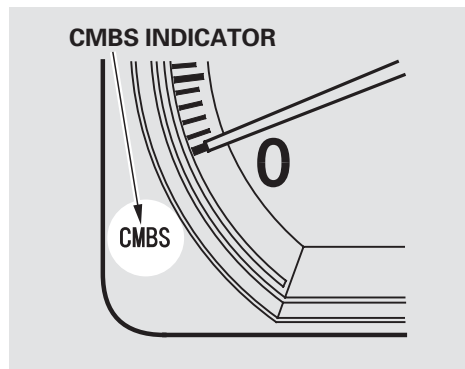




Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The CMBS will automatically switch on again if the conditions that caused it to switch off are improved.

CMBS Indicator



This indicator comes on for several seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It also comes on and stays on when you turn the CMBS off by pressing the CMBS OFF switch.

To turn the CMBS back on, make sure the vehicle is stopped and the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, then press the CMBS OFF switch until you hear a beep.

The CMBS indicator normally comes on under these conditions:

- When you manually turn off the system. This condition will be kept until you turn on the CMBS by pressing the switch.
- When the system shuts off automatically.
- When you drive in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.).
- If anything covers the radar sensor cover (dirt, mud, dry leaves, wet snow, etc.).

CONTINUED





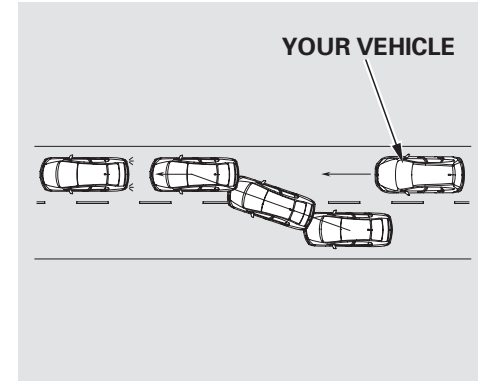
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

- When the VSA system indicator comes on (see page 402).
- When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the CMBS indicator should come on for a few seconds, then go off. If the indicator comes on at any other time and the symbol “**CMBS**” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message appears on the multi-information display, there is a problem with the CMBS. You can still drive your vehicle, but CMBS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Limitations

The CMBS may not activate under some conditions. Here are a few examples:

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, or it brakes suddenly.

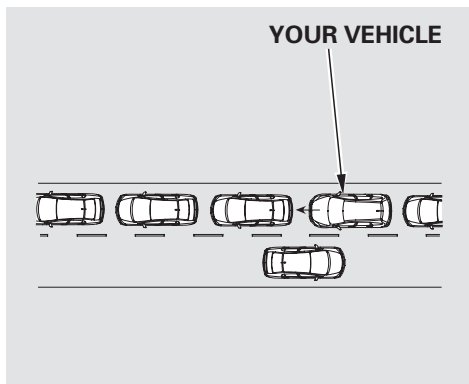


- A vehicle cuts in front of you and brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- Immediately after you begin driving.

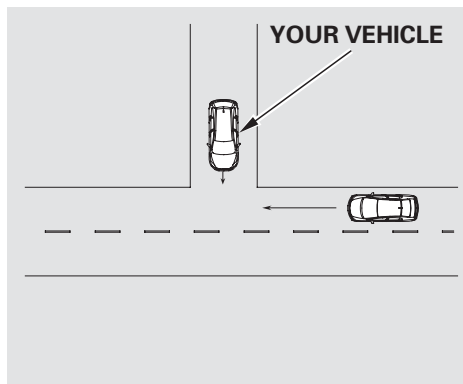




Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)



- Driving in heavy, stop-and-go traffic.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.



- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.

NOTICE

The CMBS is not designed to detect pedestrians.

This system is designed to detect and provide sufficient advanced warning of a collision. As a result, you may experience occasional false activations.

Even with little or no chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under these conditions:

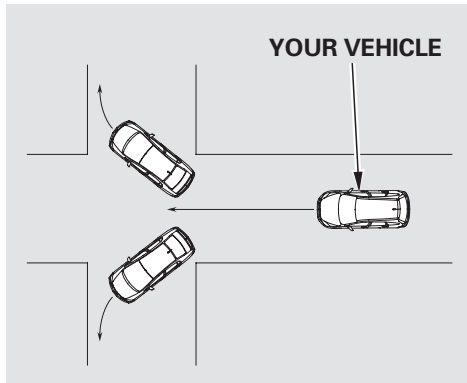
- When you change lanes quickly, and go around the vehicle ahead of you.

CONTINUED

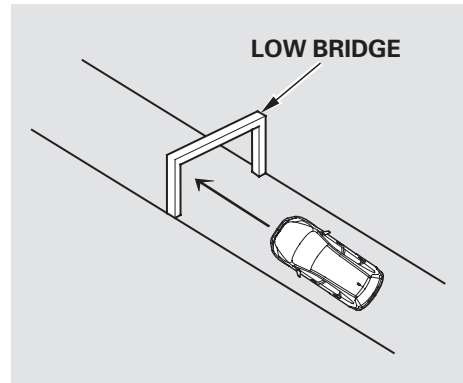




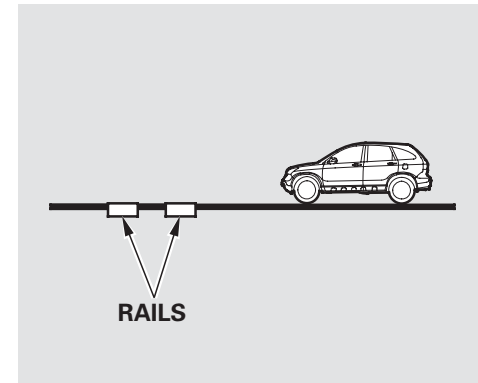
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)



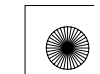
- When you approach or pass a vehicle ahead of you that is turning left or right in an intersection.



- When you pass a low bridge at high speed.
- When you go over a sharp-edged speed bump at high speed.
- When you go over areas of construction on the road surface.

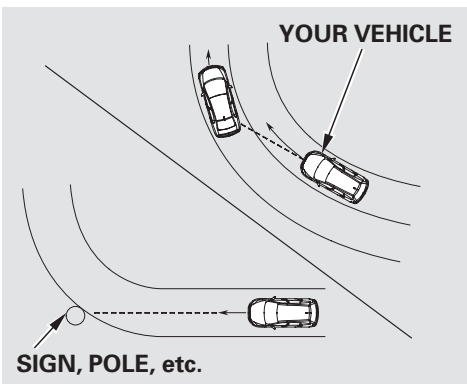


- When you approach train tracks.





Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

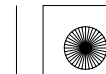


Because of the road condition (curved, winding, etc.) or the state of your vehicle (turning angle, lane position, etc.), CMBS can sometimes mistake a stationary object (light pole, traffic sign, guard rail, etc.) as a vehicle ahead of you and temporarily operate. This is normal.

Important Safety Reminders

The main purpose of the CMBS is to reduce the severity of injuries caused by an unavoidable collision. While the CMBS may help to alert you and minimize the severity of a collision, it may not activate in every dangerous situation.

Even with the CMBS, it is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal, the clutch pedal and steering wheel appropriately, according to the driving conditions.





Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine's output and by selectively applying the brakes.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times. There may also be some noise from the VSA hydraulic system. You will also see the VSA activation indicator blink.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle's entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.



VSA Activation Indicator

When VSA activates, you will see the VSA Activation indicator blink.



VSA System Indicator

The VSA system indicator (see page 92) comes on and stays on when there is a problem with the VSA system. The VSA activation indicator will also come on.

If the VSA system indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. If the VSA system indicator stays on or comes back on while driving, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.

When the VSA system indicator comes on, you will also see the symbol “**VSA**” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

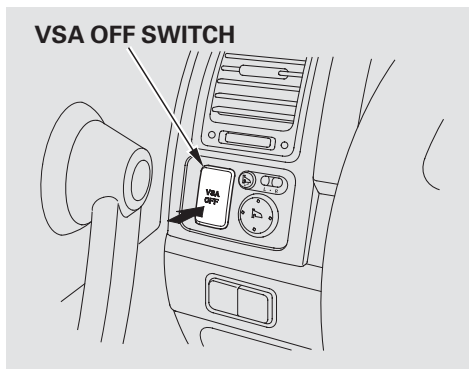
Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.





Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

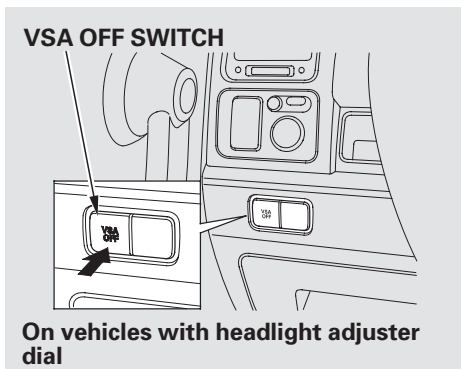
VSA OFF Switch



This switch is under the driver's side vent. To turn the VSA system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

When VSA is off, the VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder. Press and hold the switch again. It turns the system back on.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you



turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the

VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.

VSA and Tyre Sizes

Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are of the same size and type as your original tyres (see page 491).

If you install winter tyres, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.





Deflation Warning System

Your vehicle is equipped with the deflation warning system that turns on every time you start the engine.


The system monitors each wheel's rotation speed while driving over 25 km/h (15 mph). If it detects a difference, the system diagnoses a possibility of a low tyre pressure. This causes the deflation warning system indicator in the instrument panel to come on.

This system cannot measure each tyre pressure directly. You must manually check all tyre pressures (including the spare tyre) monthly when cold. Refer to page 486 for tyre inflation guidelines.



Deflation Warning System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. When this indicator is on, one of your vehicle's tyres may be significantly underinflated. You will also see the symbol “” or this symbol with a “CHECK TYRE PRESSURE” message on the multi-information display.

You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressures as indicated on the vehicle's tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

If you think you can safely drive a short distance to a service station, proceed slowly, and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressures. Then initialise the deflation warning system (see page 407).

If the tyre is flat, or if the tyre pressure is too low to continue driving, replace the tyre with the compact spare tyre (see page 512). On models with a tyre repair kit, see page 519 to use it.

When you restart the vehicle with the compact spare tyre, do not initialise the system. After replacing the compact spare tyre with the specified regular tyre, initialise the deflation warning system. If your vehicle has Honda tyre repair kit, initialise the system after the flat tyre is repaired with it.






Deflation Warning System

If you cannot make the deflation warning system indicator and the symbol/message on the multi-information go out after inflating the tyres to the specified values and initialising the system, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Driving on a significantly under inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Because tyre pressure varies by temperature and other conditions, the deflation warning system indicator may come on unexpectedly, or come on with a delay.

2. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, this indicator begins to flash. It stops flashing after approximately 1 minute, then stays on. You will also see the symbol “” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If this happens, the deflation warning system is off and cannot detect a low tyre pressure. Have the system checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

This indicator may also come on along with the ABS or VSA system indicator as there may be a problem with the ABS or VSA system. If this happens, have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

To activate the deflation warning system properly:

- Your vehicle's tyres must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated. Refer to page 484 for tyre inflation.
- You should initialise the deflation warning system once the deflation warning system indicator comes on, or after adjusting the tyre pressures or rotating tyres (see page 489).

If the deflation warning system is not initialised appropriately, the system may malfunction and the indicator may come on unexpectedly or not come on when needed.

CONTINUED





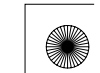
Deflation Warning System

The deflation warning system indicator may also come on unexpectedly when:

- A compact spare tyre is used.
- Snow chains are used.
- A tyre is overinflated.
- A load on each tyre is significantly unbalanced.
- Your tyres are overloaded, under the severe condition such as towing a trailer.
- Your vehicle's loading condition is significantly changed from when it was initialised.

The deflation warning system indicator may not come on at all when:

- Two or more tyres are deflated at the same time.
- A tyre pressure drops down suddenly and significantly.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- The vehicle is parked.
- You drive under 25 km/h (15 mph).
- You drive at extremely high speed.
- You accelerate or decelerate rapidly, or turn the steering wheel rapidly.
- Snow chains are used.
- VSA is activated.
- Brake pedal is depressed.





Deflation Warning System

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

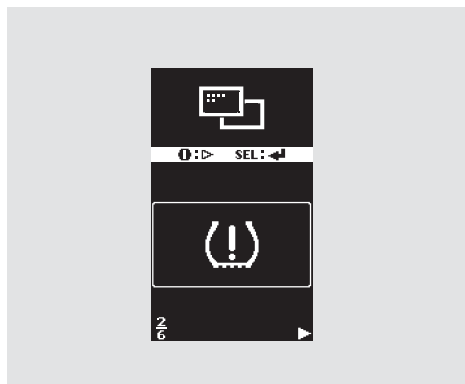
You should initialise the deflation warning system when you use:

- Inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure.
- Change the compact spare tyre or flat tyre with the specified regular tyre.
- Rotate the tyres.

On models with tyre repair kit

- Repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

The deflation warning system indicator and the symbol/message on the multi-information stay on until the deflation warning system is initialised.



To initialise the deflation warning system:

1. Press and hold the INFO button to enter the customizing mode (see page 114).
2. Press and release the INFO button repeatedly until “ (!) ” is displayed, then press the SEL/RESET button.



3. To initialise the deflation warning system, select “OK” by pressing the INFO button, then press the SEL/RESET button to set.

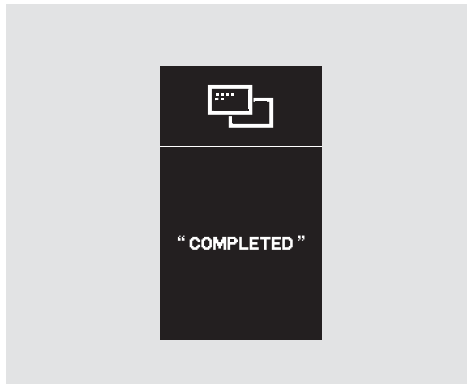
If you want to cancel “INITIALISATION,” select “CANCEL” by pressing the INFO button, then press the SEL/RESET button to set. The display goes back to the “ (!) ” display.

CONTINUED

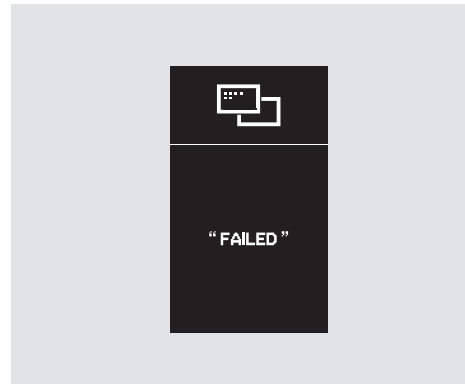




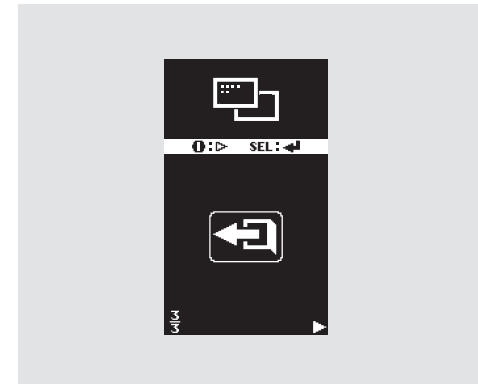
Deflation Warning System



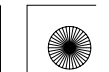
4. After the initialisation is completed, you will see the above display for a few seconds, then the display goes back to the setting display. At the same time, the deflation warning system indicator will go off.



5. If the initialisation is not successful, you will see the above display for a few seconds, then the display goes back to the setting display. Repeat from step 3.



6. To exit the customizing mode, select the exit mode shown above by pressing the INFO button repeatedly, then press the SEL/RESET button. The display goes back to the normal display.
7. After the initialisation, drive over 25 km/h (15 mph) for about 10 minutes.





Driving in Bad Weather



Rain, fog, and snow conditions require a different driving technique because of reduced traction and visibility. Keep your vehicle well-maintained and exercise greater caution when you need to drive in bad weather. The cruise control (on some types) should not be used in these conditions.

Driving Technique — Always drive slower than you would in dry weather. It takes your vehicle longer to react, even in conditions that may seem just barely damp. Apply smooth, even pressure to all the controls. Abrupt steering wheel movements or sudden, hard application of the brakes can cause loss of control in wet weather. Be extra cautious for the first few kilometers (miles) of driving while you adjust to the change in driving conditions. This is especially true in snow. A person can forget some snow-driving techniques during the summer months. Practice is needed to relearn those skills.

Exercise extra caution when driving in rain after a long dry spell. After months of dry weather, the first rains bring oil to the surface of the roadway, making it slippery.

CONTINUED

Driving 409





Driving in Bad Weather

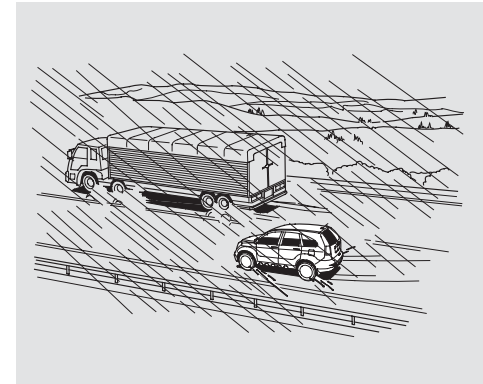
Visibility — Being able to see clearly in all directions and being visible to other drivers are important in all weather conditions. This is more difficult in bad weather. To be seen more clearly during daylight hours, turn on your headlights.

Inspect your windscreen wipers and washers frequently. Keep the windscreen washer reservoir full of the proper fluid. Have the windscreen wiper blades replaced if they start to streak the windscreen or leave parts unwiped. Use the demister and air conditioning to keep the windows from fogging up on the inside (see pages 232 and 239).

Traction — Check your tyres frequently for wear and proper pressure. Both are important in preventing “aquaplaning” (loss of traction on a wet surface). In the winter, mount snow tyres on all four wheels for the best handling.

Watch road conditions carefully, they can change from moment to moment. Wet leaves can be as slippery as ice. “Clear” roads can have patches of ice. Driving conditions can be very hazardous when the outside temperature is near freezing. The road surface can become covered with areas of water puddles mixed with areas of ice, so your traction can change without warning.

Be careful when downshifting. If traction is low, you can lock up the drive wheels for a moment and cause a skid.



Be very cautious when passing, or being passed by other vehicles. The spray from large vehicles reduces your visibility, and the wind buffeting can cause you to lose control.

CAUTION: *Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.*





Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle has been designed primarily to carry passengers and their luggage. You can also use it to tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the guidelines in this section.

Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer stability assist to help stabilize the vehicle/trailer combination by reducing the vehicle speed. For more information, see page 419 .

Break-In Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km (625 miles) (see page 352).

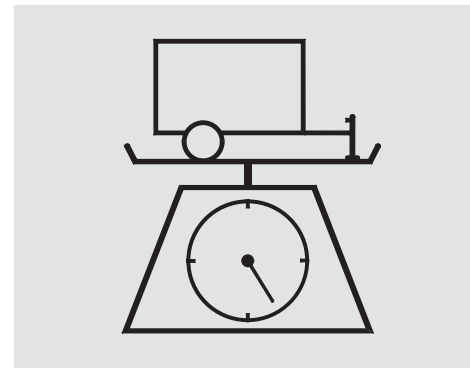
Be sure to read the *Off-Road Guidelines* section on page 421 if you plan to tow off paved surfaces.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Load Limits



- The total weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes) plus its luggage must not exceed the maximum towing weight. See page 571 .

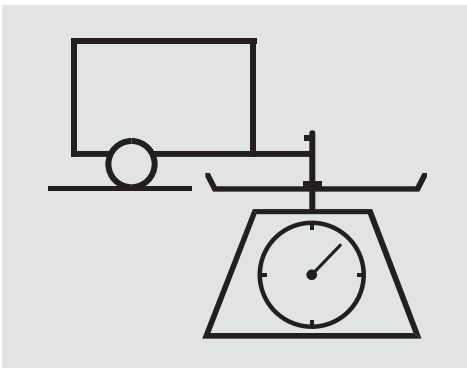
CONTINUED

Driving 411





Towing a Trailer



- The trailer nose load should never exceed 100 kg (220 lbs). This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 1,000 kg (2,200 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

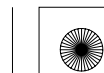
- For example, if the trailer and its load weigh 225 kg (500 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 22.5 kg (50 lbs). Adjust trailer's luggage to change the trailer nose load. Start by putting approximately 60 percent of the luggage toward the front and 40 percent toward the rear. With a trailer package of more than 1,000 kg (2,200 lbs), you may need to adjust the luggage weight toward the rear. Never load the trailer so the back is heavier than the front. This takes weight off your vehicle's rear axle and reduces traction.
- The maximum permissible weight must not exceed the specified limit as shown on page 571 .
- The maximum permissible weight is total weight of the vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage and towbar.

- The maximum towing weight must not exceed the specified limit as shown on page 571 .

This weight will be estimated on normal driving below 1,000 meters elevation.

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 meters of elevation.

The combined vehicle and trailer weights are the maximum permissible weight and trailer weight with everything in and on the trailer.





Towing a Trailer

- Please consider that the installation of optionals (and trailer nose load when towing a trailer) will reduce the loading capacity.

Towing a load that is too heavy can seriously affect your vehicle's handling and performance. It can also damage the engine and drivetrain.

Checking Loads

The best way to confirm that vehicle and trailer weights are within limits is to have them checked at a public scale.

Using a suitable scale or a special trailer nose load gauge, check the total weight, the weight at each axle and the trailer nose load the first time you set up a towing combination (a fully-loaded vehicle and trailer), then recheck the loads whenever the conditions change.

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing can require a variety of equipment, depending on the size of your trailer, how it will be used, how much load you are towing, and where you tow.

Discuss your needs with your trailer sales or rental agency, and follow the guidelines in this section. Also make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the country's regulations where you are driving.

Towbars

Any towbar used on your vehicle must be properly bolted to the underbody.

Refer to page 569 for the towbar mounting points.

Safety Chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Make sure the chains are secured to the trailer and towbar, and that they cross under the trailer nose and can catch the trailer if it becomes unhitched. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not let the chains drag on the ground.

CONTINUED

Driving **413**





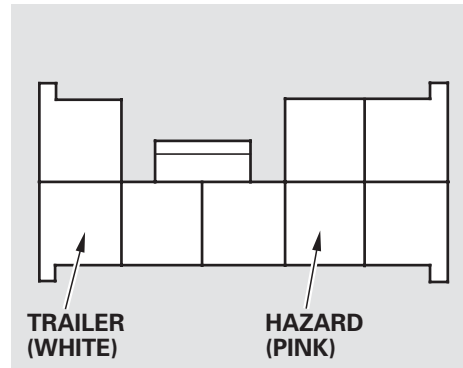
Towing a Trailer

Trailer Brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

Trailer Lights

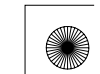
Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the country's regulations where you are driving. Check the requirements for the areas where you plan to tow, and use only equipment designed for your vehicle.



Your vehicle has a trailer lighting connector located behind the left side panel in the luggage area. Refer to the drawing above for the wiring colour code and purpose of each pin.

Since lighting and wiring vary by trailer type and brand, you should have a qualified technician install a suitable connector between the vehicle and the trailer. Improper equipment or installation can cause damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

Always consult your dealer before connecting the trailer lights to your vehicle's lighting system.





Towing a Trailer

Additional Trailer Equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Check the local laws in the country. Even if there are no legal requirements, you should install special mirrors if you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.

Ask your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Pre-Tow Checklist

When preparing to tow, and before driving away, be sure to check the following:

- The vehicle has been properly serviced, and the suspension and the cooling system are in good operating condition.
- The trailer has been properly serviced and is in good condition.
- All weights and loads are within limits.
- The towbar, safety chains, and any other attachments are secure.
- All items in or on the trailer are properly secured and cannot shift while you drive.

- The lights and brakes on your vehicle and the trailer are working properly.
- Your vehicle tyres and spare (if equipped) are properly inflated, and the trailer tyres and spare are inflated as recommended by the trailer maker.
- Be sure to check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

Operating speed when towing a trailer is restricted to 100 km/h (62 mph).





Towing a Trailer

Driving Safely With a Trailer

The added weight, length, and height of a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling and performance, so driving with a trailer requires some special driving skills and techniques.

For your safety and the safety of others, take time to practice driving manoeuvres before heading for the open road, and follow the guidelines in this section.

Towing Speeds and Gears

Drive slower than normal in all driving situations, and obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, use the D position when towing a trailer on level roads. D3 is the proper shift lever position to use when towing a trailer in hilly terrain.

Do not exceed the limited speed when towing a trailer. At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling (see “***Driving on Hills***” in the next page for additional gear information).

On vehicles with manual transmission

Either shift up or shift down indicator will come on at the best time to shift to a higher or lower gear for the better fuel economy.

The shift down indicator will not prompt to downshift to first gear. It is up to you to downshift to first gear to increase engine braking. Avoid sudden engine braking.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.





Towing a Trailer

Making Turns and Braking

Make turns more slowly and wider than normal. The trailer tracks a smaller arc than your vehicle, and it can hit or run over something the vehicle misses. Allow more time and distance for braking. Do not brake or turn suddenly as this could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over.

Driving on Hills

When climbing hills, closely watch your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn the air conditioning off, reduce speed and, if necessary, pull to the side of the road to let the engine cool.

When driving down hills, reduce your speed and always apply engine braking by shifting down. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, when going down a steep hill, use the 3rd gear to provide greater engine braking.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, when driving down hills, reduce your speed and use the D3 position. When going down a steep hill, use the 2nd position to provide greater engine braking.

Do not “ride” the brakes, and remember, it will take longer to slow down and stop when towing a trailer.

Driving on an uphill road of more than 12% slope is not recommended for your vehicle.

We recommend that you tow a trailer on the roads recommended by the trailer association.

If you must stop when facing uphill, use the foot brake or parking brake. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator, as this can cause the automatic transmission to overheat.

Make sure to set the parking brake when starting off on an incline.

CONTINUED

Driving 417





Towing a Trailer

Handling Crosswinds and Buffeting

Crosswinds and air turbulence caused by passing trucks can disrupt your steering and cause the trailer to sway. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed, and steer straight ahead. Do not try to make quick steering or braking corrections.

Backing Up

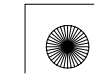
Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when backing up. Grip the *bottom* of the steering wheel, then turn the wheel to the left to get the trailer to move to the left, and turn the wheel right to move the trailer to the right.

Parking

Follow all normal precautions when parking, including firmly setting the parking brake and putting the transmission in Park (automatic) or in first or reverse (manual). Also, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

On Diesel models only

You should keep the engine idling for about 2 minutes before turning off the ignition switch. (Idling the engine is prohibited in some countries. Always follow the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.)





Trailer Stability Assist

Your vehicle is equipped with the trailer stability assist function. This function works on the same sensors as the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system. This function helps to stabilize the vehicle/trailer combination when the trailer severely sways or oscillates. For more information of the VSA system, see page 402 .

If the function detects the vehicle/trailer instability, it checks if the swaying is caused by the trailer, and if the trailer swaying or oscillation is increasing.

The vehicle/trailer combination is more affected by crosswinds, buffeting, and improper trailer nose load. These conditions can make the trailer unstable, and cause it to sway.

Under these conditions, trailer stability assist begins to stabilize the vehicle/trailer combination by reducing the vehicle speed. The control unit sends signals to selectively apply the brakes and regulate the engine output. The brake lights of your vehicle will be turned on automatically by the system even if you do not keep the pressure on the brake pedal.

When the brakes are applied, the trailer's brake lights come on along with the vehicle brake lights.

When the trailer stability assist activates, you will see the VSA activation indicator blink. There may also be some noise from the VSA hydraulic system.

Trailer stability assist cannot prevent a loss of control. Always reduce the vehicle speed and steer firmly. Do not brake suddenly or make quick steering motion. It could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over and the system becomes ineffective.

Trailer stability assist cannot prevent swaying that can occur in crosswinds and in normal and emergency driving manoeuvres. It helps only to stabilize the vehicle/trailer combination in these conditions, after the oscillation becomes severe.

Trailer stability assist will also be ineffective while driving at high speed or towing a trailer with a high centre of gravity.

Always obey the speed limits for towing a trailer, see page 415 .





Trailer Stability Assist

Trailer Stability Assist Failure



The control unit monitors the VSA circuitry and the braking system. If there is a problem with the brake lighting system, the trailer stability assist function shuts down, and the symbol “TSA™” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message appears on the multi-information display.

If you see this message, have your vehicle checked at your dealer as soon as possible.

In this case, your vehicle still has the VSA traction and stability enhancement, but it will not have the trailer stability assist function.

If there is a problem with the VSA system, the VSA system and trailer stability assist function shut off, and a symbol “VSA” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message and then a symbol “TSA™” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message appear on the multi-information display. The VSA system and VSA activation indicators also come on (see page 402).

The ABS indicator and the brake system indicator may also come on along with the VSA system indicator.

If you see these warning indicators, have your vehicle checked at your dealer as soon as possible.

If you turn off the VSA, the trailer stability assist function also shuts off. Press and hold the VSA off switch until you hear a beep (see page 403). The VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder. Press and hold the switch again to turn the system on.

The function turns on every time you start the engine along with the VSA, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.





Off-Road Guidelines

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on paved roads. But its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads, such as campgrounds, picnic sites, and similar locations. It is not designed for trail-blazing, mountain climbing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills. Your vehicle will also handle somewhat differently than it does on paved roads. So be sure to read this owner's manual, pay special attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before you leave the paved roads.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e.g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- **Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.**
- **Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.**





Off-Road Guidelines

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations.

- Be sure to store luggage properly, and do not exceed your vehicle luggage load limits (see pages 366 and 571).
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

Check Out Your Vehicle

Before you leave the paved road, be sure to do all scheduled maintenance and service, and inspect your vehicle for any problems. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.

After you return to the paved road, carefully inspect your vehicle to make sure there is no damage that could make driving it unsafe. Recheck the condition of the tyres and the tyre pressures.

Remember

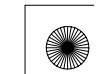
The route presents limits (too steep or bumpy roads). You have limits (driving skill and comfort). And your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power).

Driving off-road can be hazardous if you fail to recognize limits and take the proper precautions.

Accelerating and Braking

For better traction on all surfaces, accelerate slowly and gradually build up speed. If you try to start too fast on wet soil, mud, snow, or ice, you might not have enough traction to get underway, and you may dig yourself a hole. Starting with the shift lever in second (2) gear will help you have a smoother start on snow or ice.

Keep in mind that you will usually need more time and distance to brake to a stop on unpaved surfaces. Avoid hard braking. Do not “pump” the brakes; let the anti-lock braking system pump them for you.





Off-Road Guidelines

Avoiding Obstacles

Debris in the road can damage your suspension or other components. Because your vehicle has a high centre of gravity, driving over a large obstacle, or allowing a wheel to drop into a deep hole can cause your vehicle to tip or roll over.

Driving on Slopes

If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk the slope before you drive on it. If you have any doubt whether or not you can safely drive on the slope, don't do it. Find another route.

If you are driving up a hill and find that you cannot continue, *do not try to turn around*. Your vehicle could roll over. Slowly back down the hill, following the same route you took up the hill.

Crossing a Stream

Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route.

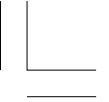
Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.

If You Get Stuck

Avoid driving on soft sand, deep mud, or other surfaces where you could get stuck. If you do happen to get stuck because of inclement weather or other conditions, choose a safe and appropriate course of action.

You should never use a jack to try getting unstuck. A jack only works on firm, level ground. Also, your vehicle could easily slip off the jack and hurt you or someone else.

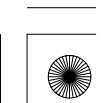
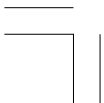




Off-Road Guidelines

If you spin the wheels excessively trying to get unstuck, you may overheat the components of the 4-wheel drive system. If this happens, the 4-wheel drive system shuts off and only the front wheels receive power. If this happens, stop and allow everything to cool down. The 4-wheel drive system will work again after its temperature drops.

If you slip the clutch for a long time while trying to get unstuck, you may overheat and damage it.

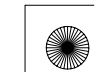




Maintenance

Regularly maintaining your vehicle is the best way to protect your investment. You will be rewarded with safer, more economical, trouble-free driving. This section lists items that need to be checked regularly and explains how to check them. It also details some simple maintenance tasks you can do yourself. The maintenance schedules show you when these things need to be done.

Maintenance Safety.....	426	Dust and Pollen Filter	480
Maintenance Schedule.....	427	Wiper Blades.....	482
Maintenance Record	437	Tyres	486
Fluid Locations.....	439	Checking the Battery	495
Adding Engine Oil		Replacing the Battery.....	497
(Petrol models)	442	Vehicle Storage.....	499
Adding Engine Oil		Priming the Fuel System	
(Diesel models).....	444	(Diesel models)	501
Engine Coolant			
(Petrol models)	446		
Engine Coolant			
(Diesel models).....	448		
Windscreen Washers.....	450		
Automatic Transmission Fluid....	451		
Manual Transmission Fluid	453		
Rear Differential Fluid.....	454		
Transfer Assembly Fluid.....	454		
Brake and Clutch Fluid.....	454		
Power Steering Fluid.....	456		
Air Cleaner Element			
(Petrol models)	457		
Air Cleaner Element			
(Diesel models).....	460		
Fuel Filter	462		
Lights	463		
Air Conditioning System.....	479		





Maintenance Safety

All service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a certified technician or other qualified technician.

Important Safety Precautions

To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not fuel.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

Potential Vehicle Hazards

- **Carbon Monoxide poison from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the engine and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.

- **Injury from moving parts.** Do not run the engine unless instructed to do so.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.





Maintenance Schedule

The required maintenance schedule specifies all maintenance required to keep your vehicle in peak operating condition. Maintenance work should be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of Honda by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorized dealer meets all of these requirements.

There are two types of maintenance schedule in this owner's manual. One is for petrol models (see pages 429 to 433), and the other is for diesel models (see pages 434 – 436).

In EU countries, follow the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

The maintenance schedule in this owner's manual should be applied except for EU and South Africa (see pages 429 to 436).

In South Africa, follow the maintenance schedule in the maintenance booklet that came with your vehicle.

The maintenance schedule assumes you will use your vehicle as normal transportation for passengers and their possessions. You should also follow these recommendations:

- Avoid exceeding your vehicle's load limit. This puts excess stress on the engine, brakes, and many other vehicle parts.
- Operate your vehicle on reasonable roads within the legal speed limit.
- Drive your vehicle regularly over a distance of several kilometers (miles).

On Petrol models

- Always use the recommended petrol only (see page 352).

On Diesel models

- Always use the recommended diesel fuel only (see page 353).

We recommend the use of genuine Honda parts and fluids or their equivalent whenever you have maintenance done. These are the same high-quality items that went into your vehicle when it was new, so you can be sure they fit and perform flawlessly.

NOTICE

On Diesel models

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.





Maintenance Schedule

Owner's Maintenance Checks

You should check the following items at the use or specified intervals.

- Engine oil level – Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 357 .
- Engine coolant level –
On Petrol models
Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 360 .

On Diesel models
Check the expansion tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 360 .
- Windscreen washer fluid – Check the level in the reservoir monthly. If weather conditions cause you to use the washers frequently, check the reservoir each time you stop for fuel. See page 450 .

- Windscreen wipers – Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wipers do not wipe the windscreen securely, check them for wear, cracks, and other damage.
- Automatic transmission – Check the fluid level monthly. See page 451 .
- Brakes and clutch – Check the fluid level monthly. See page 454 .
- Brake pedal – Check the brake pedal for smooth operation.
- Parking brake – Check the parking brake lever for smooth operation.
- Tyres – Check the tyre pressure monthly, then initialise the deflation warning system. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page 486 .

- Battery – Check its condition and the terminals for corrosion monthly. See page 495 .
- Air conditioning system – Check its operation weekly. See page 479 .
- Windscreen demister – Operate the heater and air conditioning and check the demister vents monthly.
- Lights – Check the operation of the headlights, position lights, tail-lights, high-mount brake light, and licence plate lights monthly. See page 463 .
- Doors – Check the tailgate and all doors including the rear doors for smooth opening/closing and secure locking.
- Horn – Check the horn operation.





Maintenance Schedule for Petrol Models (Except EU, Russia, Ukraine, and South Africa models)

Service at the indicated distance or time – whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil* ¹	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe* ²	Every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter* ¹	Normal	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
	Severe* ²	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months									
Clean air cleaner element (Dry type only)	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles)										
Replace air cleaner element	Every 20,000 km (12,500 miles)										
Inspect valve clearance	Every 40,000 km (25,000 miles)										
Replace fuel filter* ³					●				●		
Replace spark plugs Iridium type	Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)										
Inspect drive belt		●			●				●		●
Inspect idle speed							●				●
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years										

*1 : Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet that came with your vehicle.

*2 : Refer to page 431 for replacement information under severe conditions.

*3 : Refer to page 462 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

This maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the trouble-free operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

CONTINUED





Maintenance Schedule for Petrol Models (Except EU, Russia, Ukraine, and South Africa models)

Service at the indicated distance or time – whichever comes first.	km x 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000		12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid*	M/T	Normal						●				
		Severe			●			●			●	
	A/T	Normal						●				●
		Severe			●		●		●			●
Replace rear differential fluid		●				●				●		
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months											
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years (independent of distance)											
Check parking brake adjustment		●	●			●		●		●		●
Replace dust and pollen filter		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check expiry date for TRK bottle (if equipped)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Rotate tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles)											
Visually inspect the following items:												
Tie rod ends, steering gear box and boots Suspension components Driveshaft boots	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) All fluid levels and condition of fluids Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

* : Refer to page 431 for replacement information under severe conditions.





Maintenance Schedule for Petrol Models (Except EU, Russia, Ukraine, and South Africa models)

NOTE:

If you drive your vehicle under one or more of the following severe conditions, the following items must be serviced according to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Severe driving conditions:

A: Driving less than 8 km per trip, or in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.

B: Driving in extremely hot (over 35°C) conditions.

C: Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.

D: Trailer towing, driving with a loaded roof rack, or driving in mountainous conditions.

E: Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D, E
Transmission fluid (M/T, A/T)	B, D,





Maintenance Schedule for Petrol Models (Russia and Ukraine models)

Service at the indicated distance or time – whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195	
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156	
Replace engine oil and oil filter	Normal	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
	Severe* ¹	Every 7,500 km or 6 months													
Clean air cleaner element	Dry type only	Every 15,000 km													
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km													
Inspect valve clearance				●			●			●				●	
Replace fuel filter* ²							●						●		
Replace spark plugs		Every 120,000 km													
Inspect drive belt		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
Inspect idle speed									●						
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years													
Replace transmission fluid	A/T			●			●			●			●		
Replace rear differential fluid		●					●					●			
Inspect front and rear brakes		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years (independent of distance)													
Check parking brake adjustment		●	●		●		●		●		●		●		
Replace dust and pollen filter (if equipped)* ³			●		●		●		●		●		●		
Check lights alignment		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
Test drive (noise, stability, dashboard operation)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
Inspect vehicle corrosion		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
Visually inspect the following items:															
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots															
Suspension components															
Driveshaft boots															
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
All fluid levels and condition of fluids															
Exhaust system															
Fuel lines and connections															
Tyre condition															

* 1 : Refer to page 433 for replacement information under severe conditions.

* 2 : Refer to page 462 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

* 3 : When you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air, under dusty conditions or the airflow from the climate control system becomes less than usual. Replace the filter every 15,000 km or 1 year.

432 Maintenance

This maintenance schedule outlines the minimum maintenance that you should perform to ensure the trouble-free operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.





Maintenance Schedule for Petrol Models (Russia and Ukraine models)

NOTE:

If you drive your vehicle under one or more of the following severe conditions, the following items must be serviced according to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Severe driving conditions:

- A: Driving less than 8 km per trip, or in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- B: Driving in extremely hot (over 35°C) conditions.
- C: Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- D: Trailer towing, driving with a loaded roof rack, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- E: Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D, E





Maintenance Schedule for Diesel Models (Except EU and South Africa)

Service at the indicated distance or time – whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years (independent of distance)										
Check parking brake adjustment	•	•		•		•		•		•	
Replace dust and pollen filter (if equipped)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for TRK bottle (if equipped)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Rotate tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles)										
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gear box and boots Suspension components Driveshaft boots	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months										
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) All fluid levels and condition of fluids Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

CONTINUED





Maintenance Schedule for Diesel Models (Except EU and South Africa)

NOTE:

If you drive your vehicle under one or more of the following severe conditions, the following items must be serviced according to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Severe driving conditions:

- A: Driving less than 8 km per trip, or in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- B: Driving in extremely hot (over 35°C) conditions.
- C: Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- D: Trailer towing, driving with a loaded roof rack, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- E: Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D, E
Air cleaner element	D, E
Transmission fluid (M/T, A/T)	B, D
Transfer fluid	B, D





Maintenance Record (Except EU, Russia, Ukraine and South Africa models)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

20,000 km 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date
40,000 km 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date
60,000 km 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date
80,000 km 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date
100,000 km 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date

120,000 km 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date
140,000 km 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date
160,000 km 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date
180,000 km 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date
200,000 km 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month
		Date





Maintenance Record (Russia and Ukraine models)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

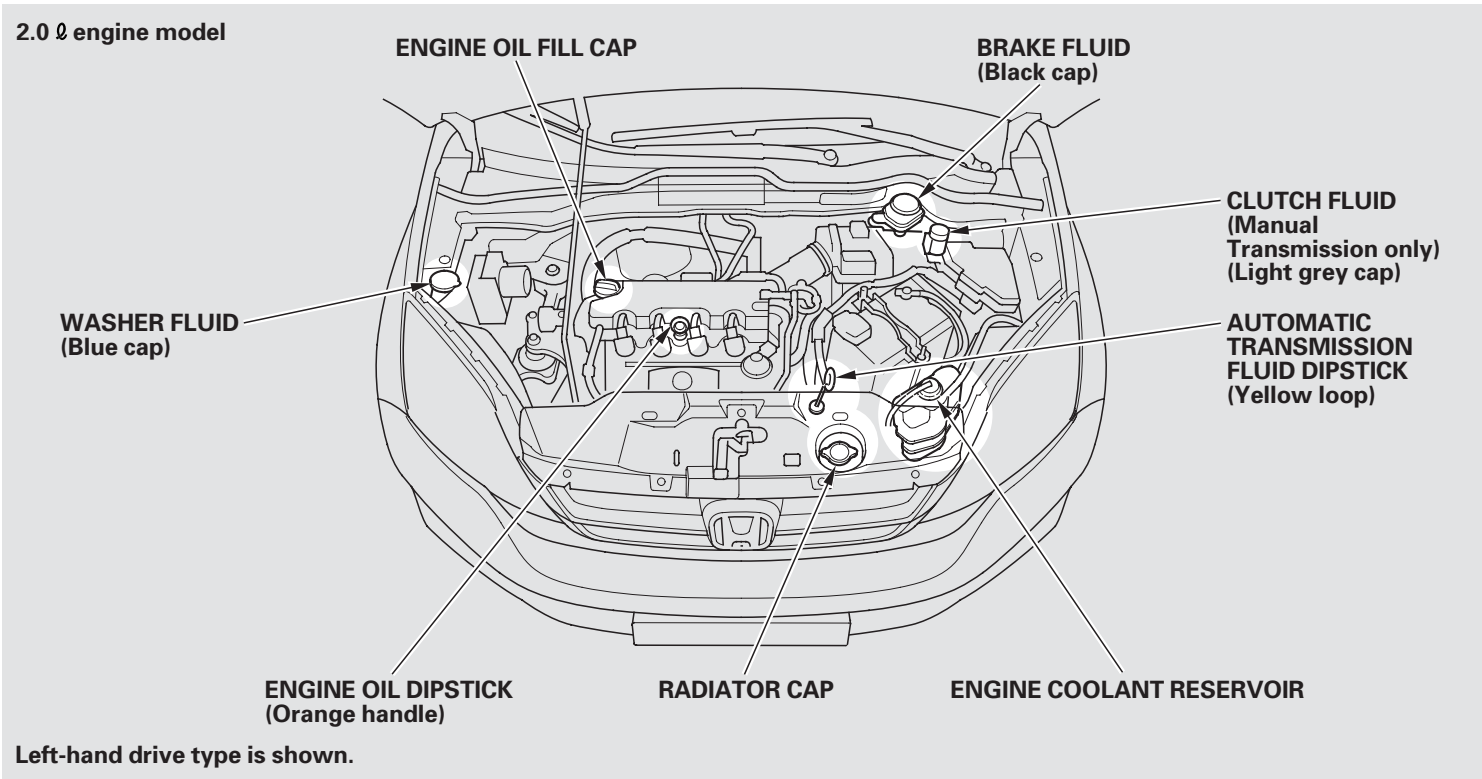
15,000 km (or 12 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
30,000 km (or 24 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
45,000 km (or 36 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
60,000 km (or 48 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
75,000 km (or 60 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
90,000 km (or 72 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
105,000 km (or 84 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date

120,000 km (or 96 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
135,000 km (or 108 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
150,000 km (or 120 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
165,000 km (or 132 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
180,000 km (or 144 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date
195,000 km (or 156 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km or Month ----- Date

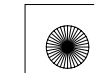




Fluid Locations (Petrol models)

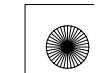
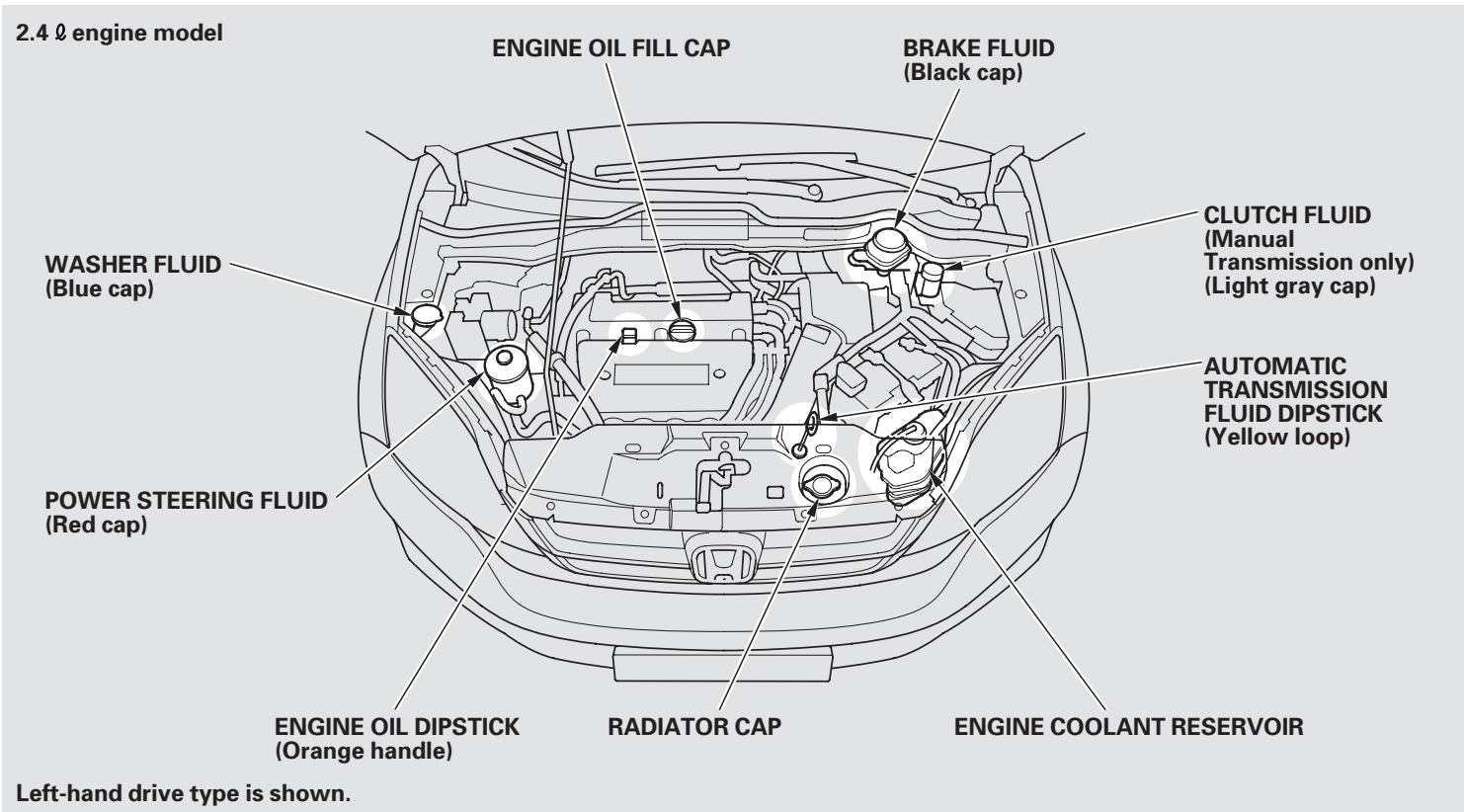


CONTINUED



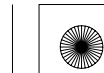
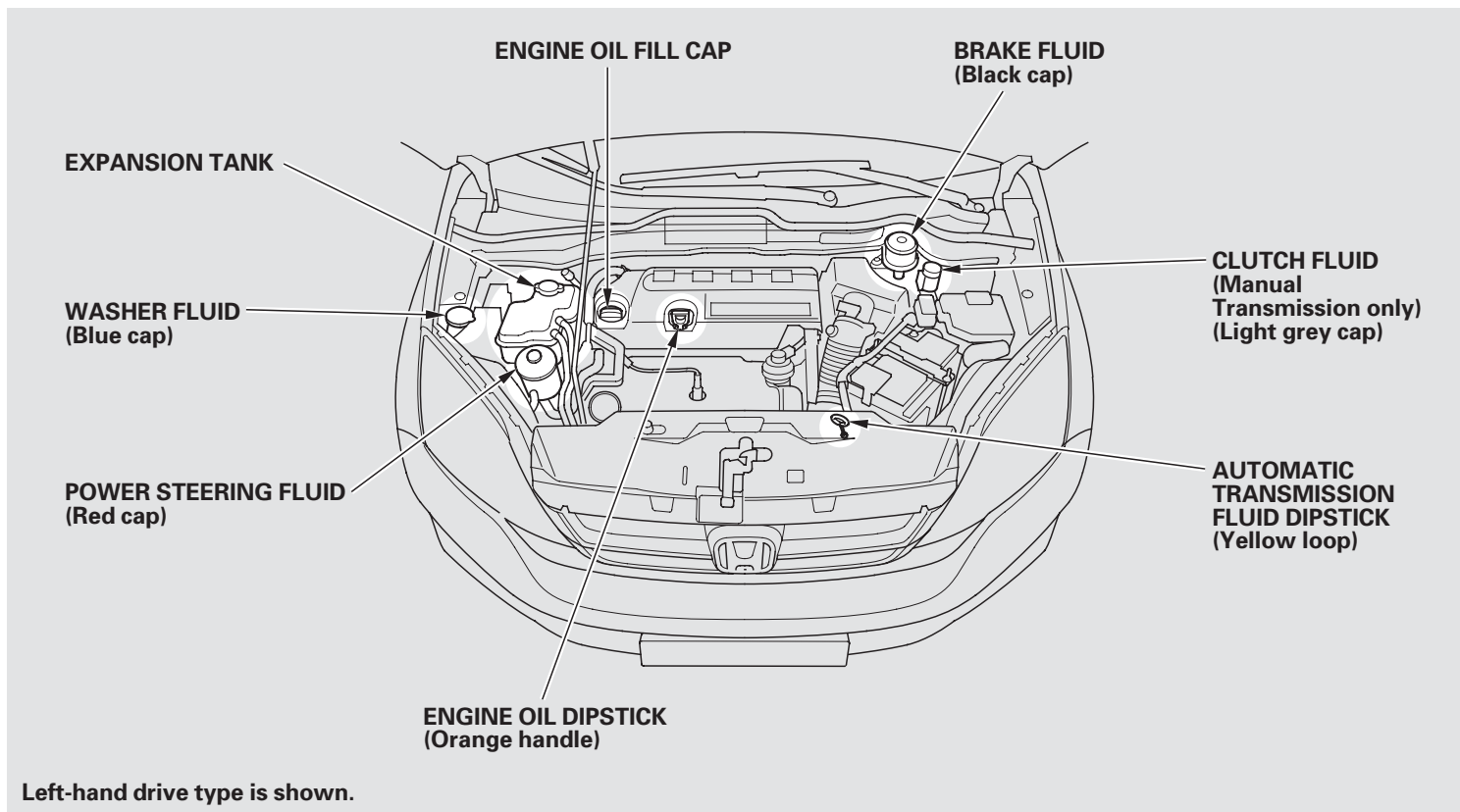


Fluid Locations (Petrol models)





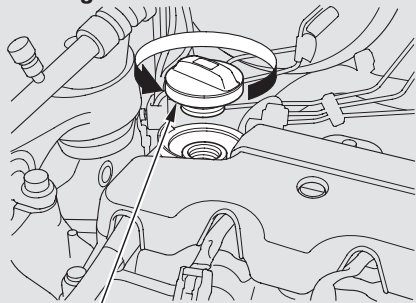
Fluid Locations (Diesel models)





Adding Engine Oil (Petrol models)

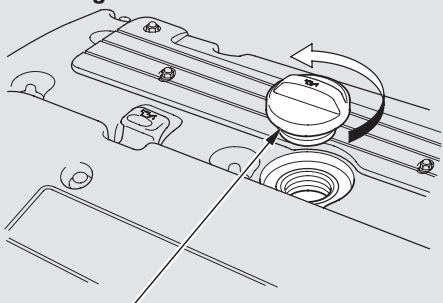
2.0 l engine model



ENGINE OIL FILL CAP

Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on the valve cover. Pour the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment.

2.4 l engine model



ENGINE OIL FILL CAP

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Let the engine warm up and turn off the engine, let it sit for approximately 3 minutes, then check the oil level on the engine oil dipstick. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

Recommended Engine Oil

European models

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade detergent oil. It is highly recommended that you use genuine Honda Motor Oil, "ACEA A1/B1," "ACEA A3/B3," or "ACEA A5/B5" in your vehicle for as long as you own it.

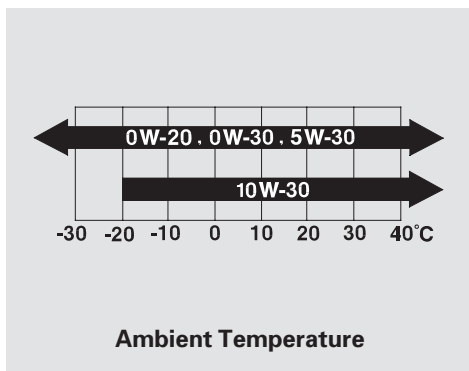
This oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.





Adding Engine Oil (Petrol models)

You can select the proper SAE/ACEA viscosity oil for your vehicle according to this chart:

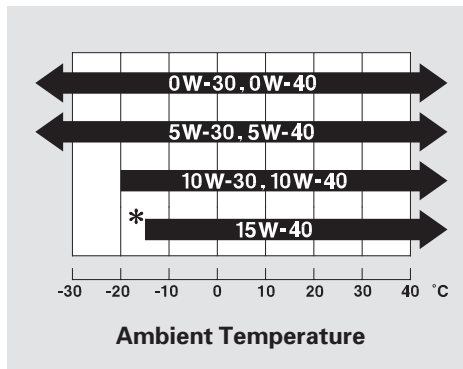


0W-20 oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.

Except for European models

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade detergent oil. It is highly recommended that you use genuine Honda Motor Oil in your vehicle for as long as you own it.

You can select the proper SAE viscosity oil for your vehicle according to this chart:



*: Except for vehicles with oil level sensor

0W-30 oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.

Always use an API service SL or higher grade fuel-efficient oil. This oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.

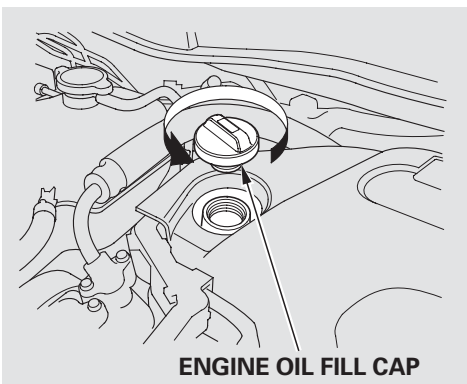
Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect your engine's or transmission's performance and durability.





Adding Engine Oil (Diesel models)



Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on the valve cover. Pour the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Let the engine warm up and turn off the engine, let it sit for approximately 3 minutes, then check the oil level on the engine oil dipstick. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

Recommended Engine Oil

Always use a synthetic motor oil that meets the ACEA specifications, and is the proper viscosity as shown in the following chart. When using synthetic oil, you must follow the oil and filter change intervals shown by the maintenance schedule.

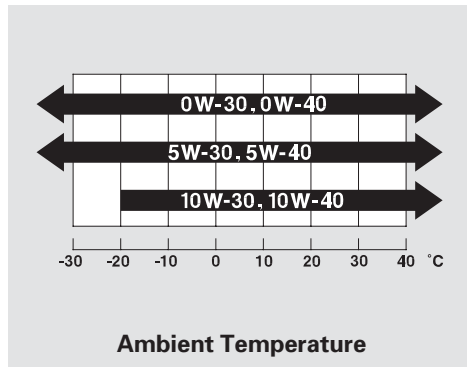




Adding Engine Oil (Diesel models)

It is highly recommended that you use genuine Honda Motor Oil or 0W-30 synthetic motor oil meeting the specification: “ACEA C2” or “ACEA C3.”

You can select the proper SAE/ACEA viscosity oil for your vehicle according to this chart:



NOTE: 0W-30 is formulated to improve fuel economy.

Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect the engine or transmission performance and durability.

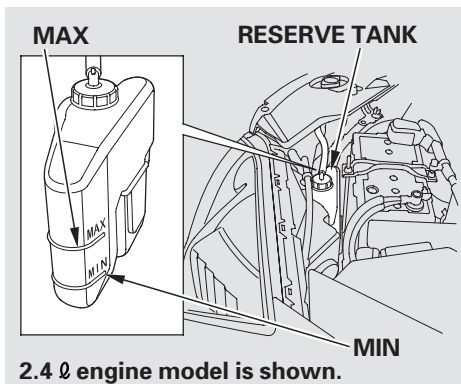




Engine Coolant (Petrol models)

Adding Engine Coolant

If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.



Always use genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 percent antifreeze and 50 percent distilled water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

The cooling system contains many aluminium components that can corrode if an improper antifreeze is used. Some antifreeze, even though labelled as safe for aluminium parts, may not provide adequate protection.

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

⚠ WARNING

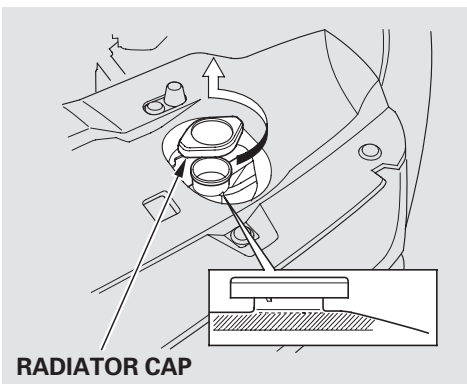
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.





Engine Coolant (Petrol models)

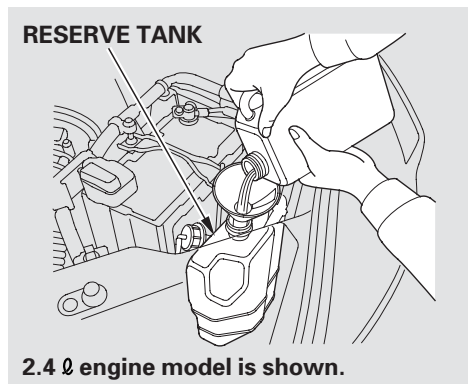


1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Relieve any pressure in the cooling system by turning the radiator cap anticlockwise, without pressing down.
3. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning anticlockwise.

4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.

Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.



6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

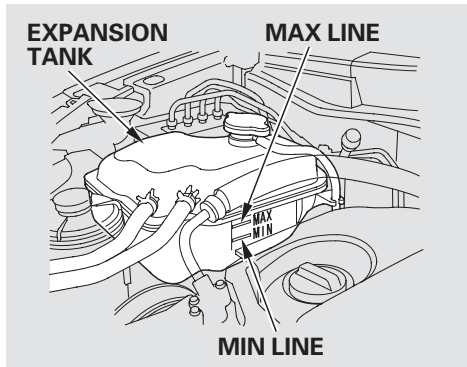
Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.





Engine Coolant (Diesel models)

Adding Engine Coolant



If the coolant level in the expansion tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Always use genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 percent antifreeze and 50 percent distilled water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

The cooling system contains many aluminium components that can corrode if an improper antifreeze is used. Some antifreeze, even though labelled as safe for aluminium parts, may not provide adequate protection.

⚠ WARNING

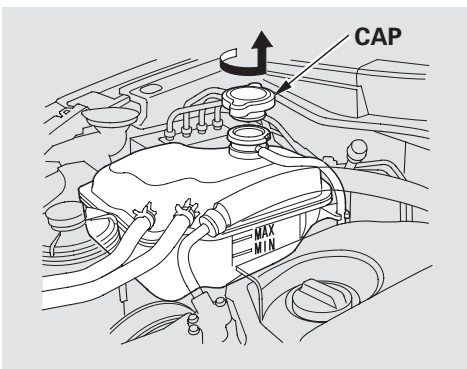
Removing the expansion tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the expansion tank cap.

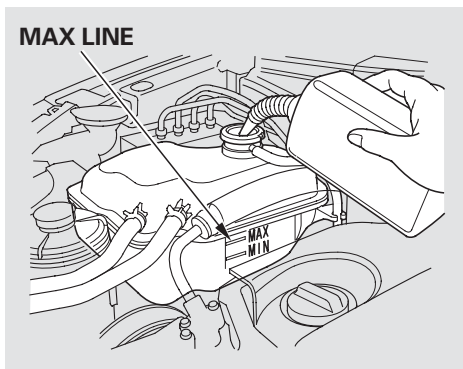




Engine Coolant (Diesel models)



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Loosen the expansion tank cap by turning it 1/8 turn anticlockwise. This will relieve any remaining pressure in the cooling system.
3. Remove the expansion tank cap by pushing down and turning anticlockwise.



4. The coolant level should be up to the MAX line. Add coolant if it is low.

Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

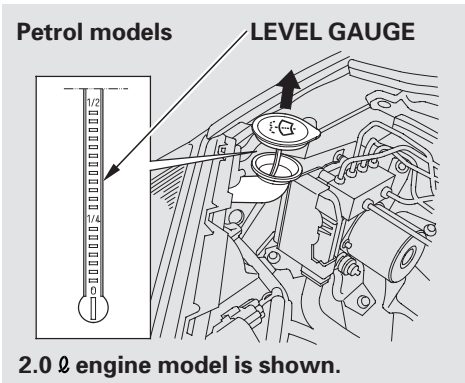
5. Put the expansion tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.



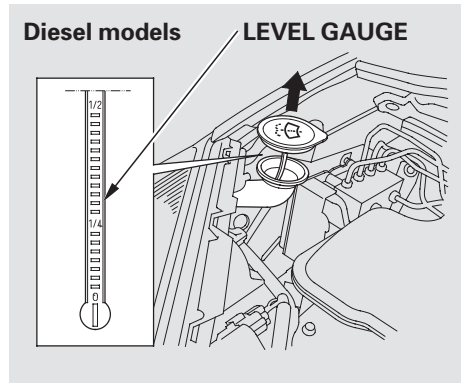


Windscreen Washers



Check the fluid level in the windscreen washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use.

Check the fluid level by removing the cap and looking at the level gauge.



Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windscreen washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.

When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windscreen wiper blades with windscreen washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition them.

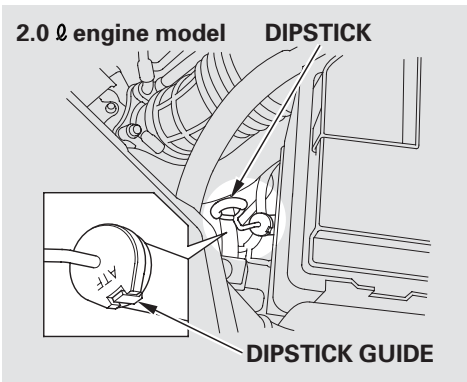
NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump. Use only commercially-available windscreen washer fluid.



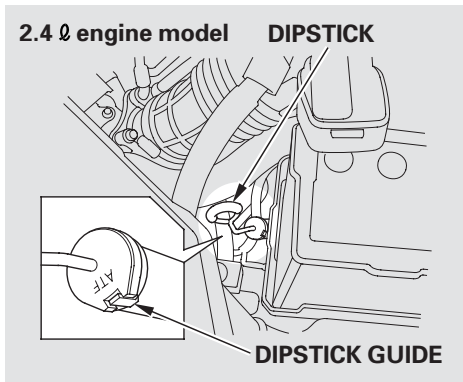


Automatic Transmission Fluid

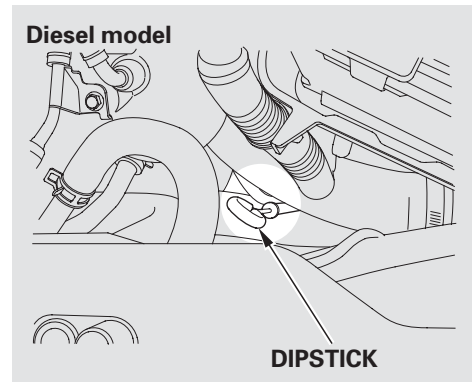


Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the vehicle on level ground. Start the engine, let it run until the radiator fan comes on, then shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait about 60 seconds (but no longer than 90 seconds) before doing step 2.



2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.

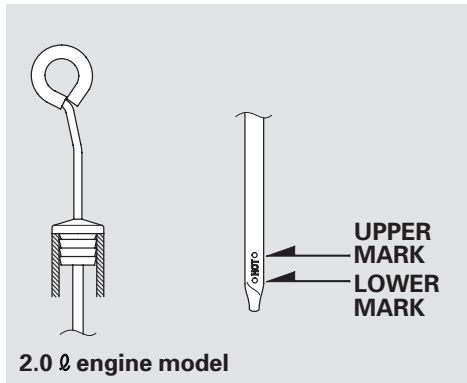


CONTINUED

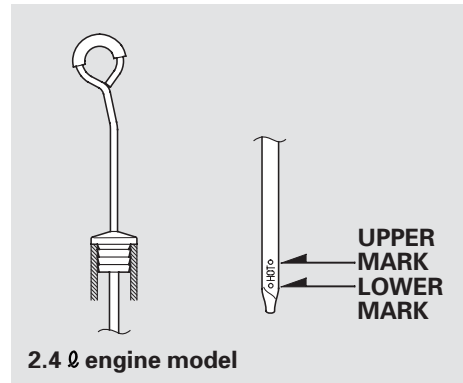




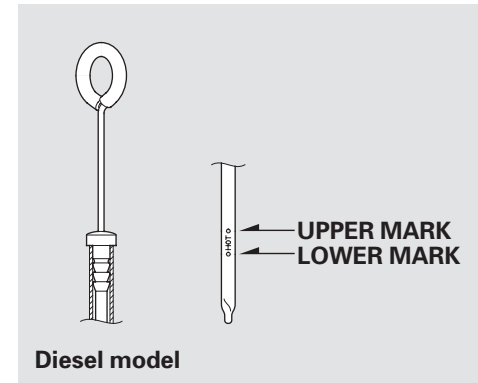
Automatic Transmission Fluid



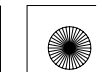
3. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.
4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.



5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the dipstick hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks.



Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.





Automatic Transmission Fluid, Manual Transmission Fluid

Always use Honda Genuine ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid).

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

2.0 l and 2.4 l engine models

Make sure the rubber cap on the dipstick fits in the dipstick guide and that you push the dipstick in all the way.

If you are not sure how to add fluid, contact your dealer.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

NOTICE

Use only Honda Genuine ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid). Do not mix with other transmission fluids.

Using transmission fluid other than Honda Genuine ATF-Z1 may cause deterioration in transmission operation and durability, and could result in damage to the transmission. Damage resulting from the use of transmission fluid other than Honda Genuine ATF-Z1 is not covered by the Honda new vehicle warranty.

Manual Transmission Fluid

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Always use genuine Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF). If it is not available, you may use an API service SJ or higher grade motor oil with a viscosity of SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 as a temporary replacement. However, motor oil does not contain the proper additives, and continued use can cause stiffer shifting. Replace as soon as it is convenient.





Rear Differential Fluid, Transfer Assembly Fluid, Brake and Clutch Fluid

Rear Differential Fluid

The rear differential should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the recommendation of the maintenance schedule. Have your dealer replace the rear differential fluid.

Use genuine Honda DPSF-II only. Do not use automatic transmission fluid (ATF).

Transfer Assembly Fluid

On diesel model with automatic transmission

The transfer assembly fluid should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule*. Have your dealer replace the transfer assembly fluid.

* : For EU countries and South Africa, see the separate service information booklet.


Use a SAE 90 viscosity hypoid gear oil, API service classified GL4 or GL5 only, in the transfer assembly.

Viscosity
SAE 90: above -18°C

Brake and Clutch Fluid

Check the fluid level in the reservoirs monthly.

- Brake fluid reservoir (all models)
- Clutch fluid reservoir (manual transmission only)

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “BRAKE FLUID LOW” message on the multi-information display when the brake fluid level is low.

Replace the brake fluid according to the recommendation in the maintenance schedule.

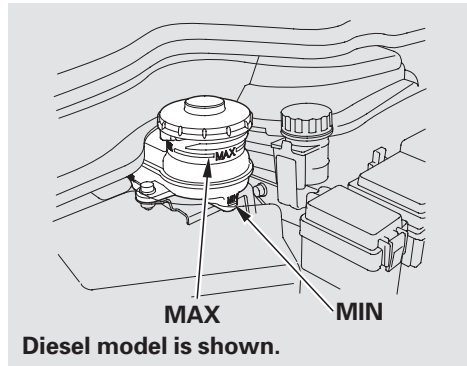
Always use genuine Honda Brake Fluid or an equivalent from a sealed container that is marked DOT3 or DOT4 only. Brake fluid marked DOT5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system.





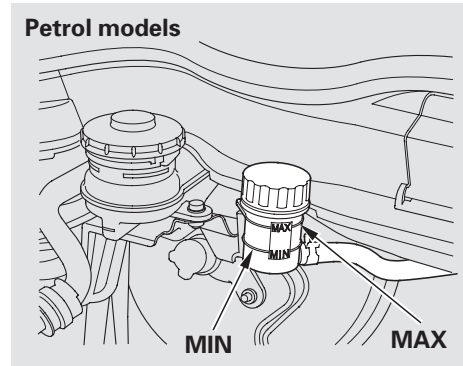
Brake and Clutch Fluid

Brake System

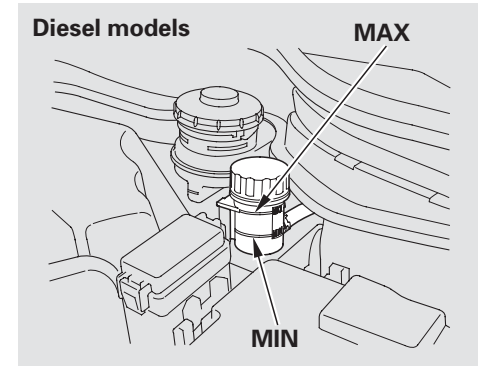


The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

Clutch System



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If it is not, add brake fluid to bring it up to that level. Use the same fluid specified for the brake system.



A low fluid level can indicate a leak in the clutch system. Have this system inspected as soon as possible.





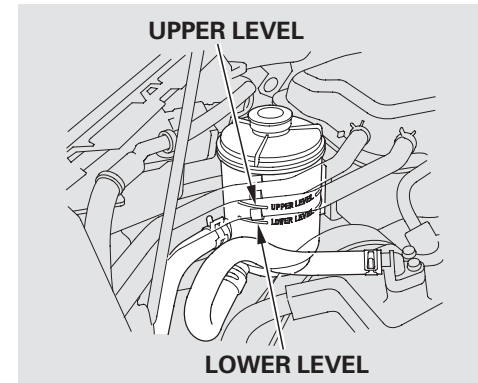
Power Steering Fluid (For some types)

You should check the fluid level in the power steering reservoir at least once a year. Check the level on the side of the reservoir when the engine is cold. The fluid should be between the UPPER LEVEL and LOWER LEVEL. If not, add power steering fluid to the UPPER LEVEL mark.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

Using automatic transmission fluid or another brand of power steering fluid will damage the system. Use only genuine Honda Power Steering Fluid (V, II or S).



A low power steering fluid level can indicate a leak in the system. Check the fluid level frequently, and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.





Air Cleaner Element (Petrol models)

The air cleaner element should be replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Cleaning

On vehicles with dry type air cleaner element

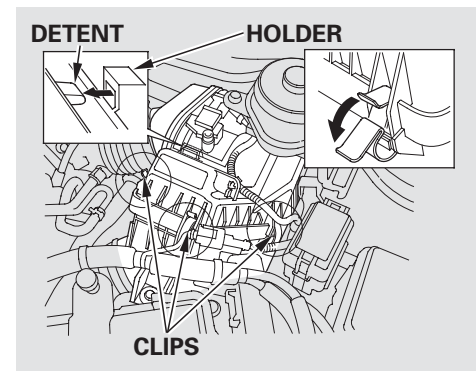
The air cleaner element should also be cleaned according to the maintenance schedule.

Clean the air cleaner element by blowing compressed air through it in the opposite direction to normal air flow. If you do not have access to compressed air (such as a service station), ask your dealer to do this service.

Follow the replacement procedure for removal and reinstallation.

Replacement

2.0 l engine model



The air cleaner element is inside the air cleaner housing in the engine compartment.

To replace it:

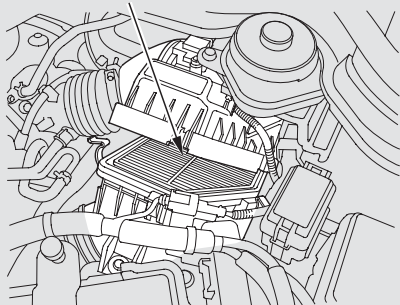
1. Unsnap the three hold-down clips and remove the air cleaner housing cover. Make sure to free the two detents of the air cleaner housing cover from their holders. *CONTINUED*





Air Cleaner Element (Petrol models)

AIR CLEANER ELEMENT

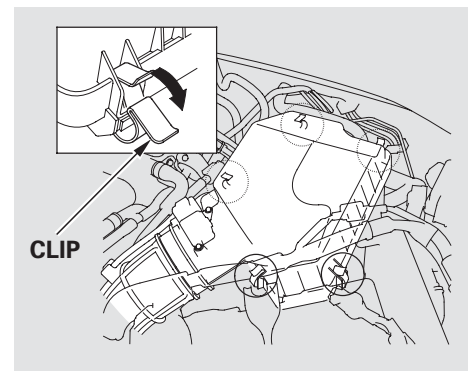


2. Remove the old air cleaner element.
3. Carefully clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp rag.
4. Place the new air cleaner element in the air cleaner housing.

Make sure all detents are secured in their holders.

5. Reinstall the air cleaner housing cover, and snap the three hold-down clips back into place. Make sure they are securely latched.

2.4 l engine model



The air cleaner element is inside the air cleaner housing in the engine compartment.

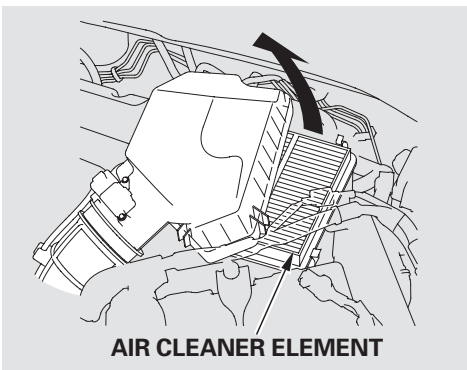
To replace it:

1. Unsnap the five hold-down clips and remove the air cleaner housing cover.





Air Cleaner Element (Petrol models)



2. Remove the old air cleaner element.
 3. Carefully clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp rag.
 4. Place the new air cleaner element in the air cleaner housing.
 5. Reinstall the air cleaner housing cover, and snap the five hold-down clips back into place.
- Make sure they are securely latched.



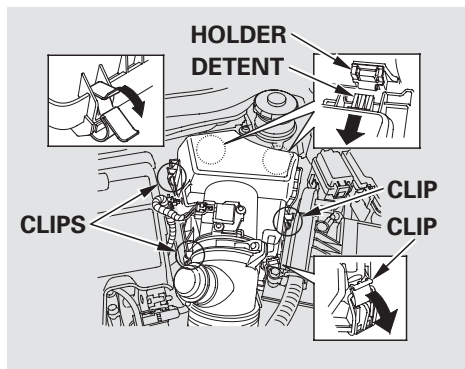


Air Cleaner Element (Diesel models)

The air cleaner element should be replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Follow the replacement procedure for removal and reinstallation.

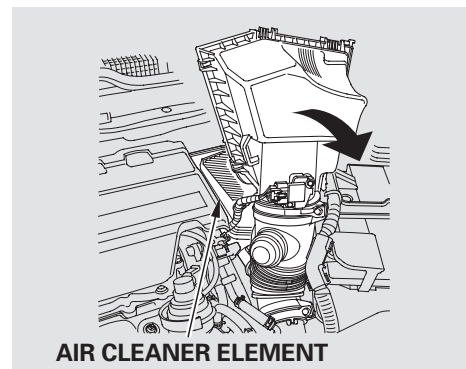
Replacement



The air cleaner element is inside the air cleaner housing in the engine compartment.

To replace it:

1. Unsnap the holding-clips and pull up the front of the air cleaner housing cover.
Make sure to free the two detents of the air cleaner housing cover from their holders.



2. Remove the old air cleaner element.
3. Carefully clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp rag.

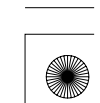
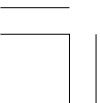




Air Cleaner Element (Diesel models)

4. Place the new air cleaner element in the air cleaner housing.
5. Reinstall the air cleaner housing cover, align the detents in their holders, and snap the holding-clips back into place.

Make sure they are securely latched.





Fuel Filter

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

On petrol models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km (25,000 miles), or 2 years (except EU, South Africa and Russia)/every 45,000 km, or 3 years (Russia, Ukraine), if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated. In a high dust environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

On all models

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Since the fuel system is under pressure, fuel can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Draining Water (Diesel models only)



If this symbol or this symbol with a “WATER IN FUEL FILTER” message shows on the multi-information display, water has accumulated in the fuel system, which may cause damage to the fuel injection system. Contact your dealer as soon as possible to have the water drained off.

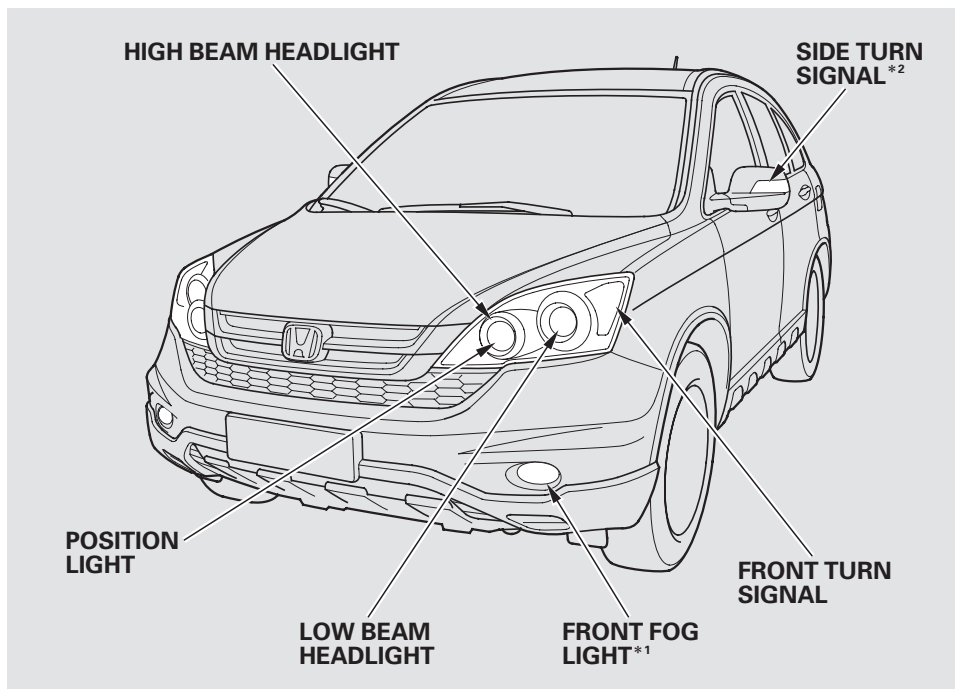
After the vehicle has been stored for an extended period, the engine may not start. If water has accumulated in the fuel system, you will see the symbol on the multi-information display when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. This may also be caused by air in the fuel system. In this case, follow the procedure for **Priming the Fuel System** (see page 501).





Lights

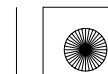
Check the operation of your vehicle's exterior lights at least once a month. A burned out bulb can make the condition of your vehicle unsafe reducing your vehicle's visibility and the ability to signal your intentions to other drivers.



* 1 : If equipped

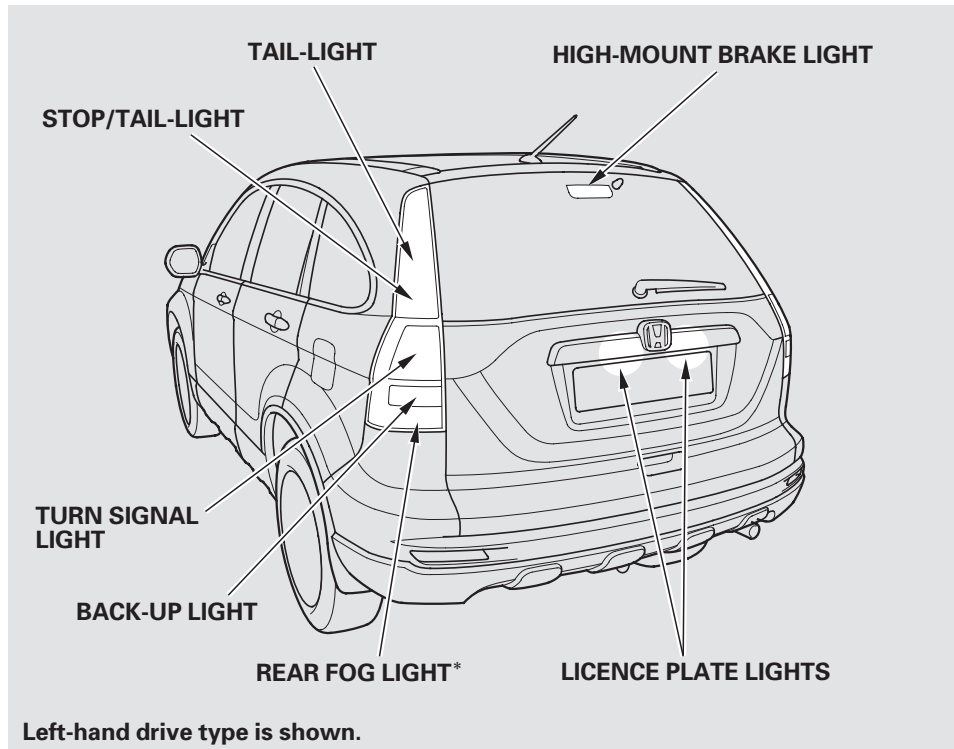
* 2 : Bulb replacement should be done by your dealer.

CONTINUED





Lights



* : Rear fog light is installed on the driver's side only.

Check the following:

- Headlights (low and high beam)
- Position lights
- Tail-lights
- Brake lights
- Turn signals
- Side turn signals
- Back-up lights
- Hazard light function
- Licence plate lights
- High-mount brake light
- Front fog lights (for some models)
- Rear fog light

If you find any bulbs are burned out, replace them as soon as possible. Refer to the chart on page 575 to determine what type of replacement bulb is needed.





Lights

Headlight Aiming

The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or pull a trailer, readjustment may be required. Adjustments should be done by your dealer or another qualified technician.

The vertical angle of the headlights can be adjusted. For more information, see page 158 .

On vehicles with high voltage discharge type low beam headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic headlight adjusting system that adjusts the vertical angle of the headlights (low beam) automatically. Refer to page 158 for more information.

High Voltage Discharge Tube Headlights (For some types)

The low beam headlight bulbs are high voltage discharge tube bulbs. High voltage can remain in the circuit even with the light switch off and the key removed. Because of this, you should not attempt to examine or change a low beam headlight bulb yourself. If a low beam headlight bulb fails, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it replaced.

Replacing a Headlight Bulb

On vehicles with halogen headlight bulbs

Your vehicle has halogen headlight bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

NOTICE

Halogen headlight bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

CONTINUED

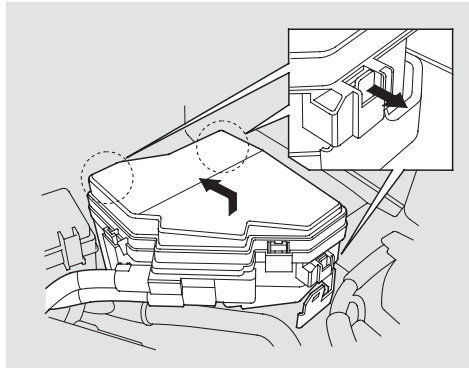




Lights

Low Beam Headlights

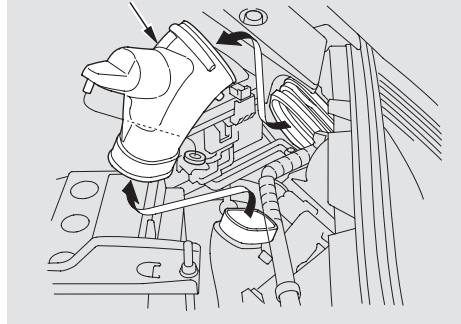
1. Open the bonnet.



On petrol models

To change a bulb on the left side, remove the fuse box from its stay by pulling it out.

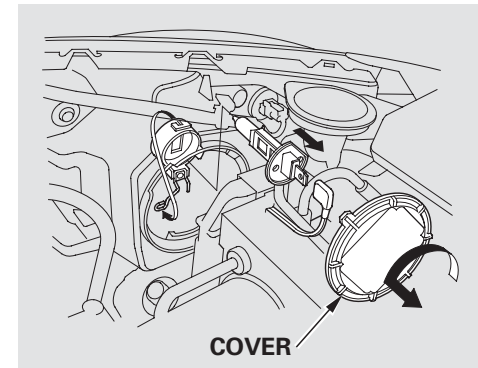
AIR INTAKE DUCT



On diesel models

To change a bulb on the left side, remove the upper part of the air intake duct.

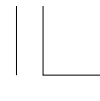
2. Remove the cover on the back of the headlight assembly by turning it anticlockwise.



3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pulling the connector straight back.

4. Unclip the end of the hold-down wire from its slot. Pivot it out of the way, and remove the bulb.





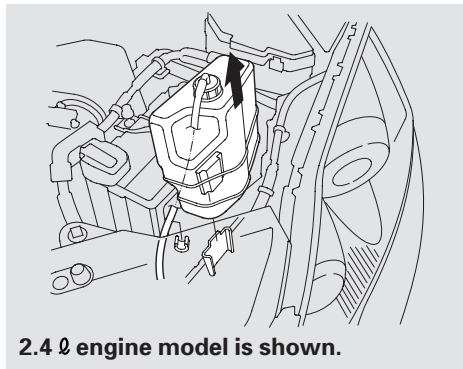
Lights

5. Insert the new bulb into the hole, making sure the tabs are in their slots. Pivot the hold-down wire back in place, and clip the end into the slot.
6. Push the electrical connector onto the new bulb. Make sure it is connected securely.
7. Reinstall the cover over the back of the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
8. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.
9. *On the left side of diesel models*
Reinstall the air intake duct securely.

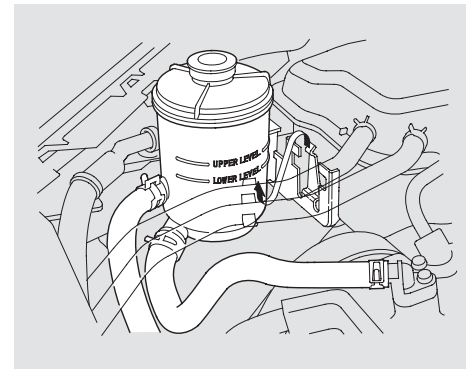
On the left side of petrol models
Reinstall the fuse box in place securely.

High Beam Headlights

1. Open the bonnet.



On petrol models
To change a bulb on the left side, remove the engine coolant reserve tank by pulling it out of its holder.



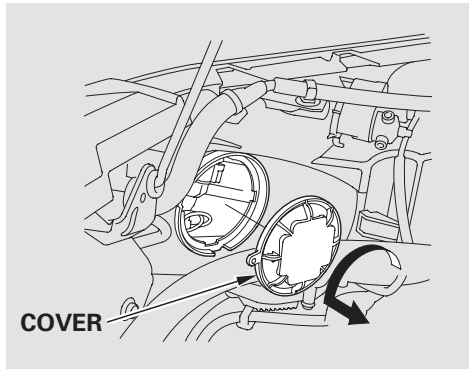
On diesel models
To change a bulb on the right side, remove the power steering fluid tank from the stay.

CONTINUED

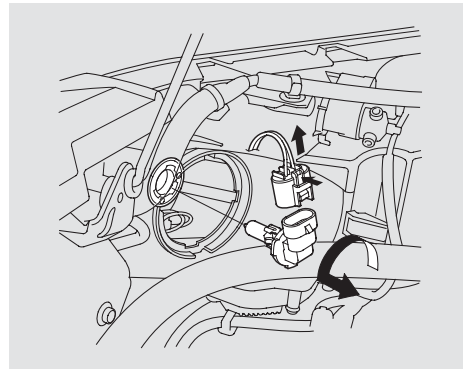




Lights



2. Remove the cover on the back of the headlight assembly by turning it anticlockwise.



3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab to unlock it, then slide the connector off the bulb.

4. Remove the bulb by turning it approximately one-quarter turn anticlockwise.

5. Install the new bulb, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.

6. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.

7. Reinstall the cover over the back of the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise to lock in place.

8. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.

9. *On the left side of petrol models*
Reinstall the coolant reserve tank.

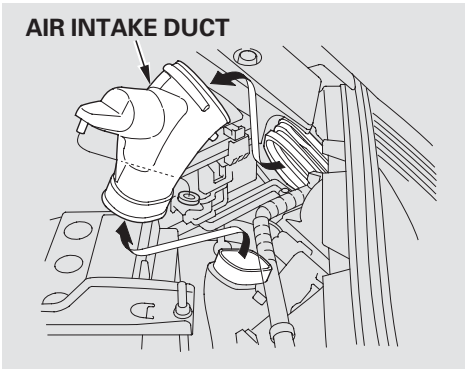
On the right side of diesel models
Reinstall the power steering reservoir tank.





Lights

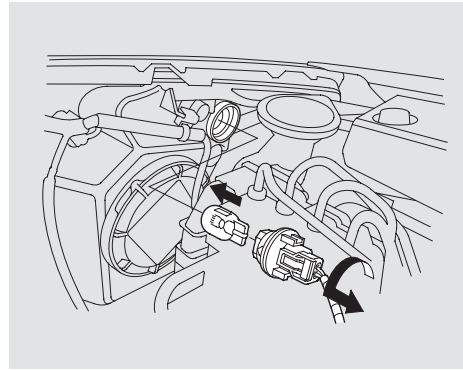
Replacing a Front Turn Signal Light Bulb



1. Open the bonnet.

On diesel models

To change a bulb on the left side, remove the upper part of the air intake duct.



2. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
4. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
6. *On the left side of diesel models*
Reinstall the air intake duct securely.





Lights

Replacing a Front Position Light Bulb

A front position light bulb is located underneath the high beam headlight bulb under the cover.

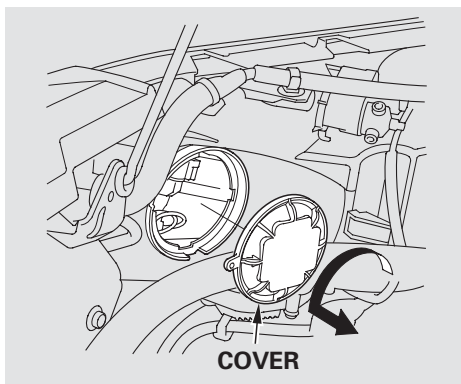
1. Open the bonnet.

On petrol models

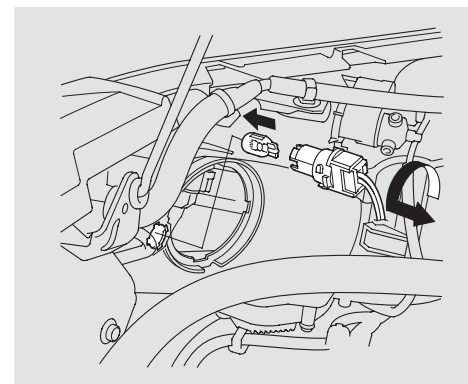
To remove a bulb on the left side, remove the engine coolant reserve tank (see page 467).

On diesel models

To change a bulb on the right side, remove the power steering reservoir tank (see page 467).



2. Remove the cover on the back of the headlight assembly by turning it anticlockwise.



3. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.



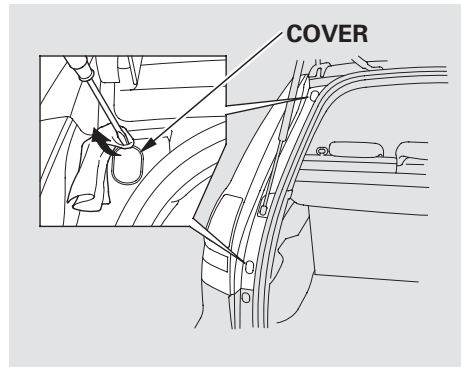


Lights

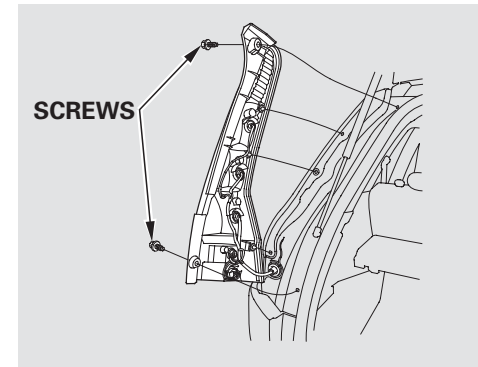
5. Insert the new bulb into the headlight assembly. Make sure it is on all the way.
6. Reinstall the cover over the back of the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise to lock in place.
7. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
8. *On the left side of petrol models*
Reinstall the coolant reserve tank.

On the right side of diesel models
Reinstall the power steering reservoir tank.

Replacing Rear Bulbs



1. Open the tailgate. Place a cloth on the edge of the cover to prevent scratches. Remove the covers by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver.



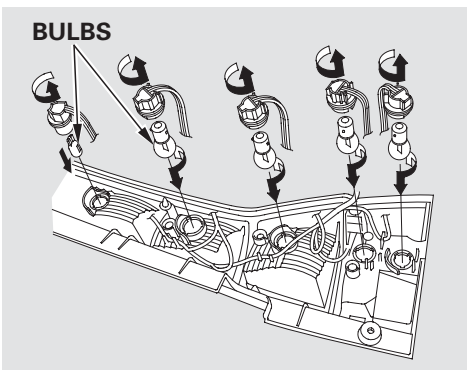
2. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the tail-light assembly mounting screw under each cover.
3. Pull the tail-light assembly out of the rear pillar.

CONTINUED





Lights



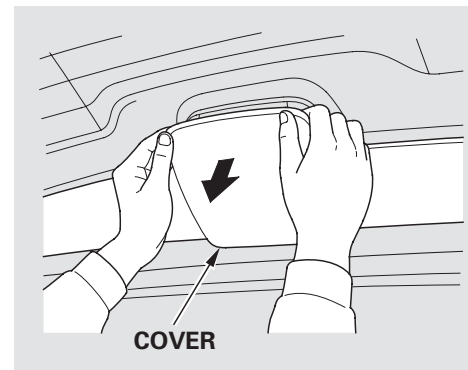
4. Determine which bulb is burned out: stop/tail-light, back-up light, turn signal, tail-light, or rear fog light on the driver's side only.
5. Remove the socket for that bulb by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.

6. *Except for tail-light bulb*
Remove the bulb from the socket by pushing it in and turning the bulb anticlockwise until it unlocks.

Tail-light bulb
Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

7. Reinstall the socket into the light assembly by turning it clockwise until it locks.
8. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
9. Align the clips on the tail-light assembly with the holes in the body, then push the tail-light assembly into place. Tighten the two mounting screws securely and reinstall the covers.

Replacing a High-mount Brake Light Bulb

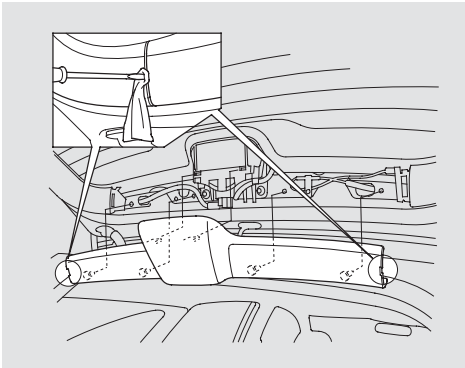


1. Open the tailgate.
Unlatch the top of the cover by pulling back on it with your hands.

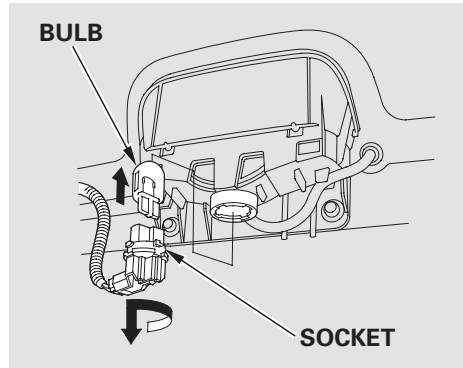




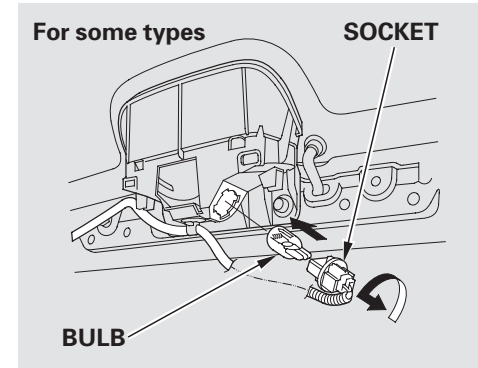
Lights



2. Place a cloth on the side edge of the cover to prevent scratches. Remove the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver and pulling the cover off.



3. Remove the socket from the light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.



CONTINUED

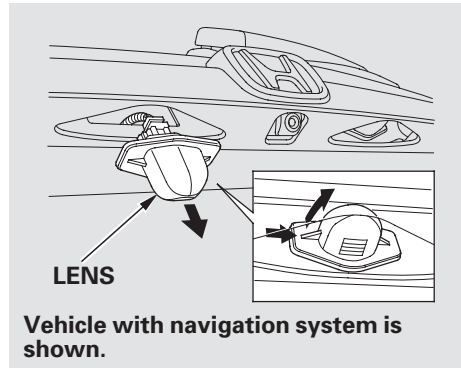




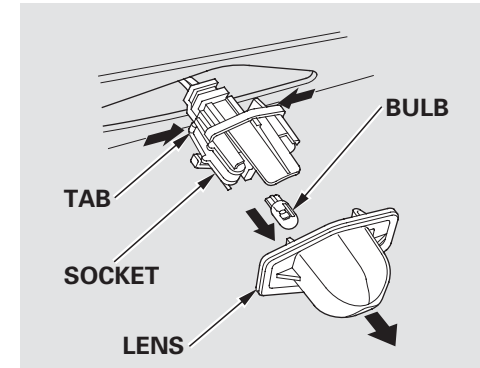
Lights

5. Press the brake pedal to make sure the new bulb is working.
6. Put the socket back into the light assembly, and turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
7. Put the cover back on the light assembly. Push it in until it locks in place.

Replacing a Rear Licence Plate Light Bulb



1. Open the tailgate. Remove the licence light assembly by pushing the left edge of the lens toward the right and pulling the assembly out.



2. Remove the lens by pushing the tabs.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb in until it bottoms in the socket.





Lights

4. Turn on the position lights and check that the new bulb is working.
5. Put the lens back on the socket until it locks.
6. Slide the right side of the light assembly into the hole. Push on the left side to latch the assembly into place.

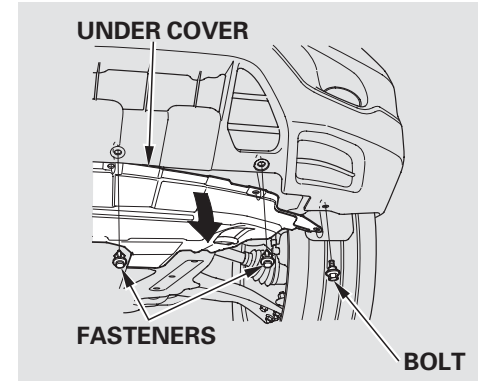
Replacing a Front Fog Light Bulb (For some types)

Your vehicle uses halogen light bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

NOTICE

Halogen light bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The front fog lights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or pull a trailer, readjustment may be required. Adjustment should be done by your dealer or other qualified technician.



On petrol models

On diesel models (Right Side)

1. Remove the mounting bolt with a wrench and remove the two fasteners with a flat-tip screwdriver.

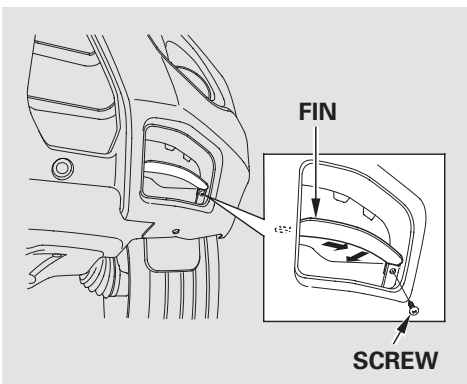
Pull down the under cover from the bumper carefully.

CONTINUED

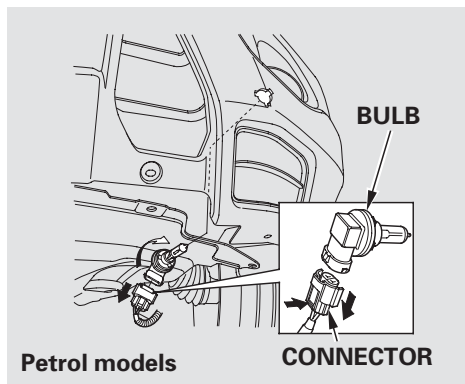




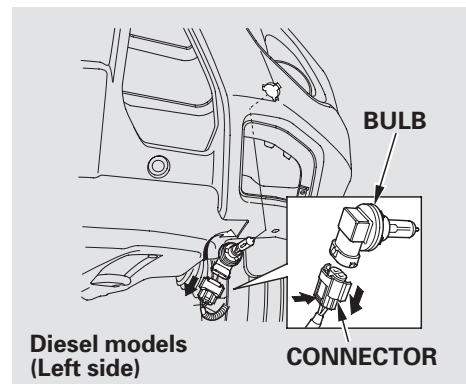
Lights



On diesel models (Left side)
Remove the screw with a Phillips-head screwdriver, then remove the lower fin carefully from the air duct cover by pushing the fin outward.



2. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by squeezing the connector to unlock the tab, then slide the connector off the bulb.



Remove the bulb by turning it approximately one-quarter turn anticlockwise.





Lights

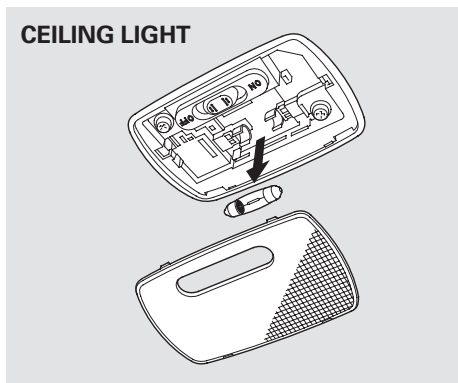
3. Insert the new bulb into the hole and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
4. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.
5. Turn on the front fog lights to test the new bulb.
6. *On petrol models*
On diesel models (Right Side)
Reinstall the under cover and put the two fasteners back in place, then tighten the mounting bolt securely.

On diesel models (Left side)
Reinstall the fin and tighten the screw securely.

Replacing Bulbs in the Interior Lights

The ceiling light, spotlights, luggage area light, and vanity mirror lights come apart the same way, but they do not use the same type of bulbs.

1. When removing a lens, put a cloth on the edge of the lens to prevent scratches. Pry carefully on the edge of it with a fingernail file, or small flat-tip screwdriver. Do not pry on the edge of the housing around the lens.



Ceiling light:
Pry on the front edge of the lens near both sides.

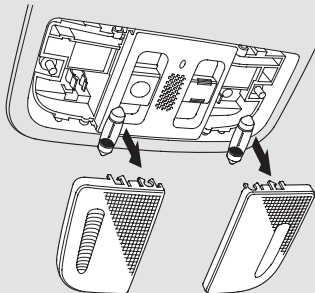
CONTINUED





Lights

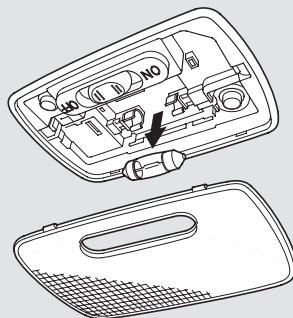
SPOTLIGHTS



Vehicle with sunroof is shown.

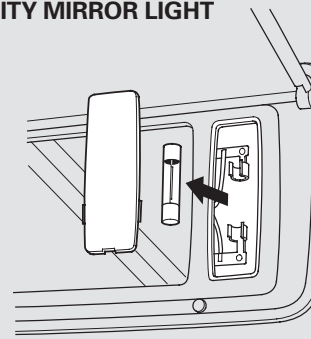
Spotlights:
Pry on the inner edge of both spotlights.

LUGGAGE AREA LIGHT



Luggage area light:
Pry on the side edge of the lens in the middle.

VANITY MIRROR LIGHT



Vanity mirror light:
Pry on the bottom edge of the lens.

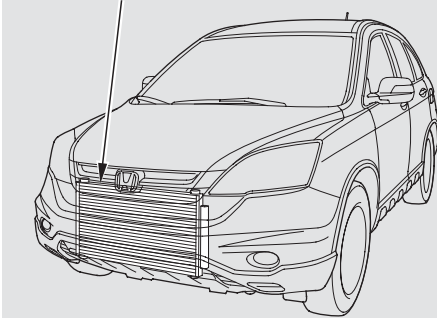
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of its holder.
3. Push the new bulb into the holder. Snap the lens back in place.





Air Conditioning System

AIR CONDITIONING CONDENSER



Your vehicle's air conditioning is a sealed system. Any major maintenance, such as recharging, should be done by a qualified technician. You can do a couple of things to make sure the air conditioning works efficiently.

Periodically check the engine's radiator and air conditioning condenser for leaves, insects, and dirt stuck to the front surface. These block the air flow and reduce cooling efficiency. Use a light spray from a hose or a soft brush to remove them.

NOTICE

The condenser and radiator fins bend easily. Only use a low-pressure spray or soft-bristle brush to clean them.

Run the air conditioning at least once a week during the cold weather months. Run it for at least 10 minutes while you are driving at a steady speed with the engine at normal operating temperature. This circulates the lubricating oil contained in the refrigerant.

If the air conditioning does not get as cold as before, have your dealer check the system. Recharge the system with Refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a).

NOTICE

Whenever you have the air conditioning system serviced, make sure the service facility uses a refrigerant recycling system. This system captures the refrigerant for reuse. Releasing refrigerant into the atmosphere can damage the environment.





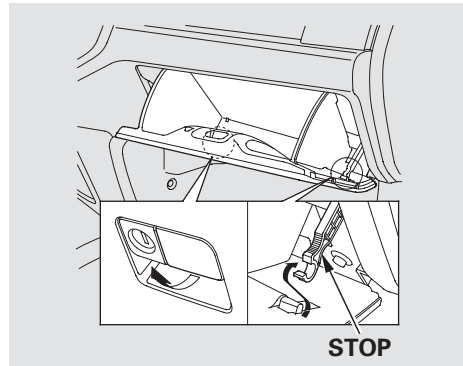
Dust and Pollen Filter

This filter removes the dust and pollen that is brought in from the outside through the heating and cooling system/climate control system.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance. On EU and South Africa models, refer to the maintenance schedule in the separate service information booklet that came with your vehicle. On other models, see the maintenance schedules in this owner's manual.

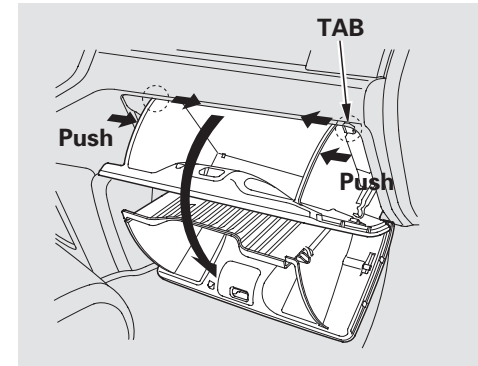
The dust and pollen filter should be replaced at short intervals if you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and diesel-powered vehicles. Replace it more often if airflow from the heating and cooling system/climate control system becomes less than usual.

Replacement



The dust and pollen filter is located behind the glove box.
To replace it:

1. To access the filter, open the front passenger's door.
2. Open the glove box.
3. Push the stop on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.

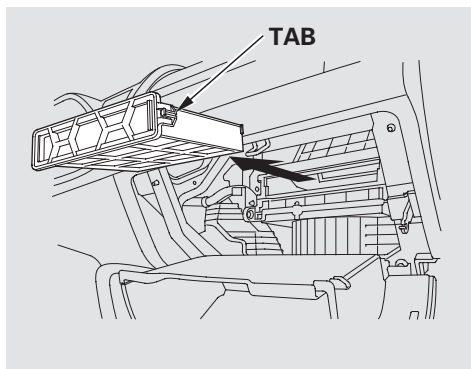


4. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
5. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

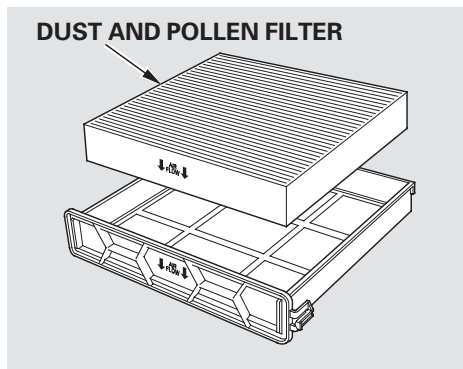




Dust and Pollen Filter



6. Remove the dust and pollen filter case by pushing in on the lock tabs, then pulling the case toward you.



7. Remove the filter from the case.
8. Install the new filter in the case. Make sure the arrows of the “AIR FLOW” marks on the filter point to the airflow direction (downward).

9. Install the case. Make sure both tabs “click” into place.
10. Pivot the glove box up into position. Install the tabs back in place.
- Install the glove box stop.
11. Close the glove box.

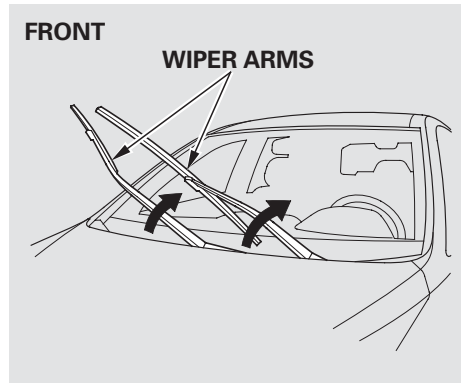
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by your dealer.





Wiper Blades

Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months. Replace them if you find signs of cracking in the rubber, areas that are getting hard, or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.

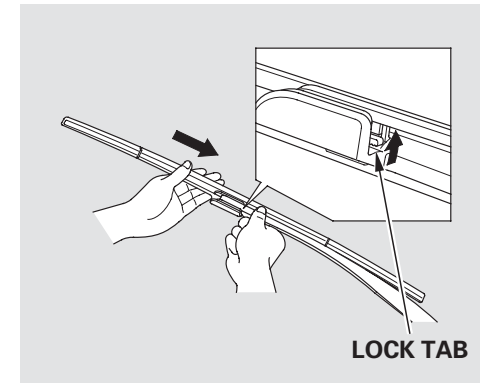


To replace a front wiper blade:

1. Raise each wiper arm off the windscreen, lifting the driver's side first, then the passenger's side.

NOTICE

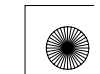
Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the bonnet and the wiper arms.



2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm:

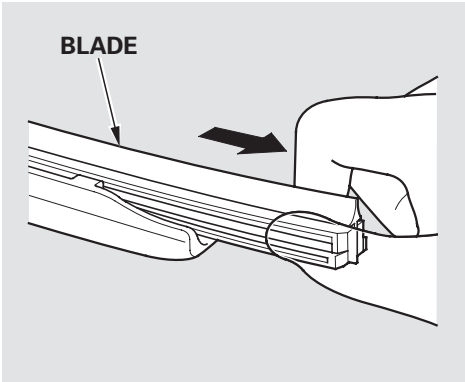
- Press and hold the lock tab.
- Slide the blade assembly toward the lock tab until it releases from the wiper arm.

When replacing a wiper blade, make sure not to drop the wiper blade or wiper arm down on the windscreen.



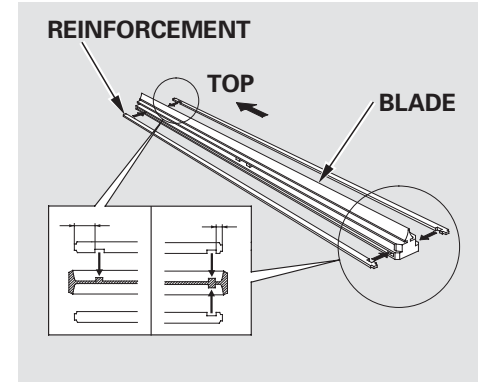


Wiper Blades



3. Remove the blade from its holder by grasping the tabbed end of the blade. Pull firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.

4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.



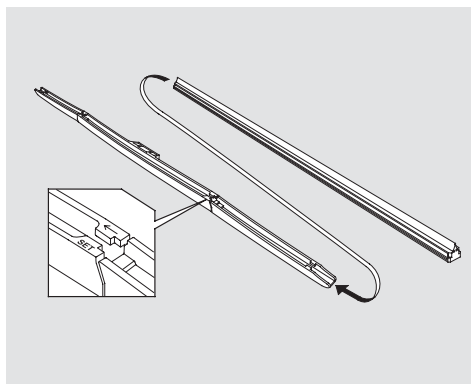
Make sure the three rubber tabs inside the blade fit to each notch of the reinforcement, as shown.

CONTINUED



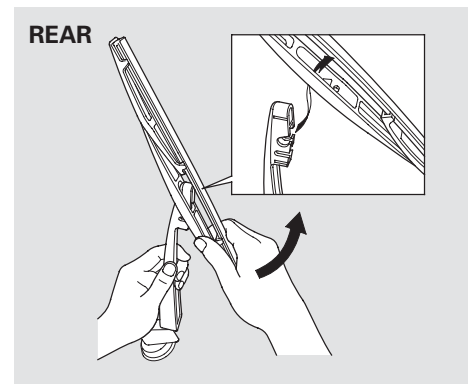


Wiper Blades



5. Place the top of the wiper blade on the end of the blade assembly, and slide the blade onto the assembly in the direction pointed to by the arrow. Make sure the blade is completely installed.

6. Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.
7. Lower the wiper arm down against the windscreen. Lower the passenger's side first, then the driver's side.



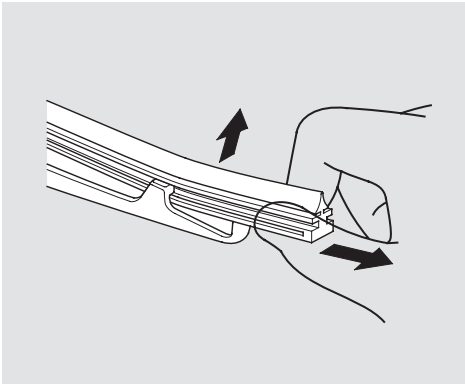
To replace a rear wiper blade:

1. Raise the wiper arm off the rear window.
2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by pivoting the blade assembly upward.



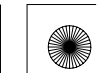


Wiper Blades



3. Pull one end of the blade out from the holder.
Slide the blade out of the holder.
4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.

5. Slide the new blade into the holder. Make sure it is engaged in the slot along its full length. Insert both ends of the blade into the holder. Make sure they are secure.
6. Install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.
7. Lower the wiper arm against the windscreen.





Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated.

The following pages give more detailed information on how to take care of your tyres and what to do when they need to be replaced.

WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Inflation Guidelines

Keeping the tyres properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort.

- Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.
- Overinflated tyres can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

The deflation warning system will warn you when a change in tyre revolutions occurs due to a decrease in tyre pressure. See page 404 for more information on the deflation warning system.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with deflation warning system, we recommend that you visually check your tyres every day. If you think a tyre might be low, check it immediately with a tyre gauge. Then initialise the deflation warning system (see page 407).





Tyres

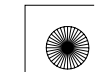
Use a gauge to measure the air pressure in each tyre at least once a month. Even tyres that are in good condition may lose 10 to 20 kPa (0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm², 1 to 2 psi) per month. Remember to check the spare tyre at the same time.

Check the air pressure when the tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). Add or release air, if needed, to match the recommended cold tyre pressures on the label on the driver's doorjamb.

If you check air pressures when the tyres are hot [driven for several kilometers (miles)], you will see readings 30 to 40 kPa (0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm², 4 to 6 psi) higher than the cold readings. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the recommended cold air pressure. The tyre will be underinflated.



CONTINUED





Tyres

You should get your own tyre pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tyre pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tyre problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

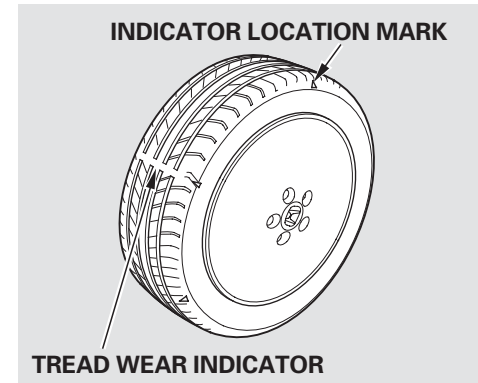
While tubeless tyres have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured, you should look closely for punctures if a tyre starts losing pressure.

For convenience, the recommended cold air pressures and tyre sizes are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

Tyre Inspection

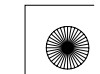
Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tyres for damage, foreign objects, and wear. You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.



Your tyres have wear indicators molded into the tread. When the tread wears down, you will see a band 12.7 mm (1/2 inch) wide across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) of tread left on the tyre.

A tyre this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tyre if you can see three or more tread wear indicators.





Tyres

Tyre Maintenance

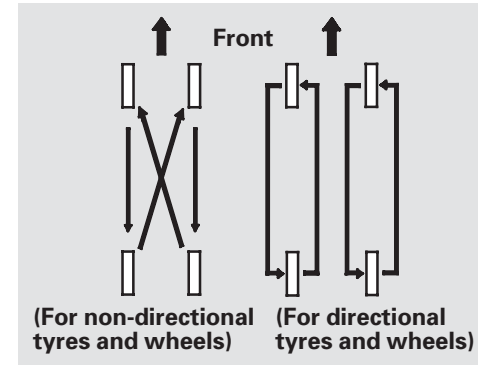
In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

Have your dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel. When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This increases riding comfort and tyre life. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

NOTICE

For vehicles equipped with aluminium wheels:
Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminium wheels. Use only genuine Honda wheel weights for balancing.

Tyre Rotation



To help increase tyre life and distribute wear more evenly, rotate the tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles). Move the tyres to the positions shown in the illustrations each time they are rotated. The above illustration shows how the tyres should be rotated on the vehicles equipped with a compact spare tyre or when the normal spare tyre is not included in the tyre rotation. *CONTINUED*





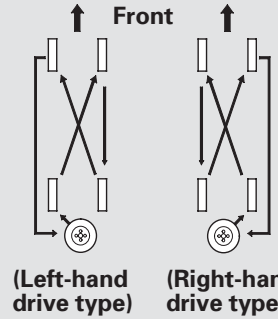
Tyres

If you purchase directional tyres, rotate only front-to-back. When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

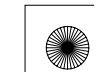
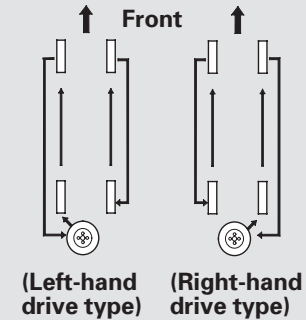
After rotating tyres, initialise the deflation warning system to activate it properly (see page 407).

Refer to the illustrations in the next column when the normal spare tyre is also rotated.

For non-directional tyres and wheels



For directional tyres and wheels





Tyres

Replacing Tyres and Wheels

Replace your tyres with radial tyres of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall).

Mixing radial and bias-ply tyres on your vehicle can reduce braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy. Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause the ABS, vehicle stability assist system (VSA) and deflation warning system to work inconsistently.

The ABS, VSA system and deflation warning system work by comparing the speed of each wheel. When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Tyre size and construction can affect wheel speed and may cause the system to activate.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, replace the two front tyres or two rear tyres as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

After rotating tyres, initialise the deflation warning system to activate it properly (see page 407).

If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels. Consult your dealer before replacing tyres.

Replacement wheels are available at your dealer.

WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.





Tyres

Wheels and Tyres

Wheels:

17 x 6 1/2J

18 x 7J

Tyres:

225/65R17 102T

225/60R18 100H

The sizes of wheels and tyres installed on your vehicle vary depending on models.

See the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb or ask your dealer for information on the proper size of the tyres on your vehicle.

Winter Tyres

Because of the limited winter qualification of summer tyres for winter use we recommend the use of winter tyres (M+S tyres) on snowy and icy roads. If M+S tyres are installed, all four wheels should be equipped to insure safe driving. Use only tyres of the same brand with the same profile. Pay attention to the tyre size, load capacity and speed class when buying.

On European models

Install the winter tyres according to the remarks in the registration paper. According to the EEC Directive for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If any questions arise, please discuss these with one of our dealers.





Tyres

Tyre Chains

Use snow chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area. Install the snow chains on the front wheels. Use greater caution when driving with snow chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains. Some snow chains may damage the vehicle's tyres, wheels, suspension, brake lines and body. Choose only fine limbed chains which guarantee enough free space between the tyre and the other vehicle parts in the wheelhouse. Pay attention to the sectional assembly view and other directions from the chain manufacturer. Consult your dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.

When you have installed tyre chains, drive at less than 30 km/h (19 mph) on roads covered with snow or ice. To minimize tyre and chain wear, avoid driving on cleared roads with chains installed.

Except EU models

Use only the specified chains or their equivalents for your tyres as listed.

Original Tyre Size* ¹	Chain Type
225/65R17 102T	RUD DISK 4715454 or equivalent
225/60R18 100H* ²	Not Available

* 1: Original tyre is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

* 2: On 225/60R18 tyres, you cannot install any type of tyre chains. If you have to use tyre chains, replace the original tyres with the optional 225/65R17 tyre.





Tyres

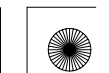
For EU models

Use only the specified chains or their equivalents for your tyres as listed.

Original Tyre Size * ¹	Chain Type
225/65R17 102T	RUD DISK 4715454 or equivalents
225/60R18 100H * ²	Not Available

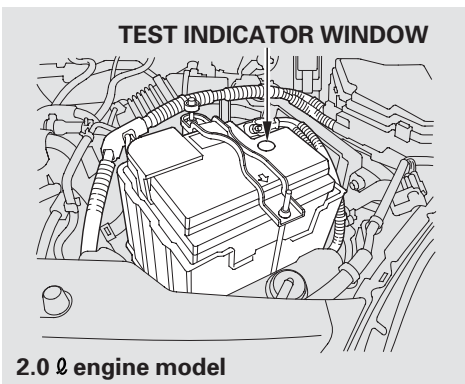
* 1: Original tyre is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

* 2: On 225/60R18 tyres, you cannot install any type of tyre chains. If you have to use tyre chains, replace the original tyres with the optional 225/65R17 tyre.



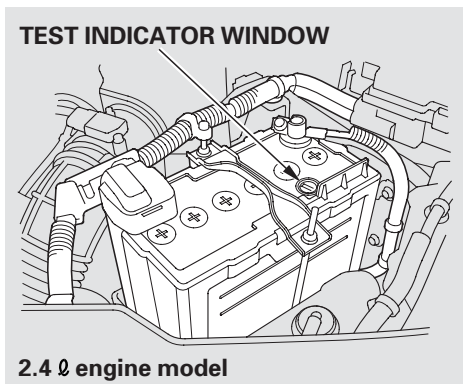


Checking the Battery

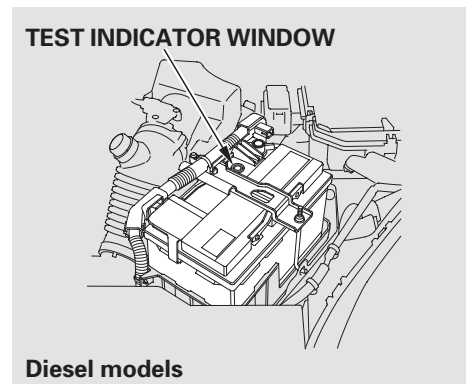


Check the condition of the battery monthly by looking at the test indicator window. The label on the battery explains the test indicator's colours.

The location of the test indicator window varies between manufacturers.



Check the terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.



If additional battery maintenance is needed, see your dealer or a qualified technician.

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

CONTINUED





Checking the Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation. A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Emergency Procedures

Eyes – Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin – Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing – Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.





Checking the Battery, Replacing the Battery

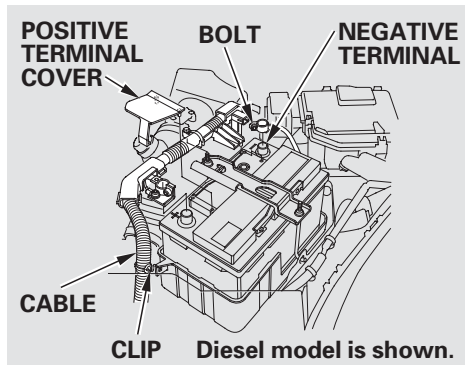
On some types

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system may disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the code (see page 291).

On some types

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected, or goes dead, the time setting is lost. To reset the time, see page 293.

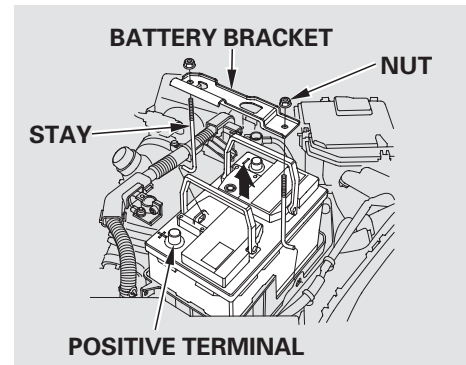
Replacing the Battery



(For EU countries)

When you remove and replace the battery, always follow the maintenance instructions in Maintenance Safety on page 426 and the warnings in the Checking the Battery section to prevent potential hazards.

1. Make sure the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) position.
2. Open the bonnet.



3. Loosen the bolt on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (-) terminal.

Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

CONTINUED





Replacing the Battery

4. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the bolt on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.

On diesel models

Pull out the cable by pulling the clip from the holder on the side of the battery case.

5. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
6. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.
7. If necessary, remove the battery cover.
8. Take out the battery carefully.

To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

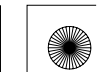
Make sure the battery bracket is positioned correctly as shown on the previous page.



This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.





Vehicle Storage

If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than 1 month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc., are completely dry.
- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in reverse (manual) or Park (automatic).

- Block the rear wheels.
- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tyres are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the vehicle is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front and rear wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windscreen.

- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and tailgate seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and tailgate seals.

CONTINUED





Vehicle Storage

- Cover the vehicle with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, periodically run the engine until it reaches full operating temperature (the cooling fans cycle on and off twice). Preferably, do this once a month.

On diesel models only

- When parking the vehicle for an extended period, water accumulates in the fuel system and the engine will not start. In this case, water may need to be drained off with the fuel filter (see **Draining Water** on page 462).

If you store your vehicle for 1 year or longer, have your dealer perform the maintenance inspections called for in the 2 years/40,000 km (25,000 miles) maintenance schedule* as soon as you take it out of storage (see page 429). The replacements called for in the maintenance schedule are not needed unless the vehicle has actually reached that time or distance.


* : For EU countries and South Africa, see the separate service information booklet.





Vehicle Storage

Priming the Fuel System (Diesel models only)

If your vehicle runs out of fuel, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on, or the symbol “  ” will appear on the multi-information display, and the engine will not restart after refueling the fuel tank with the appropriate fuel (see pages 353 and 354).

In this case, air may have entered the fuel system. The system requires priming to start the engine. Prime the fuel system as follows:

1. Refuel the fuel tank (minimum 5 litres).
2. Turn the ignition key to the ON (II) position and hold it for about 30 seconds.

You may hear some noise near the fuel tank (located under the rear seat) for a while. This is normal: it is the fuel system being primed automatically.
3. Make sure the glow plugs indicator goes off, then start the engine (see page 375). If the engine does not start right away, do not hold the ignition switch for more than 10 seconds at a time. This will damage the fuel pump and the engine starter.
4. If the engine fails to start, return to step 2.
5. The engine runs normally, but the malfunction indicator lamp or the PGM-FI warning remains on.
6. To turn off the indicator, restart and turn off the engine at least three times at intervals of approximately 60 seconds.

CONTINUED

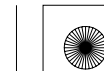


Vehicle Storage

If this procedure is performed during normal driving, the malfunction indicator lamp will be turned off, and the PGM-FI warning on the multi-information display will also go out.

If you are not sure how to bleed the air, contact your dealer.

If the engine fails to restart after priming the fuel system, there is a problem in the fuel system. You should have the vehicle inspected by your dealer.

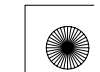




Appearance Care

Regular cleaning and polishing of your vehicle helps to keep it “new” looking. This section gives you information on how to clean your vehicle and preserve its appearance: the paint, brightwork, wheels and interior. Also included are several things you can do to help prevent corrosion.

Exterior Care.....	504
Washing	504
Waxing	505
Aluminium Wheels	505
Audio Antenna	506
Paint Touch-up	506
Interior Care.....	507
Carpeting	507
Floor Mats	507
Fabric	508
Vinyl	508
Leather.....	508
Windows	508
Seat Belts.....	509
Air Fresheners	509
Corrosion Protection	510





Exterior Care

Washing

Frequent washing helps preserve your vehicle's beauty. Dirt and grit can scratch the paint, while tree sap and bird droppings can permanently ruin the finish.

Wash your vehicle in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If the vehicle is parked in the sun, move it into the shade and let the exterior cool down before you start.

Only use the solvents and cleaners recommended in this owner's manual.

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle.

- Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with cool water to remove loose dirt.
- Fill a bucket with cool water. Mix in a product made especially for car washing.
- Wash the vehicle using water and detergent solution and a soft-bristle brush, sponge, or soft cloth. Start at the top and work your way down. Rinse frequently.
- Check the body for road tar, tree sap, etc. Remove these stains with tar remover or turpentine. Rinse it off immediately so it does not harm the finish. Remember to re-wax these areas, even if the rest of the vehicle does not need waxing.
- When you have washed and rinsed the whole exterior, dry it with a chamois or soft towel. Letting it air-dry will cause dulling and water spots.

As you dry the vehicle, inspect it for chips and scratches that could allow corrosion to start. Repair them with touch-up paint (see page 506).





Exterior Care

Waxing

Always wash and dry the whole vehicle before waxing it. You should wax your vehicle, including the metal trim, whenever water sits on the surface in large patches. It should form into beads or droplets after waxing.

You should use a quality liquid or paste wax. Apply it according to the instructions on the container. In general, there are two types of products:

Waxes — A wax coats the finish and protects it from damage by exposure to sunlight, air pollution, etc. You should use a wax on your vehicle when it is new.

Polishes — Polishes and cleaner/waxes can restore the shine to paint that has oxidized and lost some of its shine. They normally contain mild abrasives and solvents that remove the top layer of the finish. You should use a polish on your vehicle if the finish does not have its original shine after using a wax.

Cleaning tar, insects, etc. with removers also takes off the wax. Remember to re-wax those areas, even if the rest of the vehicle does not need waxing.

Aluminium Wheels (For some types)

Clean your vehicle's aluminium alloy wheels as you do the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

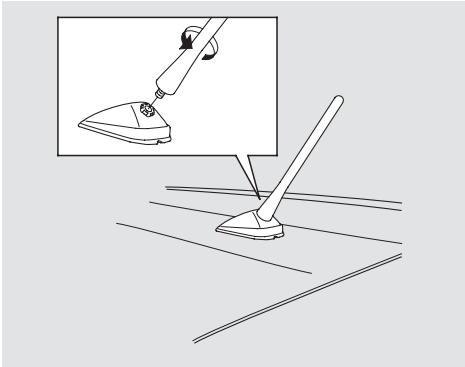
The wheels have a protective clearcoat that keeps the aluminium from corroding and tarnishing. Using harsh chemicals, including some commercial wheel cleaners or stiff brushes, can damage this clear-coat. Only use a mild detergent and soft brush or sponge to clean the wheels.





Exterior Care

Audio Antenna



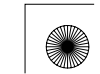
NOTICE

Your vehicle is equipped with an antenna at the rear of the roof. Before using a “drive-through” car wash, remove the antenna by unscrewing it by hand. This prevents the antenna from being damaged by the car wash brushes.

Paint Touch-up

Your dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle’s colour. The colour code is printed on a plate on the front doorjamb on the left side. Take this code to your dealer so you are sure to get the correct colour.

Inspect your vehicle frequently for chips or scratches in the paint. Repair them right away to prevent corrosion of the metal underneath. Use the touch-up paint only on small chips and scratches. More extensive paint damage should be repaired by a professional.





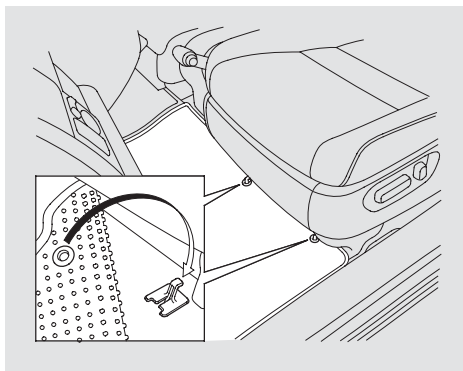
Interior Care

Carpeting

Vacuum the carpeting frequently to remove dirt. Ground-in dirt will make the carpet wear out faster.

Periodically shampoo the carpet to keep it looking new. Use one of the foam-type carpet cleaners on the market. Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner, applying it with a sponge or soft brush. Keep the carpeting as dry as possible by not adding water to the foam.

Floor Mats (Optional)



The driver's floor mat that came with your vehicle hooks over the floor mat anchors. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward and possibly interfering with the pedals.

If you remove the driver's floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.

If you use non-Honda floor mats, make sure they fit properly and that they can be used with the floor mat anchors. Do not put additional floor mats on top of an anchored mat.





Interior Care

Fabric

Vacuum dirt and dust out of the material frequently. For general cleaning, use a solution of mild soap and lukewarm water, letting it air dry. To clean off stubborn spots, use a commercially-available fabric cleaner. Test it on a hidden area of the fabric first, to make sure it does not bleach or stain the fabric. Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner.

Vinyl

Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner. Wipe the vinyl with a soft cloth dampened in a solution of mild soap and water. Use the same solution with a soft-bristle brush on more difficult spots. You can also use commercially-available spray or foam-type vinyl cleaners.

Leather

(For some types)

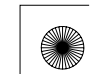
Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral wool detergent solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

Windows

Clean the windows, inside and out, with a commercially-available glass cleaner. You can also use a mixture of one part white vinegar to ten parts water. This will remove the haze that builds up on the inside of the windows. Use a soft cloth or paper towels to clean all glass and clear plastic surfaces.

NOTICE

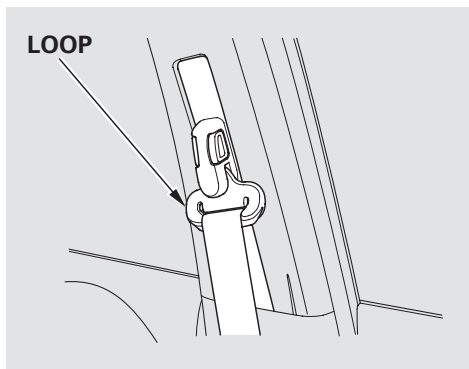
The rear window demister wires are bonded to the inside of the glass. Wiping vigorously up-and-down can dislodge and break the demister wires. When cleaning the rear window, use gentle pressure and wipe side-to-side.





Interior Care

Seat Belts



If your seat belts get dirty, use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. Let the belts air dry before you use the vehicle.

Dirt build-up in the loops of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the insides of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

Air Fresheners

If you want to use an air freshener/deodorizer in the interior of your vehicle, it is best to use a solid type. Some liquid air fresheners contain chemicals that may cause parts of the interior trim and fabric to crack or discolour.

If you use a liquid air freshener, make sure you fasten it securely so it does not spill as you drive.





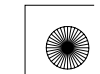
Corrosion Protection

Two factors normally contribute to causing corrosion in your vehicle:

1. Moisture trapped in body cavities. Dirt and road salt that collects in hollows on the underside of the car stays damp, promoting corrosion in that area.
2. Removal of paint and protective coatings from the exterior and underside of the vehicle.

Many corrosion-preventive measures are built into your vehicle. You can help keep your vehicle from corroding by performing some simple periodic maintenance:

- Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you discover them.
- Inspect and clean out the drain holes in the bottom of the doors and body.
- Check the floor coverings for dampness. Carpeting and floor mats may remain damp for a long time, especially in winter. This dampness can eventually cause the floor panels to corrode.
- Use a high-pressure spray to clean the underside of your vehicle. This is especially important in areas that use road salt in winter. It is also a good idea in humid climates and areas subject to salty air. Be careful of the ABS wheel sensors and wiring at each wheel.
- Have the corrosion-preventive coatings on the underside of your vehicle inspected and repaired periodically.





Taking Care of the Unexpected

This section covers the more common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

Compact Spare Tyre.....	512
Changing a Flat Tyre	513
Honda TRK	519
If the Engine Won't Start.....	534
Jump Starting	536
If the Engine Overheats (Petrol models)	540
If the Engine Overheats (Diesel models).....	542
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	544
Oil Level Indicator	545
Charging System Indicator.....	547
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Petrol models)	548
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Diesel models).....	549
PGM-FI Warning (Diesel models).....	550
Brake System Indicator	551
Fuses	552
Fuse Locations (Petrol models)	557
Fuse Locations (Diesel models).....	559
Emergency Towing	562





Compact Spare Tyre (For some types)

Use the compact spare tyre as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tyre repaired or replaced, and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

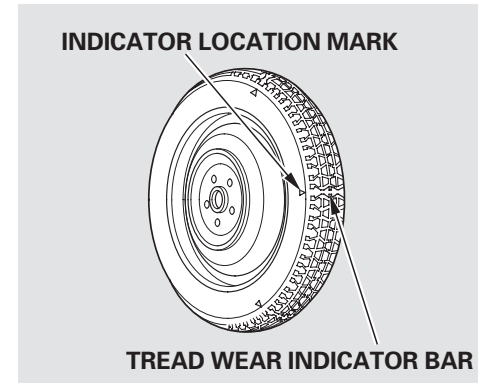
Check the air pressure of the compact spare tyre every time you check the other tyres. It should be inflated to:

420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm² , 60 psi)

Follow these precautions:

- Never exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- This tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.
- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare tyre.

- Do not use your compact spare tyre on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.
- When you restart the vehicle with the compact spare tyre, do not initialise the system, because the compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. After replacing the compact spare tyre with the specified regular tyre, initialise the deflation warning system.
- The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.



Replace the tyre when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement tyre should be the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel. The spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the spare wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tyre.





Changing a Flat Tyre

On vehicles with spare tyre

If you have a flat tyre while driving, pull over safely. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an area far away from traffic lanes.

NOTICE

Use the jack that came with your vehicle. If you try to raise another vehicle with this jack or use another jack to raise your vehicle, the vehicle or jack can be damaged.

On vehicles with Honda TRK

Your vehicle is equipped with the tyre sealant kit instead of the spare tyre. This kit is available for easy repair of a flat tyre (see page 519).

Jack Label

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.

See page 575 for your jack type.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in Park (automatic) or reverse (manual). Apply the parking brake.

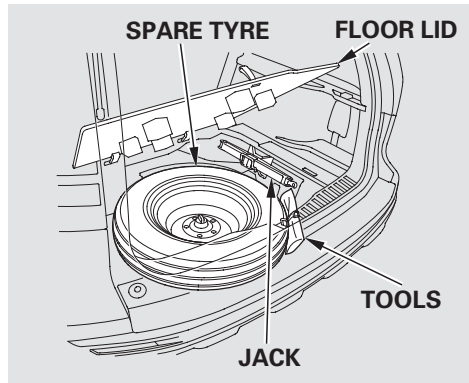
If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer.

CONTINUED

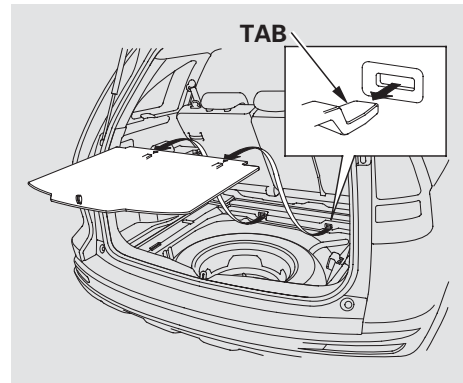




Changing a Flat Tyre

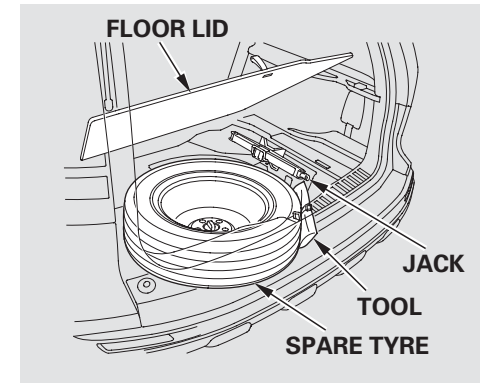


2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Have all the passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tyre.



3. Open the tailgate. Raise the luggage area floor lid by lifting up with the strap, and remove it from luggage area by disengaging the tabs.

When you store the flat tyre in the spare tyre well, do not reinstall the luggage area floor lid forcibly. This will damage the tabs on the lid.



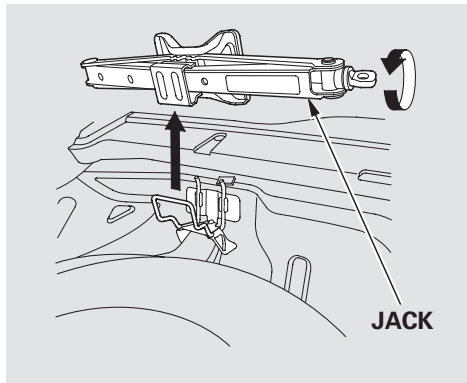
(For some types)
Open the tailgate. Raise the luggage area floor lid by lifting it up with the strap.

4. Take the tool kit out of the spare tyre well.

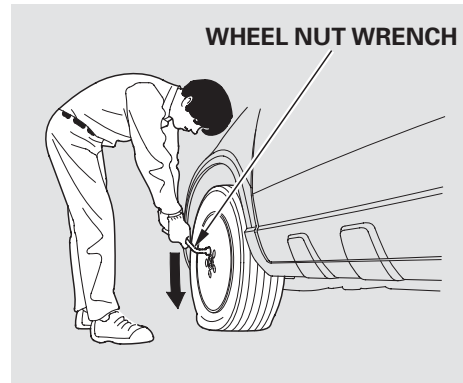




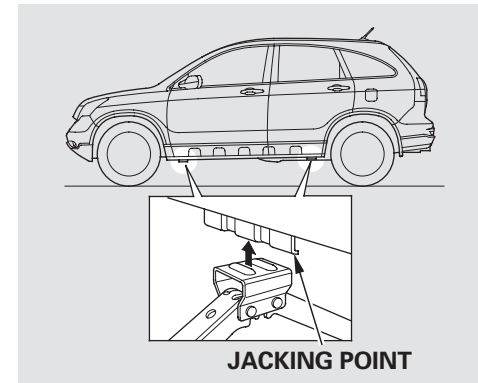
Changing a Flat Tyre



5. Take the jack out of the spare tyre area. Turn the jack's end bracket anticlockwise to loosen it, then remove the jack by lifting it straight up.
6. Unscrew the wing bolt and take the spare tyre out of its well.
7. Place blocks in front and back of the wheel diagonally opposite the tyre you are changing.



8. Loosen each wheel nut 1/2 turn with the wheel nut wrench.



9. Place the jack under the jacking point nearest the tyre you need to change. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

CONTINUED

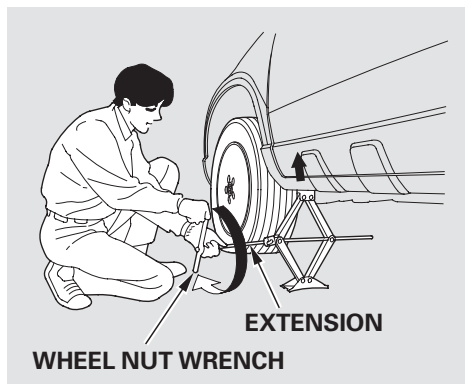




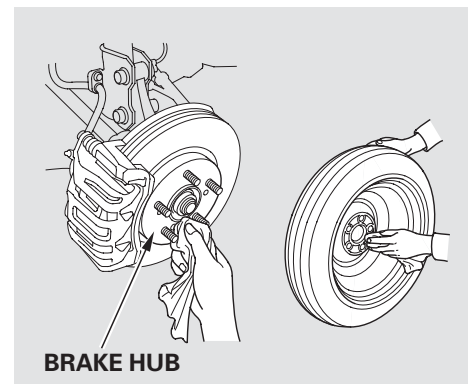
Changing a Flat Tyre

NOTE:

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.



10. Use the extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tyre is off the ground.
11. Remove the wheel nuts, then remove the flat tyre. Handle the wheel nuts carefully; they may be hot from driving. Place the flat tyre on the ground with the outside surface facing up.



12. Before mounting the spare tyre, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully; it may be hot from driving.

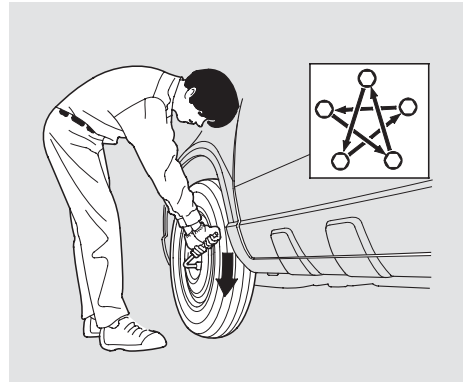




Changing a Flat Tyre

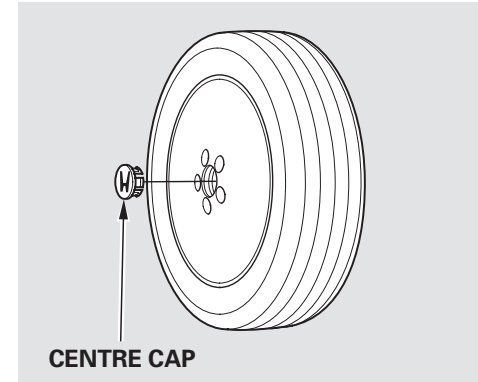
13. Put on the spare tyre. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel nut wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten the wheel nuts fully.

14. Lower the vehicle to the ground, and remove the jack.



15. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.

Tighten the wheel nuts to:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m , 80 lbf·ft)



16. Remove the centre cap before storing the flat tyre in the spare tyre well.

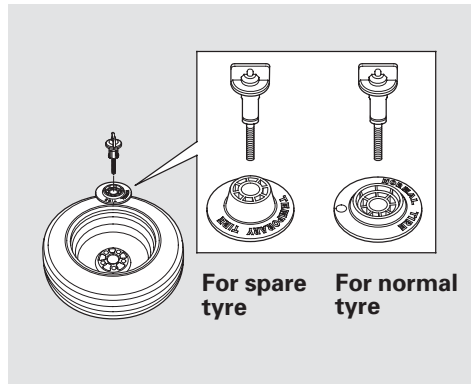
Store the centre cap in the spare tyre well. Make sure it does not get scratched or damaged.

CONTINUED

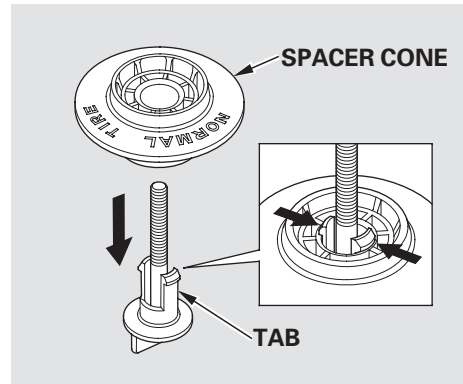




Changing a Flat Tyre



17. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
18. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, turn it over, and put it back on the bolt.



To remove the spacer cone, squeeze the tabs on the wing bolt to disengage it from the centre of the spacer cone, then pull the bolt downward.

To install the wing bolt to the spacer cone, reverse this procedure.

19. Secure the flat tyre by screwing the wing bolt back into its hole.
20. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place. Store the tools, and place the cover on the flat tyre of the luggage area.

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

21. Close the tailgate.
22. After replacing the compact spare tyre with the specified regular tyre, initialise the deflation warning system (see page 407).





Honda TRK (For some types)



On vehicles with Honda TRK
Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tyre. Instead, your vehicle has the tyre sealant kit (Honda TRK: temporary repair kit of TERRA-S®). This kit is available only for easy repair of a flat tyre.

When using the tyre sealant kit, always follow the instructions and the procedure in this owner's manual.

You should check the usable period of the tyre sealant according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule*.

* : *On vehicles with Service Book*
Refer to the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

If your vehicle has a compact spare tyre, see page 512 for how to replace a flat tyre.

To remind you of the instructions for using the tyre sealant kit, the handling manual is included in the kit. Symbols   on the handling manual are to remind you to read this owner's manual for using the tyre sealant kit.

Read the handling manual well and use it correctly.

Small punctures in the tyre tread, caused by a nail or a screw, can be sealed with the temporary repair kit.

NOTICE

The tyre sealant kit cannot be used in the following cases.
Inform your dealer or a Roadside Assistance Service.

Have your vehicle towed (see Emergency Towing on page 562).

1. Expired best before date of the tyre sealant.
2. Cuts or piercing in the tyre tread larger than approximately 4 mm (3/16ths of an inch).
3. Cuts in the tyre side wall.
4. Tyre damage caused by driving with considerably reduced tyre pressure or even with deflated tyres.
5. A tyre bead completely unseated outside or inside of rim.
6. A rim damaged.
7. 2 or more tyres punctured.

CONTINUED





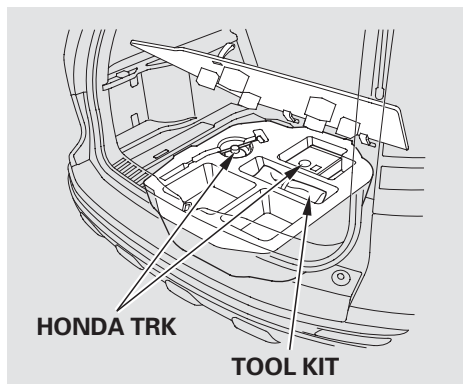
Honda TRK (For some types)

If you have a flat tyre while driving, stop in a safe place. Make sure to park the vehicle on firm, level and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in park (automatic) or neutral (manual), and set the parking brake.

If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer.

Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

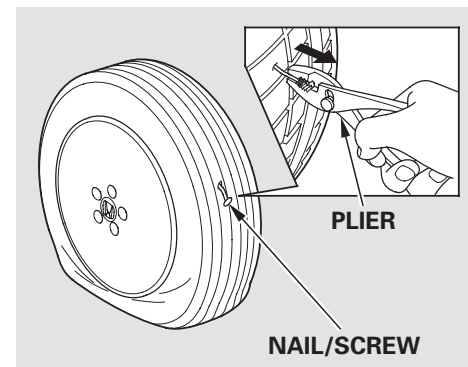
Have all the passengers get out of the vehicle while you repair a flat tyre temporarily.



Open the tailgate.

Take the Honda TRK (air compressor, sealant bottle, filler hose, package including a valve remover and seals, and instruction) out of the case.

Instructions for Use



1. Pull out a nail or a screw in the tyre tread with the pliers supplied in the tool kit. When you can't pull it out or you can't find it, we recommend you to inform your dealer or Roadside Assistance Service. The kit can also be used to repair the tyre without removing the nail or screw but only in unavoidable cases.

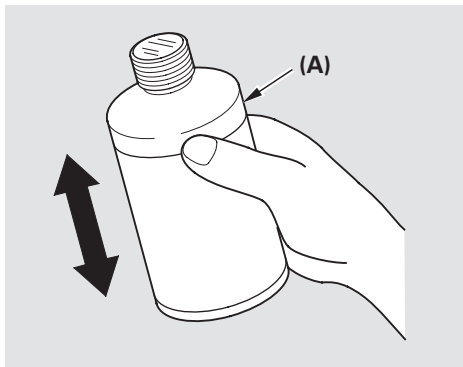




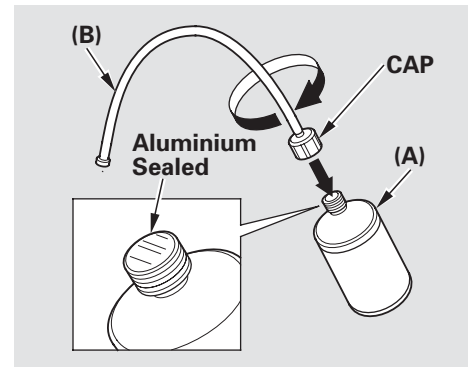
Honda TRK (For some types)

⚠ CAUTION

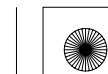
If you drive a vehicle after repair without extracting a nail or a screw, it may cause air leakage again or damage the inside and burst a tyre. If you have to drive, drive carefully, especially around corners.



2. Shake the bottle (A). Screw the filler hose (B) onto the bottle (A), thereby piercing the seal of aluminium.



CONTINUED





Honda TRK (For some types)

⚠ CAUTION

Contains ethylene glycol.

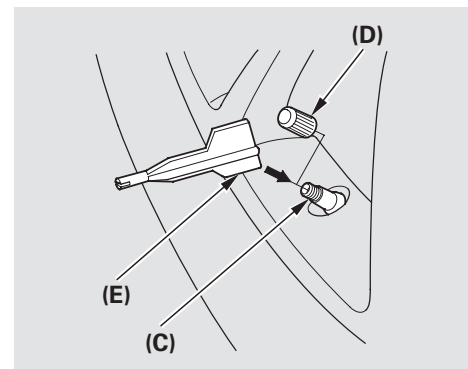
- **Harmful if swallowed. Swallow plenty of water and seek medical advice immediately.**
- **Irritating to eyes. Rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical advice.**
- **Keep locked up and out of the reach of children.**
- **If you shake the bottle after connecting the hose with the bottle, it may spill sealant. Shake bottle well before connecting hose.**

NOTICE

If sealant adheres to clothes, it may not be possible to remove. Be careful not to spill any.

Safety Label on the Sealant Bottle
To remind you of the information for repairing a flat tyre with this sealant kit, the labels are attached on the sealant bottle. Read the instructions carefully. Symbols ⚠ and ⓘ on the label are to remind you to read the Honda TRK section for using the tyre sealant kit.

If you have any questions about the tyre sealant kit, please contact your dealer.

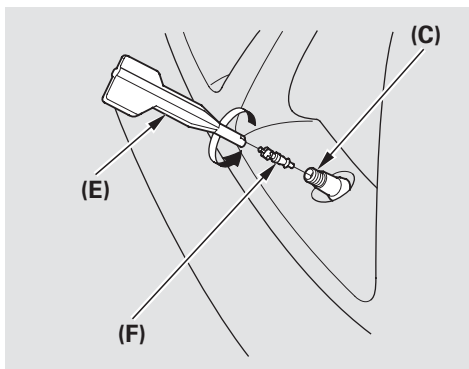


3. Unscrew the valve cap (D) from the tyre valve (C). Deflate the tyre completely pushing the valve insert using the back of the valve remover (E).





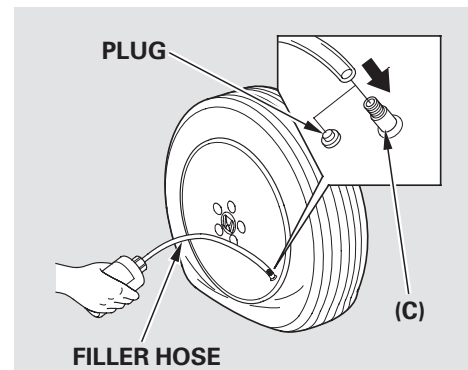
Honda TRK (For some types)



Unscrew the valve insert (F) using the valve remover (E). Do not place the valve insert (F) in sand or dirt.

⚠ CAUTION

A valve insert can jump out, if air remains in tyre. Be careful in removing valve insert.



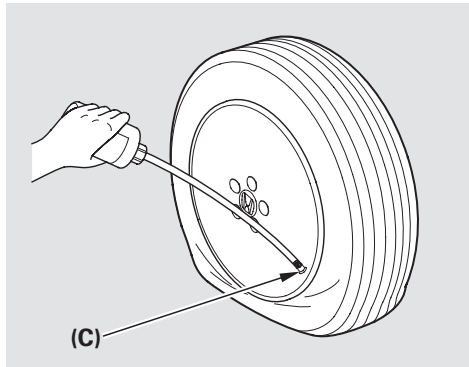
4. Pull the plug from the filler hose and screw the filler hose onto the tyre valve (C).

CONTINUED

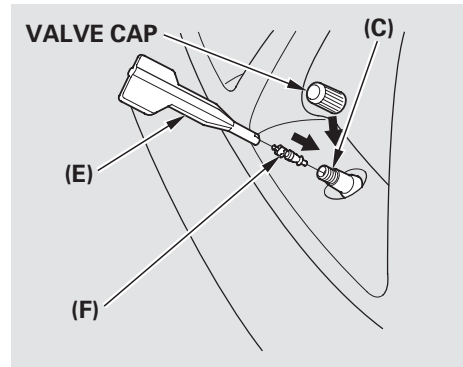




Honda TRK (For some types)

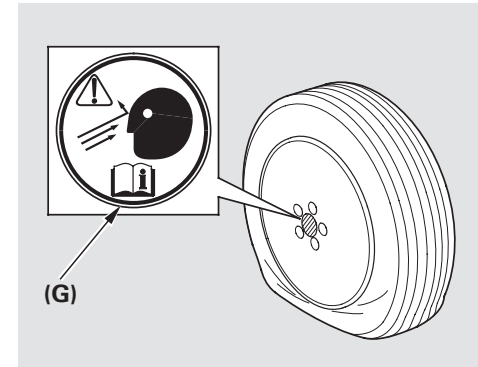


Hold the filling bottle with the filler hose downwards and compress. Squeeze the complete contents into the tyre.



5. Pull off the filler hose and firmly screw the valve insert (F) into the tyre valve (C) using the valve remover (E).

Reinstall the valve cap.

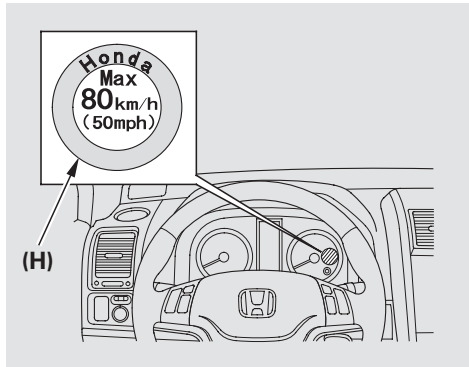


Affix the “Tyre Sealant in the tyre” sticker (G) on the wheel.





Honda TRK (For some types)



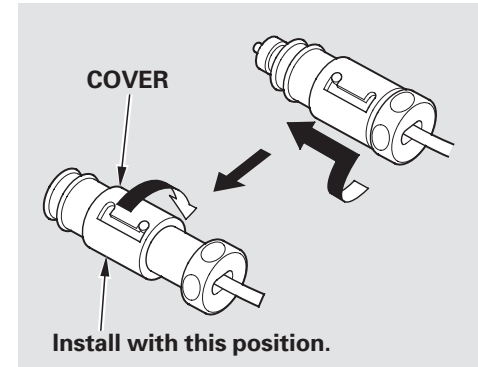
Affix the “Maximum Speed” sticker (H) within the driver’s range of vision on the display.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not affix a sticker on the steering wheel. The SRS air bag may not function.

Do not affix it in the position where it prevents the driver from seeing the warning indicators or speedometer.

6. Screw the inflation hose (J) to the tyre valve (C). Fit the plug to the socket (K) of the accessory power socket in the luggage area.



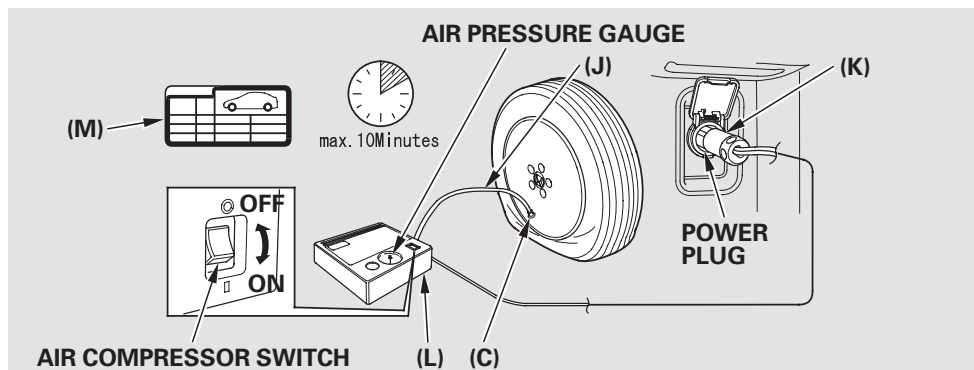
To use the power plug, make sure the cover is positioned as shown. If the cover is not in the upper position, turn the cover anticlockwise, then slide it up. Turn the cover clockwise to lock it in position.

CONTINUED





Honda TRK (For some types)



Turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position. Turn on the air compressor (L).
Inflate the tyre to the required air pressure (M). Do not inflate the tyre for more than 10 minutes.
If overinflated, deflate air by loosening the screw of the hose.

NOTICE

Operate the electric inflation pump for not longer than 15 minutes. It can cause overheating.

CAUTION

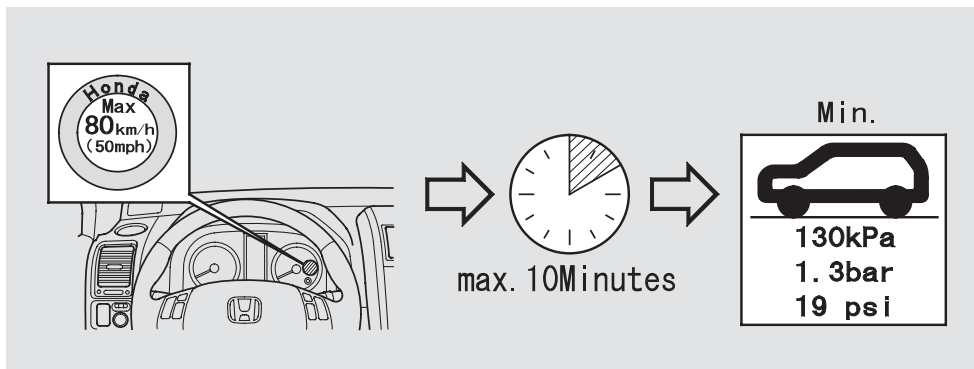
If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be severely damaged.

The Tyre Sealant Kit cannot provide the necessary seal. Inform a Honda Dealer or Roadside Assistant Service.





Honda TRK (For some types)



7. Continue the journey immediately. Drive carefully within the speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

NOTICE

If you drive at a speed of more than 80 km/h (50 mph), your vehicle may vibrate and will not drive safely.

8. After 10 minutes or 5 km (3 miles) running, check the tyre pressure with the air compressor pressure gauge. Note that the air pressure must be checked with the air compressor turned off. If the tyre pressure is kept, the tyre puncture is sealed. Then initialise the deflation warning system (see page 407). Continue to drive carefully to the nearest Honda dealer or a Roadside Assistance Service.

9. If the required air pressure dropped, inflate the tyre to the required air pressure and repeat from step 6.

CONTINUED





Honda TRK (For some types)

WARNING

In the following cases, do not drive on. Inform a Honda dealer or a Roadside Assistance Service.

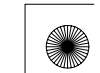
- **The tyre pressure has dropped below 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi).**
- **The tyre pressure has still dropped after steps 6 and 7.**

NOTICE

- Have the tyre replaced at the nearest Honda dealer. To repair the sealed tyre, consult your dealer.
- A wheel can be reused after wiping sealant with cloth, but the valve must be replaced.
- Dispose of the used bottle at a Honda dealer.

NOTICE

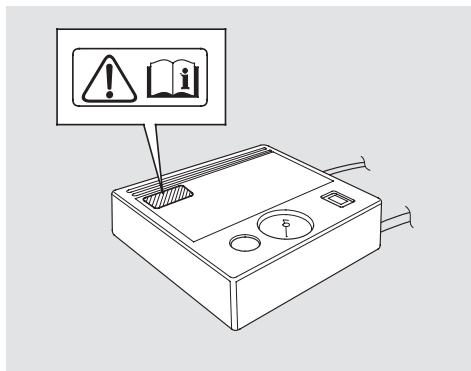
If the puncture hole cannot be detected, the tyre repair shop cannot repair the sealed tyre. When you continue running, check tyre pressure often and if tyre pressure decreases, have the sealed tyre repaired at a Honda dealer.







Honda TRK (For some types)

Instructions for Labels on the Air Compressor



To remind you of the information for repairing a flat tyre with this sealant kit, the labels are attached on the air compressor. The following shows you the instructions for these labels.

Symbols   on the label are to remind you to read the Honda TRK section for using the tyre sealant kit.

CAUTION

Do not run the engine in enclosed areas, or when the vehicle is supported by the jack.

CAUTION

Do not touch the air compressor with hands without protective clothing. Because it may be extremely hot while operating.

Never use the air compressor for 15 minutes or longer. When reusing, make sure the compressor is cool to the touch.

Do not use the air compressor for any other purpose than inflating your tyres.

CONTINUED





Honda TRK (For some types)

NOTE:

The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12 volt DC accessory socket.

Directions

Before using the air compressor, drive your vehicle to the road shoulder and stop in a safe place that is far away from the traffic lanes.

Step 1.

Remove the valve cap from a flat tyre and securely connect the air compressor hose to the valve.

Step 2.

Connect the power plug of the air compressor to the socket of the accessory power socket.

Step 3.

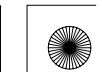
Turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position. Turn on the air compressor switch and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure. Check the tyre pressure by using the air pressure gauge on the compressor.

NOTICE

Turn off the switch on the air compressor before checking the air pressure.

Step 4.

When the tyre is inflated to specified air pressure, disconnect the power plug from the accessory power socket. Make sure not to leak the air from the tyre. Then install and tighten the valve cap securely.

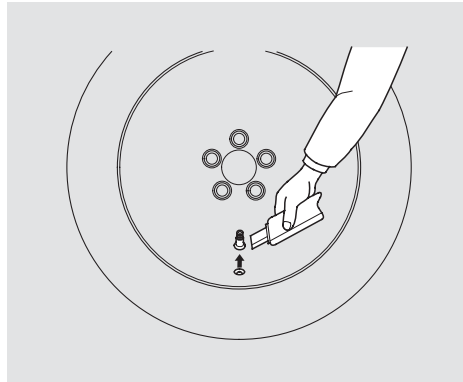




Honda TRK (For some types)

Sealant Extraction (For a Honda dealer)

Be careful not to spill sealant from a tyre.



1. Remove the tyre and wheel from the vehicle.
Deflate tyre pressure.
2. Cut the valve off with a knife.

CAUTION

Be careful not to cut a hand or a finger.

NOTICE

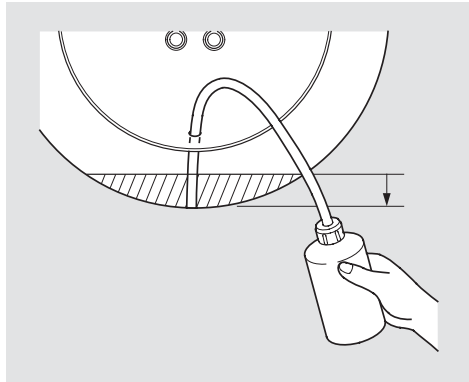
Be careful not to damage the tyre or the wheel.

CONTINUED

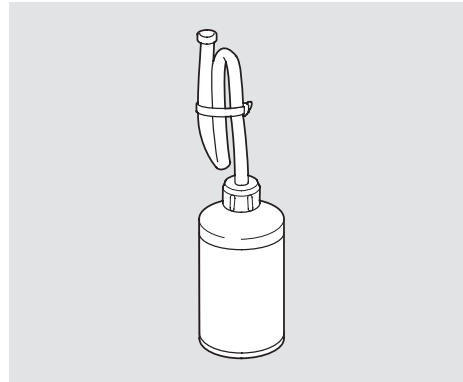




Honda TRK (For some types)



3. Insert the hose through the valve hole into the tyre. The hose should enter the sealant as deeply as possible.
4. Squeeze the bottle and draw out the sealant. (It is better to stand a tyre on a table.)
5. Repeat step 4 until the sealant cannot be drawn out.



6. Bend the hose and tie it with the strap or tape so that sealant does not leak. Dispose of the bottle at your dealer when you replace it with a new bottle.

NOTICE

Recycling sealant is important for protecting environmental resources. Please cooperate in collecting used sealant.







Honda TRK (For some types)

Sealant Label



To remind you of the information for extracting the used sealant, this seal is attached on the wheel. It also shows you the tyre has been repaired by the tyre sealant kit. The following shows you the instructions on this seal.

Symbols   on the seal are to remind you to read this owner's manual for extracting the used sealant.

CAUTION

The sealant contains ethylene glycol.

Swallowing the sealant can cause fatal poisoning. Drink with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Getting the sealant in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious injury. Flush with large quantities of water thoroughly. Call a physician immediately.

Keep out of the reach of children.

Make sure to keep the sealant enclosed in the bottle.





If the Engine Won't Start

Diagnosing why the engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position:

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound, a series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Check the transmission interlock. With an automatic transmission, it must be in Park or neutral, or the starter will not operate.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn on the headlights, and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or do not come on at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page 536 .

- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position. If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 562 .

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page 495). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 536).





If the Engine Won't Start

The Starter Operates Normally

In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, but the engine does not run.

- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on page 374 on petrol models and page 375 on diesel models.
- Are you using a properly coded key? An improperly coded key will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the instrument panel to blink rapidly (see page 162).

- Do you have fuel? Check the fuel gauge; the low fuel indicator may not be working.
- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 554).
- The fuel cutoff switch may be activated. If the switch is activated, it must be reset before starting the engine (see page 361).

On diesel models only

- If your vehicle runs out of fuel, priming the fuel system is required to restart the engine (see page 501).
- After you have stored your vehicle for an extended period, air may have entered the fuel system (see **Priming the Fuel System** on page 501).

- After you have parked the vehicle for an extended period or when the outside temperature becomes very high, water accumulates in the fuel system and the engine will not start. In this case, you should drain the water from the fuel filter (see page 462).

On all models

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 562 .





Jump Starting

Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start your vehicle with an automatic transmission by pushing or pulling it.

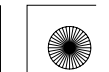
To jump start your vehicle:

1. Open the bonnet, and check the physical condition of the battery. In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or frozen, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

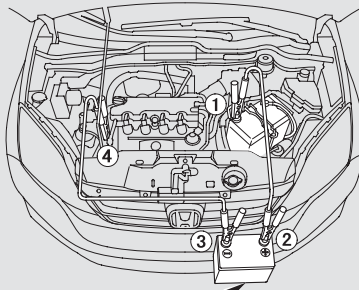
2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: heater, A/C, climate control, audio system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in neutral (M/T) or Park (A/T), and set the parking brake.





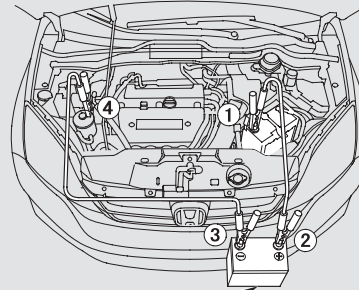
Jump Starting

2.0 l engine model



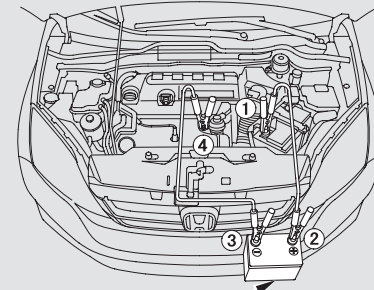
BOOSTER BATTERY

2.4 l engine model



BOOSTER BATTERY

2.2 l engine model (Diesel)



BOOSTER BATTERY

The numbers in the illustrations show you the order to connect the jumper cables.

3. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.

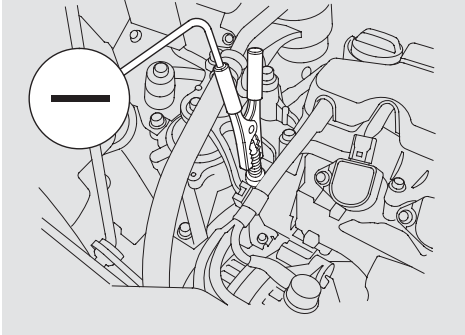
CONTINUED





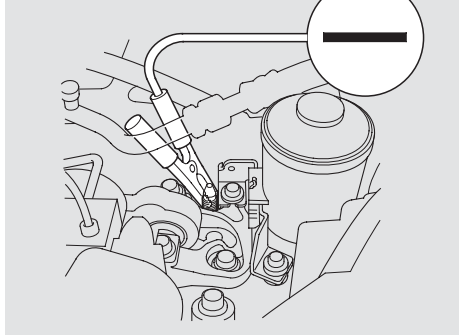
Jump Starting

2.0 l engine model

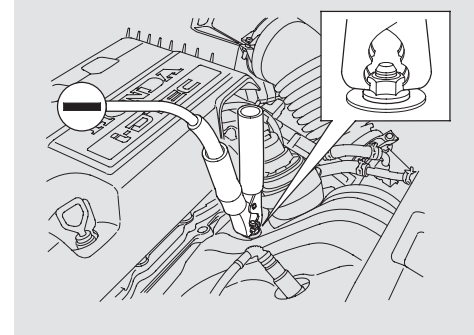


4. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the stud bolt on the engine side as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

2.4 l engine model



2.2 l engine model (Diesel)



On diesel models

Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the top of the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

Make sure the engine is cool before connecting the cable.

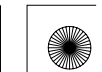




Jump Starting

5. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.
6. Start the vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.
7. Once the vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, and then from the booster battery.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until everything is disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.





If the Engine Overheats (Petrol models)

The reading of the vehicle's temperature gauge should stay in the midrange. If it climbs to the red mark, you should determine the reason (hot day, driving up a steep hill, etc.).

If your vehicle overheats, you should take immediate action. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the bonnet.

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge reading at the red mark can cause serious damage to your engine.

⚠ WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in neutral (manual) or Park (automatic), and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories, and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the bonnet, turn off the engine. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the bonnet.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running, and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading, the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge reading comes down to the midpoint, then continue driving.
4. If the temperature gauge reading stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.
5. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 562).





If the Engine Overheats (Petrol models)

6. If you don't find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark.
7. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may need to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the reading reaches the middle of the temperature gauge, or lower, before checking the radiator.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

8. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap anticlockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap, and turn it until it comes off.
9. Start the engine, and set the temperature control dial to maximum heat (climate control to AUTO at “ **H**, ”). Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.
10. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 562).
11. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.





If the Engine Overheats (Diesel models)

The reading of your vehicle's temperature gauge should stay in the midrange under most conditions. It may go higher if you are driving up a long steep hill on a very hot day. If it reaches the red mark, you should determine the reason.

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge reading at the red mark can cause serious damage to your engine.

Your vehicle can overheat for several reasons, such as lack of coolant or a mechanical problem. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the bonnet. In either case, you should take immediate action.

⚠ WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in neutral (manual) or Park (automatic), and set the parking brake. Turn off the air conditioning system/climate control system and all other accessories. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the bonnet, turn off the engine.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading (climbing a long, steep hill on a hot day with the A/C running, for example), the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge reading comes down to the midpoint, then continue driving.
4. If the temperature gauge reading stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.
5. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the bonnet.





If the Engine Overheats (Diesel models)

6. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 562).
7. If you don't find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the expansion tank. Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark.
8. If the expansion tank needs coolant, you will have to remove the cap. Before doing that, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and check the temperature gauge. Remove the expansion tank cap only if the temperature gauge reading has come down to normal or below the red mark and you do not hear any bubbling or gurgling noises coming from the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the expansion tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the expansion tank cap.

9. Use a cloth or glove to protect your hand while removing the expansion tank cap. Loosen the cap by turning it 1/8 turn anticlockwise. Stop and wait for any pressure in the expansion tank to escape. Then remove the cap by turning it anticlockwise.
10. Start the engine and set the temperature control dial to maximum heat (climate control to AUTO at “ **H** ”). Add coolant up to the MAX line on the expansion tank. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.
11. Put the expansion tank cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 562).
12. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the expansion tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the expansion tank cap back on tightly.






Low Oil Pressure Indicator



This indicator should come on when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, and go out after the engine starts. It should never come on red when the engine is running. If it turns on red and starts flashing or stays on, the oil pressure has dropped very low or lost pressure. Serious engine damage is possible and you should take immediate action.

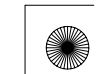
You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with an “OIL PRESSURE LOW” message on the multi-information display.

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.

1. Safely pull off the road, and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the bonnet, and check the oil level (see page 357). An engine very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving manoeuvres.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page 442 on petrol models, and page 444 on diesel models).

4. Start the engine, and watch the oil pressure indicator. If it does not go out within 10 seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 562).






Oil Level Indicator (On the Multi-information Display)

OIL LEVEL INDICATOR



Your vehicle has an engine oil level sensor to check the oil level. If the symbol “” for the oil level indicator comes on in the multi-information display when the engine is running, the engine oil level is low. You will also hear a beep when this symbol comes on. If you select the warning symbol with the message(s) in the customizing settings, you will see this symbol with a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message on the multi-information display.

If this symbol comes on, safely pull off the road, park the vehicle on level ground, turn off the engine and let the vehicle sit for approximately 3 minutes.

Check the oil level. If the engine oil level is near or below the lower mark on the dipstick, you should add the engine oil (see page 442 on petrol models, and page 444 on diesel models).

Do not fill above the upper mark on the dipstick and do not spill the engine oil in the engine compartment. This could damage the engine and other components.

If you do not carry spare engine oil in your vehicle, drive moderately to the nearest service area and add engine oil. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

The oil level symbol/message display can be reset each time you turn off the engine. When you start your trip again, the system begins to monitor the engine oil level. It may take a while until the system senses the engine oil level is low and the symbol, or the symbol with a message appear on the multi-information display. You should check the engine oil level and add engine oil before driving again if the oil level symbol, or the symbol with a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message comes on.

CONTINUED





Oil Level Indicator (On the Multi-information Display)


NOTICE

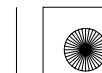
If you ignore the oil level symbol/message and keep driving with this symbol/message on, you can seriously damage the engine.

This system activates after the engine warms up. If the outside temperature is extremely low, you may have to drive for a long time until the system senses the engine oil level.

Oil Level Sensor Failure



If the symbol “!,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message appears on the multi-information display when the engine is running, there is a system problem in the engine oil level sensor. You will also hear a beep. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.






Charging System Indicator

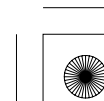
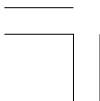


This indicator should come on when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, and go out after the engine starts. If the charging system indicator comes on brightly when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use other electrically operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

Go to a dealer or a service station where you can get technical assistance.






Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Petrol models)



This indicator comes on, then goes out when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If the indicator comes on while driving, it means one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause increased emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If this indicator comes on, safely pull off the road and turn off the engine. Restart the engine and watch the indicator. If it stays on, have your vehicle checked by the dealer as soon as possible. Drive moderately until the dealer has inspected the problem. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

You should also have the dealer inspect your vehicle if the indicator comes on frequently, even though it goes off when you follow the above procedure.

NOTICE

If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, without starting the engine, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on for about 20 seconds. It then goes off or blinks 5 times under various conditions. This is normal: it shows the self-testing condition of the diagnostics for the emissions control systems.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the malfunction indicator lamp may also come on with the “D” indicator.






Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Diesel models)



This indicator comes on, then goes out when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates one of the emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause your vehicle to put out excessive emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display.

If this indicator comes on, safely pull off the road and turn off the engine. Restart and turn off the engine at least three times at intervals of approximately 30 seconds, then watch the indicator. If it stays on, have your vehicle checked by your

dealer as soon as possible. Drive moderately until the dealer has inspected the problem. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

You should also have the dealer inspect your vehicle if the indicator comes on frequently, even though it goes off when you follow the above procedure.

NOTICE

If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

This indicator will also come on and you cannot restart the engine after your vehicle has run out of fuel. If this occurs, refuel the fuel tank, then follow the procedure for **Priming the Fuel System** on page 501 before attempting to restart the engine.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, without starting the engine, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on for about 20 seconds. It then goes off or blinks 5 times under various conditions. This is normal: it shows the self-testing condition of the diagnostics for the emissions control systems.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the malfunction indicator lamp may also come on with the “D” indicator.





PGM-FI Warning (Diesel models)



If you see this symbol or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display while the engine running, there is a problem with the engine control system. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If this symbol or the symbol with a message is displayed, safely pull off the road and turn off the engine. Restart and turn off the engine at least three times at intervals of approximately 30 seconds, then watch the multi-information display. If it appears again, have your vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible. Drive moderately until the dealer has inspected the problem. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

You should also have the dealer inspect your vehicle if this symbol “PGM-FI” appears on the multi-information display frequently, even though it goes off when you follow the above procedure.

NOTICE

If you keep driving with the symbol “PGM-FI” on, you can damage your vehicle’s emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle’s warranties.

This symbol or the symbol with a message will also appear on the multi-information display and you cannot restart the engine after your vehicle has run out of fuel. If this occurs, refuel the fuel tank, then follow the procedure for **Priming the Fuel System** on page 501 before attempting to restart the engine.

This symbol or the symbol with a message may also appear if you do not use the proper fuel for the climate or regional conditions. This may cause the engine power to reduce (see page 353).





Brake System Indicator



The brake system indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and as a reminder to check the parking brake. It will stay on if you do not fully release the parking brake.


If the brake system indicator comes on while driving, the brake fluid level is probably low. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 454).

If the fluid level is low, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “BRAKE FLUID LOW” message on the multi-information display.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system’s dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the long distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed and repaired as soon as possible (see **Emergency Towing** on page 562).

You will also see the symbol “,” or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display if there is a problem with the brake system or the front-to-rear braking distribution system.

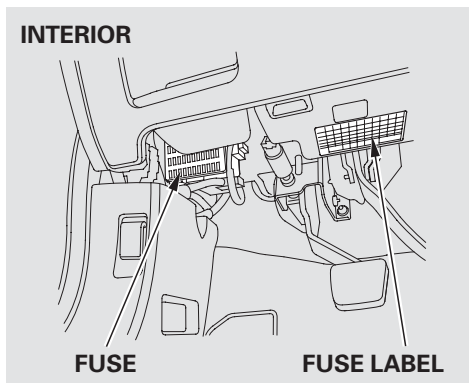
If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and carefully.

If the ABS indicator comes on with the brake system indicator, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.



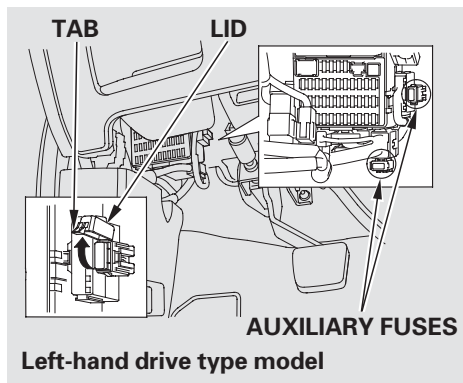


Fuses



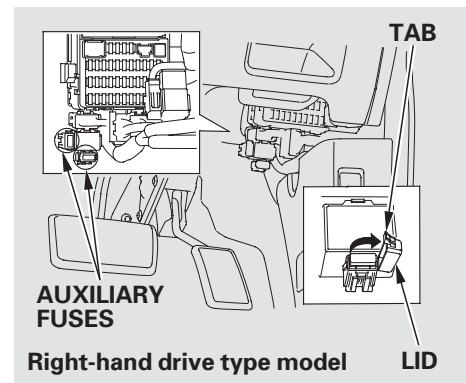
The vehicle's fuses are located in several fuse boxes under the dashboard and in the engine compartment.

The interior fuse box is located under the dashboard on the driver's side. The fuse label is attached under the steering column.



On diesel models
One or two auxiliary fuse boxes are located next to the interior fuse box.

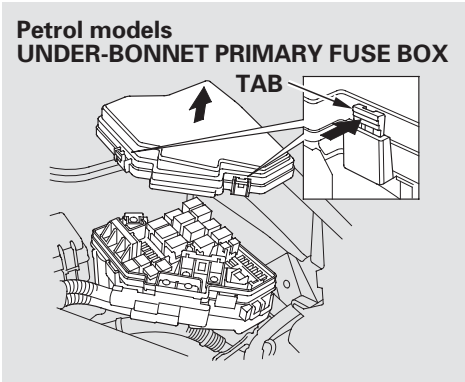
To open the fuse box lid, pull the tab in the direction as shown in the illustration.



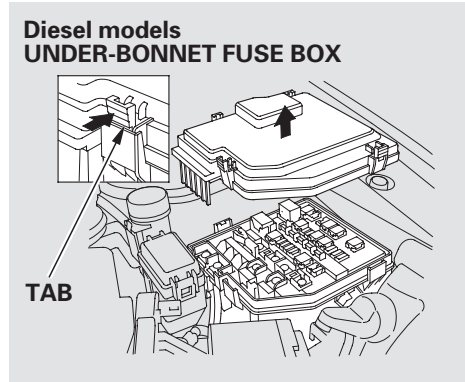


Fuses

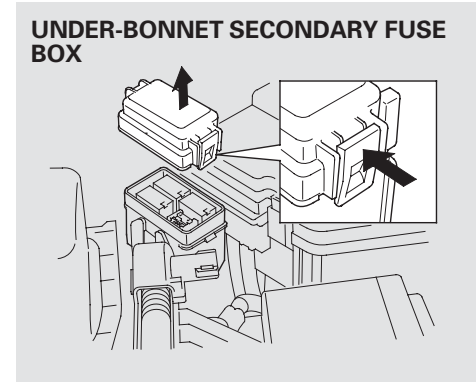
Petrol models UNDER-BONNET PRIMARY FUSE BOX



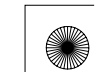
Diesel models UNDER-BONNET FUSE BOX



UNDER-BONNET SECONDARY FUSE BOX



The under-bonnet fuse box is located in the back of the engine compartment on the left side. To open it, push the tabs as shown.

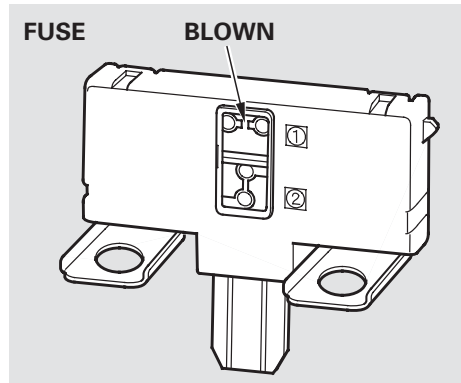




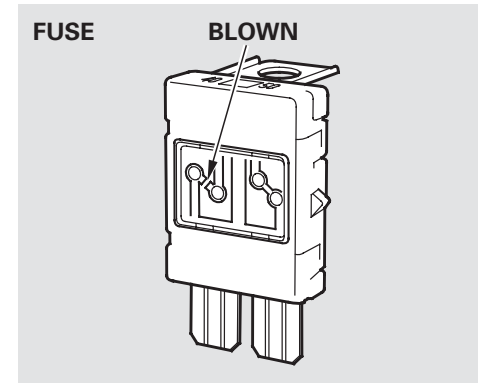
Fuses

Checking and Replacing Fuses

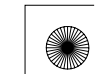
If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on pages 557 and 558 on petrol models, and pages 559 and 561 on diesel models, or the diagram on the fuse box lid, which fuse or fuses control that device. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is the cause. Replace any blown fuses, and check if the device works.



1. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.
2. On the under-bonnet fuse box, remove the cover from the fuse box.

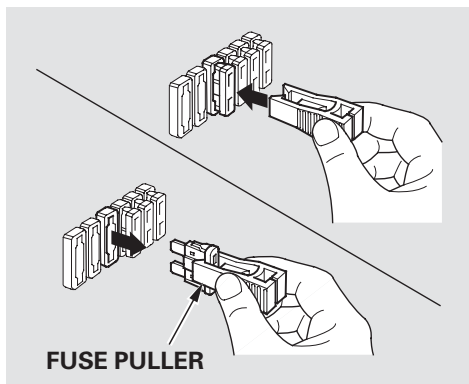


3. Check each of the large fuses in the under-bonnet fuse box by looking through the side window at the wire inside. Remove the screws with a Phillips-head screwdriver.



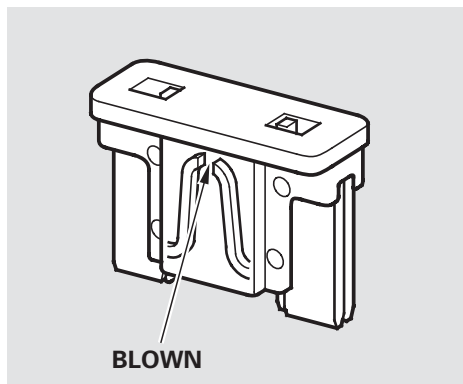


Fuses



4. Check the smaller fuses in the under-bonnet fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse box by pulling out each one with the fuse puller provided in the under-bonnet fuse box.

On petrol models, the fuse puller is on the back of the primary under-bonnet fuse box cover.



5. Look for a burned wire inside the fuse. If it is burned out, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the cigarette lighter).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate that anything is wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

CONTINUED



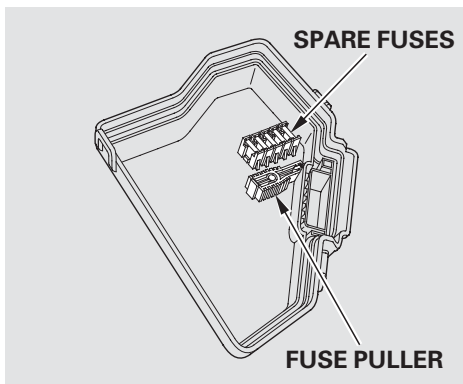


Fuses

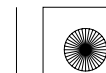
NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.

6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem with your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit, and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.



On petrol models
Your vehicle has spare fuses on the back of the under-bonnet fuse box cover.



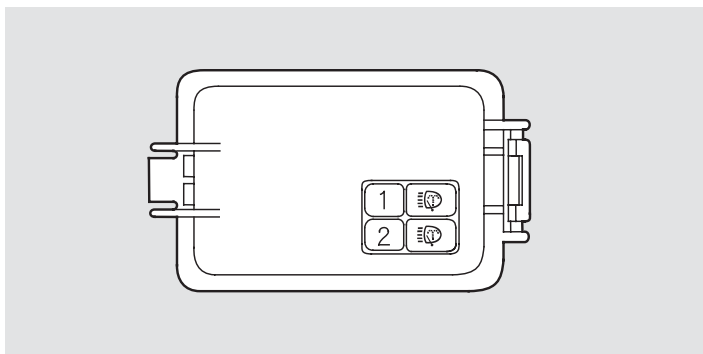


Fuse Locations (Petrol models)

PRIMARY UNDER-BONNET FUSE BOX



SECONDARY UNDER-BONNET FUSE BOX



The fuses contained in the under-bonnet fuse box vary slightly depending on models. The locations of fuses are shown with symbols on the fuse label. Refer to the table below for the fuses on your vehicle.

Primary

No.	Circuits Protected
1	Main Fuse Battery EPS*
2	Option Main Ignition Switch Main
3	VSA Motor/ABS Motor VSA FSR/ABS FSR
4	Headlight Main Power Window Main
5	Right-Side e-pretensioner*
6	Sub Fan Motor
7	Main Fan Motor
8	Rear Demister
9	Blower
10	Hazard
11	LAF

No.	Circuits Protected
12	Stop, Horn
13	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*
14	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*
15	IGPS OIL LEVEL
16	Left-Side e-pretensioner*
17	High Power Sound*
18	IG Coil
19	FI Main
20	MG Clutch
21	DBW
22	Interior Light
23	Back Up

* : For some types

Secondary

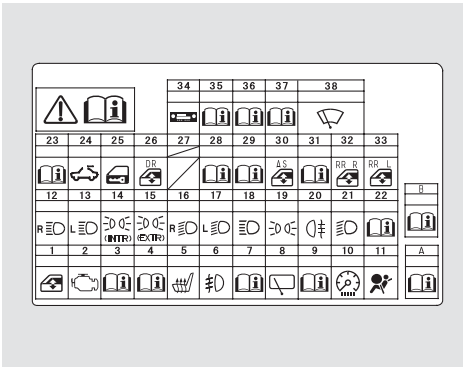
No.	Circuits Protected
1	Not used
2	Headlight Washer*





Fuse Locations (Petrol models)

INTERIOR FUSE BOX



The fuses contained in the interior fuse box vary slightly depending on models. The locations of fuses are shown with symbols on the fuse label. Refer to the table below for the fuses on your vehicle.

No.	Circuits Protected
1	Power Window
2	Fuel Pump
3	IG1 ACG
4	ABS/VSA Unit
5	Heated Seats*
6	Front Fog Lights*
7	Daytime Running Lights*
8	Rear Wiper
9	ODS (Occupant Detection System)
10	Meter
11	SRS
12	Right Headlight High Beam
13	Left Headlight High Beam
14	Small Lights (Interior)
15	Small Lights (Exterior)
16	Right Headlight Low Beam
17	Left Headlight Low Beam
18	Headlight High Beam Main
19	Small Lights Main
20	Rear Fog Light
21	Headlight Low Beam Main

No.	Circuits Protected
22	ACC*/EPT*/TSA™/AFS*
23	STS
24	Sunshades*/Sunroof*
25	Door Lock
26	Driver's Power Window
27	Not Used
28	Rear Power Accessory Socket
29	Front Accessory Power Socket
30	Front Passenger's Power Window
31	Accessory Power Socket (in the Console Compartment)
32	Rear Right Power Window
33	Rear Left Power Window
34	Accessory, Radio
35	ACC Key Lock
36	IG2 HAC
37	Daytime Light*
38	Front Wiper
A	—
B	—

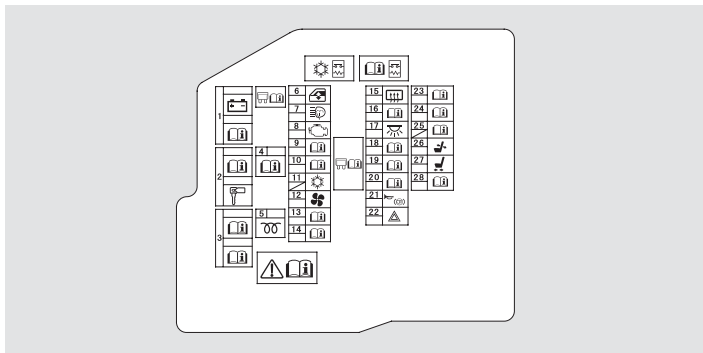
* : For some types



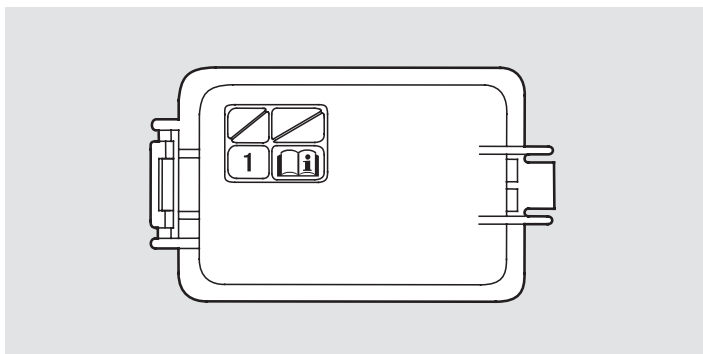


Fuse Locations (Diesel models)

PRIMARY UNDER-BONNET FUSE BOX



SECONDARY UNDER-BONNET FUSE BOX



The fuses contained in the under-bonnet fuse box vary slightly depending on models. The locations of fuses are shown with symbols on the fuse label. Refer to the table below for the fuses on your vehicle.

No.	Circuits Protected
1	Main Fuse Battery ABS/VSA Motor
2	Headlight Main Ignition Switch Main
3	Right Side e-pretensioner* Left Side e-pretensioner*
4	Option Main
5	Glow
6	Power Window Main
7	Headlight washer*
8	IGP2
9	Option
10	Back up, FI-ECU
11	MG Clutch
12	Blower
13	LAF

No.	Circuits Protected
14	High Power Sound*
15	Rear Demister
16	Back Up
17	Interior Light
18	Fuel Heater
19	Main Fan Motor
20	Fuel Heater Monitor
21	Stop, Horn
22	Hazard
23	Sub Fan Motor
24	IGP
25	Oil Level
26	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*
27	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*
28	ABS FSR/VSA FSR

Secondary

No.	Circuits Protected
1	TCU*
—	—

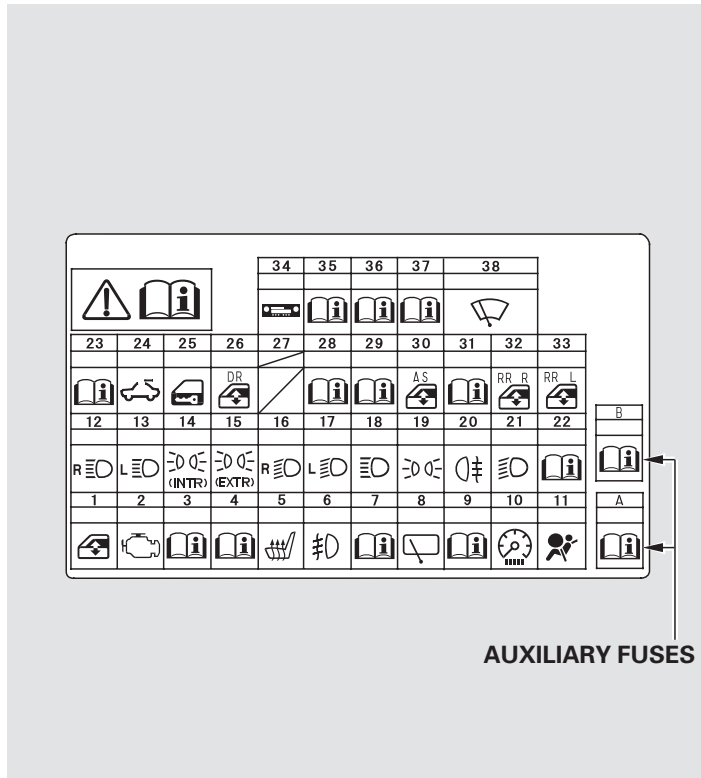
* : For some types





Fuse Locations (Diesel models)

INTERIOR FUSE BOX



The fuses contained in the interior fuse box vary slightly depending on models. The locations of fuses are shown with symbols on the fuse label. Refer to the table below for the fuses on your vehicle.

No.	Circuits Protected	No.	Circuits Protected
1	Power Window	22	ACC*/EPT*/TSA™/AFS*
2	Fuel Pump	23	STS
3	IG1 ACG	24	Sunshades*/Sunroof*
4	ABS/VSA Unit	25	Door Lock
5	Heated Seats*	26	Driver's Power Window
6	Front Fog Lights*	27	Not Used
7	Daytime Running Lights*	28	Rear Power Accessory Socket
8	Rear Wiper	29	Front Accessory Power Socket
9	ODS (Occupant Detection System)	30	Front Passenger's Power Window
10	Meter	31	Accessory Power Socket (in the Console Compartment)
11	SRS	32	Rear Right Power Window
12	Right Headlight High Beam	33	Rear Left Power Window
13	Left Headlight High Beam	34	Accessory, Radio
14	Small Lights (Interior)	35	ACC Key Lock
15	Small Lights (Exterior)	36	IG2 HAC
16	Right Headlight Low Beam	37	Daytime Light*
17	Left Headlight Low Beam	38	Front Wiper
18	Headlight High Beam Main		
19	Small Lights Main		
20	Rear Fog Light		
21	Headlight Low Beam Main		

* : For some types

560 Taking Care of the Unexpected

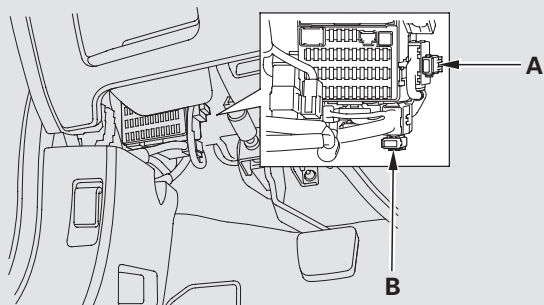




Fuse Locations (Diesel models)

Auxiliary fuse box

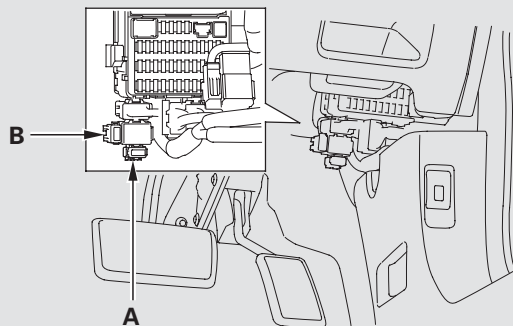
Left-hand drive type



A	FI Back up*
B	TCU*

* : For some types

Right-hand drive type





Emergency Towing

If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or organization. Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

On 2WD models

There are three popular types of professional towing equipment.

Flat-bed Equipment – The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck. **This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

Wheel-lift Equipment – The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Sling-type Equipment – The tow truck uses metal cables with hooks on the ends. These hooks go around parts of the frame or suspension and the cables lift that end of the vehicle off the ground. Your vehicle's suspension and body can be seriously damaged. **This method of towing is unacceptable.**

If, due to damage, your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, do this:

Manual Transmission

- Shift the transmission to neutral.
- Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock.
- Release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission

- Start the engine.
- Shift to the D position and hold for 5 seconds, then to N.
- Turn off the engine.

- Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock.
- Release the parking brake.

NOTICE

Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km (50 miles), and keep the speed below 55 km/h (35 mph).





Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Do not tie down the vehicle at an angle with which the towing cables hit against the vehicle's front bumper. To avoid your vehicle from damaging, protect the front bumper with a tape.

If you decide to tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, make sure you use a properly-designed and attached tow bar. Prepare the vehicle for towing as described above, and leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock. Make sure the radio and any electrical accessories are turned off so they do not run down the battery.

NOTICE

The steering system can be damaged if the steering wheel is locked. Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position, and make sure the steering wheel turns freely before you begin towing.

On 4WD models

The only way you can safely tow your vehicle is with flat-bed equipment. The operator will load your vehicle on the back of a truck. Any other method of towing will damage the drive system. When you contact the towing agency, inform them a flat-bed is required.

NOTICE

Towing with only two tyres on the ground will damage parts of the 4WD system. It should be transported on a flat-bed truck or trailer.

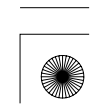
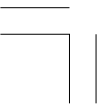




10/09/29 21:10:37 42SWAF30_569



564

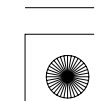
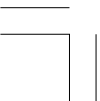




Technical Information

The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle, and the locations of the identification numbers.

Identification Numbers.....	566
Specifications	569
Catalytic Converters (Petrol models)	576
Catalytic Converters (Diesel models)	577
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) System.....	577





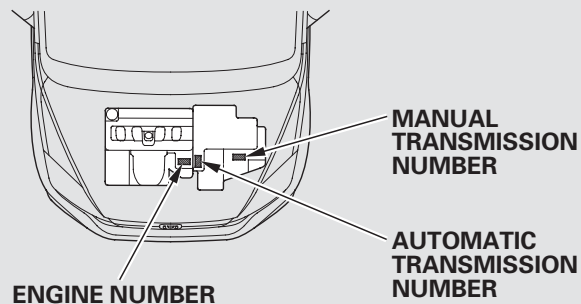
Identification Numbers

Your vehicle has several identifying numbers in various places.

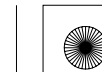
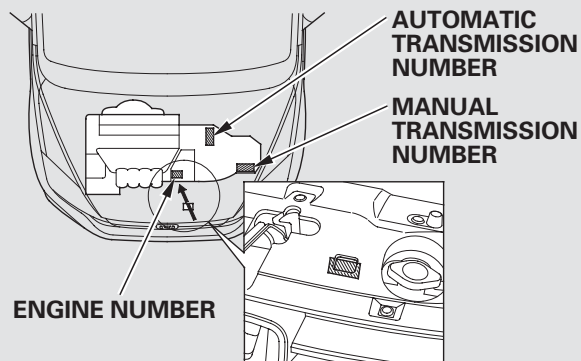
1. The chassis number is stamped on the fire wall.
2. The engine number is stamped into the engine block.
3. The transmission number is on a label on top of the transmission.

Do not mistake the transmission number for the engine number.

2.0 l engine model (Petrol)

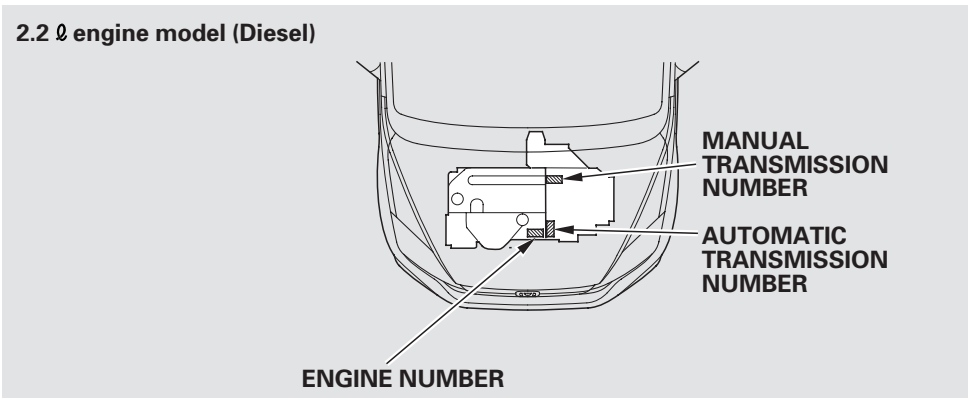


2.4 l engine model (Petrol)



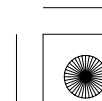
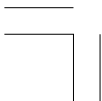


Identification Numbers



CONTINUED

Technical Information **567**





Identification Numbers

The vehicle identification number (VIN)/chassis number is moulded on the fire wall in the engine compartment. To access this number, pull down the lid on the back of the engine compartment. Make sure to reinstall the lid before closing the bonnet.

The chassis and engine numbers also appear on the plate attached to the front doorjamb on the left side.

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)/chassis number also appears on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

CHASSIS AND ENGINE NUMBER PLATE

This plate includes the following information. Example:

- ① VIN
- ② ENGINE NUMBER
- ③ Blank or WHOLE VEHICLE TYPE APPROVAL NUMBER
- ④ TYPE
- ⑤ MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE WEIGHT
- ⑥ TOTAL RUNNING WEIGHT
- ⑦ MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE AXLE WEIGHT (FRONT)
- ⑧ MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE AXLE WEIGHT (REAR)

HONDA MOTOR CO., LTD		③
[Hatched area]		
⑤	[Hatched area]	Kg
⑥	[Hatched area]	Kg
⑦	[Hatched area]	Kg
⑧	[Hatched area]	Kg
④	TYPE/typ	
	ENGINE No./No.	②
	Du Moteur / Motor Nr.	





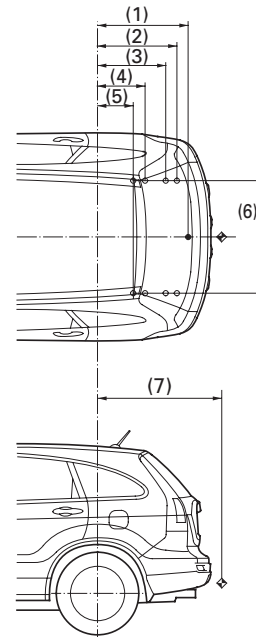
Specifications

Dimensions

Length	4,570 mm (179.9 in)
Width	1,820 mm (71.7 in)
Height	1,675 mm (65.9 in) 1,805 mm (71.1 in)*
Wheelbase	2,630 mm (103.5 in)
Track	Front 1,570 mm (61.8 in) Rear 1,585 mm (62.4 in)

* : With roof antenna

The mounting point/rear overhang of coupling device



No.	Dimensions
(1)	792 mm (31.2 in)
(2)	693 mm (27.3 in)
(3)	593 mm (23.3 in)
(4)	410 mm (16.1 in)
(5)	307 mm (12.1 in)
(6)	995 mm (39.2 in)
(7)	1,080 mm (42.5 in)

NOTE:

1. ○ marks show towbar fixing points.
2. ◆ mark shows towbar coupling point.





Specifications

Weights

Curb weight	2.0 l engine	
	M/T	1,499 – 1,607 kg (3,305 – 3,543 lbs)
	A/T	1,534 – 1,643 kg (3,382 – 3,622 lbs)
2.4 l engine	M/T	1,567 – 1,592 kg (3,455 – 3,510 lbs)
	A/T	1,593 – 1,633 kg (3,512 – 3,600 lbs)
Diesel engine	M/T	1,651 – 1,712 kg (3,640 – 3,774 lbs)
	A/T	1,712 – 1,773 kg (3,774 – 3,909 lbs)
Max. permissible weight* ¹	2.0 l/2.4 l engine	
	M/T	2,050 kg (4,519 lbs)
	A/T	2,080 kg (4,586 lbs)
Diesel engine	M/T	2,160 kg (4,762 lbs)
	A/T	2,220 kg (4,894 lbs)

Weights

Max. permissible axle weight (Front)* ¹	2.0 l/2.4 l engine	
	M/T	1,020 kg (2,249 lbs)
	A/T	1,050 kg (2,315 lbs)
Diesel engine	M/T	1,140 kg (2,513 lbs)
	A/T	1,200 kg (2,646 lbs)
Max. permissible axle weight (Rear)* ¹	2.0 l/2.4 l engine	
	M/T	1,050 kg (2,315 lbs)* ²
	A/T	1,040 kg (2,293 lbs)* ³
	Diesel engine	1,040 kg (2,293 lbs)

* 1 : See the plate attached to the driver's doorjamb or ask dealer for information.

* 2 : 2.0 l engine model

* 3 : 2.4 l engine model





Specifications

Weights

Max. towing weight* ¹ ,* ²	
Trailer with brakes	
2.0 l engine	
M/T	1,600 kg (3,527 lbs)
A/T	1,500 kg (3,307 lbs)
2.4 l engine	
M/T	1,700 kg (3,748 lbs)
A/T	1,500 kg (3,307 lbs)
Diesel engine	
M/T	2,000 kg (4,409 lbs)
A/T	1,500 kg (3,307 lbs)
Trailer without brakes	
600 kg (1,323 lbs)	
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	
100 kg (220 lbs)	

*** 1 : EU models**

The following is for Germany only.

The maximum trailer weight is valid for 12% slope. For an increasing of the trailer weight you have to look in your vehicle paper or ask your next dealer.

*** 2 : The maximum towing weight should be reduced if you tow a trailer over 1,000 meters of elevation. For more information, see page 411.**

Engine (Petrol models)

Type	2.0 l engine	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC i-VTEC in line, 4-cylinder gasoline engine
	2.4 l engine	Water cooled 4-stroke DOHC i-VTEC in line, 4-cylinder gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	2.0 l engine	81 x 96.9 mm (3.19 x 3.81 in)
	2.4 l engine	87 x 99 mm (3.43 x 3.90 in)
Displacement	2.0 l engine	1,997 cm ³ (122 cu-in)
	2.4 l engine	2,354 cm ³ (144 cu-in)
Compression ratio	2.0 l engine	10.5 : 1
	2.4 l engine	9.7 : 1
Spark plugs	2.0 l engine	NGK: IZFR6K-11S DENSO: SKJ20DR-M11S
	2.4 l engine	NGK: IZFR6K11 DENSO: SKJ20DR-M11

Engine (Diesel models)

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke DOHC intercooler turbo diesel engine
Bore x Stroke	85 x 96.9 mm (3.35 x 3.82 in)
Displacement	2,199 cm ³ (134 cu-in)
Compression ratio	16.3 : 1





Specifications

Capacities

Fuel tank	Approx. 58 ℓ (15.3 US gal , 12.8 Imp gal)
Engine coolant	
2.0 ℓ engine models	
Automatic transmission	
Change* ¹	6.1 ℓ (1.61 US gal , 1.34 Imp gal)
Total	7.4 ℓ (1.96 US gal , 1.63 Imp gal)
Manual transmission	
Change* ¹	6.2 ℓ (1.64 US gal , 1.36 Imp gal)
Total	7.5 ℓ (1.98 US gal , 1.65 Imp gal)
2.4 ℓ engine models	
Automatic transmission	
Change* ¹	5.0 ℓ (1.32 US gal , 1.10 Imp gal)
Total	6.8 ℓ (1.80 US gal , 1.50 Imp gal)
Manual transmission	
Change* ¹	5.1 ℓ (1.35 US gal , 1.12 Imp gal)
Total	6.8 ℓ (1.80 US gal , 1.50 Imp gal)

Engine coolant	
Diesel models	
Automatic transmission	
Change* ²	6.9 ℓ (1.82 US gal , 1.52 Imp gal)
Total	8.1 ℓ (2.14 US gal , 1.78 Imp gal)
Manual transmission	
Change* ²	6.8 ℓ (1.80 US gal , 1.50 Imp gal)
Total	8.0 ℓ (2.11 US gal , 1.76 Imp gal)

* 1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine.

Reserve tank capacity:

0.6 ℓ (0.16 US gal , 0.13 Imp gal)

* 2 : Including the coolant in the expansion tank and that remaining in the engine. Expansion tank capacity:

0.8 ℓ (0.21 US gal , 0.18 Imp gal)





Specifications

Capacities

Engine oil	
2.0 l engine models	
Change* ¹	
Including filter	3.7 l (3.9 US qt , 3.3 Imp qt)
Without filter	3.5 l (3.7 US qt , 3.1 Imp qt)
Total	4.5 l (4.8 US qt , 4.0 Imp qt)
2.4 l engine models	
Change* ¹	
Including filter	4.2 l (4.4 US qt , 3.7 Imp qt)
Without filter	4.0 l (4.2 US qt , 3.5 Imp qt)
Total	5.3 l (5.6 US qt , 4.7 Imp qt)
Diesel models	
Change* ¹	
Including filter	5.5 l (5.8 US qt , 4.8 Imp qt)
Without filter	5.2 l (5.5 US qt , 4.6 Imp qt)
Total	6.5 l (6.9 US qt , 5.7 Imp qt)

* 1 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine

Manual transmission fluid	2.2 l (2.3 US qt , 1.9 Imp qt) ^{*2}
Change	2.5 l (2.6 US qt , 2.2 Imp qt) ^{*3}
Total	2.5 l (2.6 US qt , 2.2 Imp qt) ^{*2} 3.1 l (3.3 US qt , 2.7 Imp qt) ^{*3}
Automatic transmission fluid	
Change	2.5 l (2.6 US qt , 2.2 Imp qt) ^{*2} 2.6 l (2.7 US qt , 2.3 Imp qt) ^{*3}
Total	7.0 l (7.4 US qt , 6.2 Imp qt) ^{*2} 7.9 l (8.3 US qt , 7.0 Imp qt) ^{*3}
Transfer assembly fluid	
Change	0.41 l (0.43 US qt , 0.36 Imp qt) ^{*4}
Total	0.45 l (0.48 US qt , 0.40 Imp qt) ^{*4}
Rear differential fluid	
Change	1.2 l (1.3 US qt , 1.1 Imp qt)
Total	1.4 l (1.5 US qt , 1.2 Imp qt)
Windscreen washer reservoir	4.8 l (5.1 US qt , 4.2 Imp qt)

* 2 : 2.0 l and 2.4 l engine models

* 3 : Diesel models

* 4 : Diesel models with automatic transmission





Specifications

Tyres

Size/Pressure	See tyre information label on driver's doorjamb or ask dealer for information.
---------------	--

Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.0 mm (0.00 in)
	Rear	in 2.0 mm (0.08 in)
Camber	Front	0°
	Rear	-1°
Caster	Front	2°44'

Suspension

Type	Front	Strut
	Rear	Double wishbone

Steering

Type	Rack and pinion, with electrical power assistance* ¹
	Rack and pinion, with hydraulic power assistance* ²

* 1 : 2.0 l engine model

* 2 : 2.4 l and Diesel models

Clutch

Type	Dry, single plate, diaphragm spring
------	-------------------------------------

Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Mechanical





Specifications

Battery

Capacity	12 V — 45 AH/20 HR * ¹ 12 V — 74 AH/20 HR * ²
----------	--

* 1 : 2.0 ℓ and 2.4 ℓ engine models

* 2 : Diesel models

Fuses (Petrol models)

Interior*	See page 558 or the fuse label attached to the lower dashboard.
Under-bonnet (Primary and secondary)	See page 557 or the fuse box cover.

Fuses(Diesel models)

Interior*	See pages 560 and 561 or the fuse label attached to the lower dashboard.
Under-bonnet (Primary and secondary)	See page 559 or the fuse box cover.

* : Including auxiliary fuses

Jack

Type	Honda Type-E
------	--------------

Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted emission sound pressure level	80 ± 5 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	91.5 ± 5 dB (A)

Lights

Headlights	High beam	12 V — 60 W (HB3)
	Low beam	12 V — 55 W (H1) 12 V — 35 W (D2S)* ¹
Front turn signal lights		12 V — 21 W (AMBER)
Front position lights		12 V — 5 W
Side turn signal lights		See note below.
Rear turn signal lights		12 V — 21 W (AMBER)
Stop/taillights		12 V — 21/5 W
Back-up lights		12 V — 21 W
Tail-lights		12 V — 5 W
Rear fog light		12 V — 21 W
Front fog lights* ²		12 V — 55 W (H11)
Licence plate lights		12 V — 5 W
High-mount brake light		12 V — 21 W
Ceiling light		12 V — 8 W
Spotlights		12 V — 8 W
Glove box light* ²		12 V — 3.4 W
Vanity mirror lights* ²		12 V — 2 W
Luggage area light		12 V — 8 W

* 1 : On vehicles with high voltage discharge type low beam headlights, replacement of a low beam headlight bulb should be performed by your dealer.

* 2 : For some types

NOTE:

Replacement of the side turn signal light in the outside mirrors should be done by your dealer.

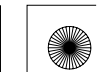


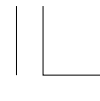


Catalytic Converters (Petrol models)

The three way catalytic converter must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.

Always use unleaded petrol. Even a small amount of leaded petrol can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converter ineffective.





Catalytic Converters (Diesel models)

Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) System

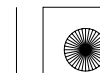
Your vehicle is equipped with the diesel particulate filter (DPF) system to remove the particulate matter (PM) from the exhaust gas. The DPF is installed in the catalytic converter.

The PM will be burnt out and removed from the DPF at a periodically high temperature of the catalytic converter while driving. While the PM is burnt, you may notice some changes on the instrument panel and the exhaust gas. You may notice some white smoke in the exhaust gas. The average fuel consumption on the multi-information display will be increased temporarily.

The DPF system requires no regular maintenance. If you drive for long periods at slow speeds, particulate matter (PM) will be accumulated and the regeneration of DPF will be required. The condition of the accumulated PM will vary with the type of diesel fuel. Always use the recommended diesel fuel in this owner's manual (see page 353).

CONTINUED

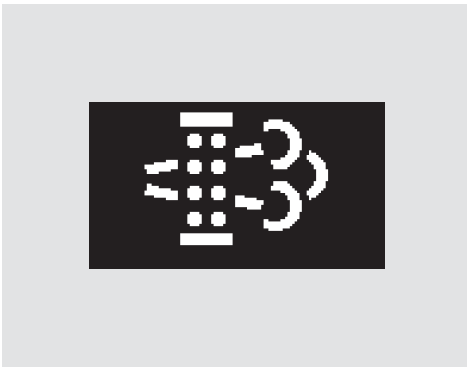
Technical Information 577





Catalytic Converters (Diesel models)

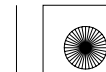
DPF (Regeneration Required)



If you see this symbol or this symbol with a “DPF REGENERATION REQUIRED” message on the multi-information display while the engine is running, it means the diesel particulate filter (DPF) should be regenerated to remove the accumulated particulate matter (PM).

To regenerate the DPF, when traffic allows, maintain a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h (37 mph) and continue to drive until the symbol/message goes out (it may take about 15 minutes, depending on driving conditions). This will increase the exhaust temperature and help to burn and remove the PM from the DPF.

If you ignore this symbol/message and continue driving, the system warning switches to the symbol/message of DPF (check system). If this happens, take your vehicle to a Honda dealer as soon as possible to have the DPF system checked.





Catalytic Converters (Diesel models)

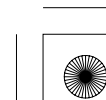
DPF (Check System)



If you see this symbol or this symbol with a “CHECK SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display while the engine is running, it means the diesel particulate filter (DPF) is clogged with accumulated particulate matter (PM) and it should be checked, then repaired or replaced. Take your vehicle to a Honda dealer as soon as possible. While in this condition, the engine power gets reduced.

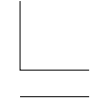
If you ignore this symbol/message and continue driving, the DPF and your vehicle’s emission control systems will be seriously damaged.

The catalytic converter and DPF system must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.

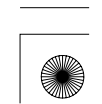
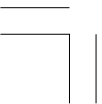




10/09/29 21:13:29 42SWAF30_585



580





Index

A

- AAC 281
- Accessories and Modifications 363
- ACCESSORY (Ignition Key Position) 163
- Accessory Power Sockets..... 216
- Active Head Restraints 187
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)... 301
 - Indicator 94
- Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)..... 153
 - Indicator 94
 - Off Switch..... 154
- Adding Engine Coolant..... 446, 448
- Additives, Engine Oil 442, 444
- Airbag (SRS) 15, 35
- Air Bleeding..... 501
- Air Cleaner Element..... 457, 460
- Air Conditioning System..... 226, 233
 - Maintenance..... 479
 - Usage 226, 233
- Air Outlets (Vents)..... 226, 233
- Air Pressure, Tyres 486
- Aluminium Wheels, Cleaning 505
- Antifreeze 446, 448

- Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)
 - Indicator..... 89, 389
 - Operation 389
- Anti-theft Steering Column Lock..... 163
- Appearance Care 503
- Ashtray..... 220
- Audio System 243
- Auto Door Locking/Unlocking... 168
- Automatic Intermittent Wipers... 146
- Automatic Lighting Feature
 - Operation..... 149
 - System Warning 149
- Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners... 31
- Automatic Transmission..... 381
 - Capacity, Fluid 573
 - Checking Fluid Level 451
 - D3 Mode 383
 - Shifting..... 381
 - Position Indicators..... 381
 - Shift Lock Release..... 385
- Auxiliary Input Jack..... 290

B

- Battery
 - Charging System
 - Indicator..... 87, 547
 - Jump Starting 536
 - Maintenance..... 495
 - Replacing 497
 - Specifications 575
- Before Driving 351
- Belts, Seat 13, 26
- Beverage Holders..... 215
- Bonnet, Opening the 356
- Booster Seats 72
- Brakes
 - Anti-lock System (ABS) 389
 - Break-in, New Linings 352
 - Bulb Replacement 471, 472
 - Fluid 454
 - Parking..... 212
 - System Indicator 88, 551
 - Wear Indicators 388
- Braking System..... 388
- Break-in, New Vehicle 352

CONTINUED





Index

Brightness Control,
 Instruments 155
 Brights, Headlights 148
 Bulb Replacement
 Back-up Lights 471
 Brake Lights..... 471
 Front Fog Lights..... 475
 Front Position Lights 470
 Headlights 465
 High-mount Brake Light 472
 Interior Lights..... 477
 Licence Plate Lights..... 474
 Rear Fog Light..... 471
 Rear Lights..... 471
 Specifications 575
 Turn Signal Lights..... 469, 471
 Bulbs, Halogen..... 465, 475

C

Capacities Chart 572, 573
 Carbon Monoxide Hazard 76
 Carrying Luggage..... 365
 Catalytic Converter 576, 577
 CAUTION, Explanation of iii
 CD Care 269

CD Changer 256, 266
 CD Changer Error
 Messages..... 267, 268
 CD Player..... 256
 CD Player Error Messages 267
 Ceiling Light..... 221
 Chains, Tyres 493
 Changing a Flat Tyre 513
 Changing Oil
 When to..... 427
 Charging System Indicator 87, 547
 Chassis Number 566, 568
 Checklist, Before Driving 373
 Child Restraint Systems 53, 56
 Lower Anchorages 58
 Tether Anchor Points 68
 Child Safety 42
 Booster Seats 72
 Child Restraint Systems 53, 56
 Important Safety
 Reminders 42, 47
 Infants 49
 Larger Children 71
 Lower Anchorages 58
 Risks with Airbags..... 43, 46
 Small Children..... 51

Tethers..... 68
 Where Should a Child Sit? 43
 Childproof Door Locks 173
 Cigarette Lighter 219
 Cleaner Element, Air..... 457, 460
 Cleaning
 Aluminium Wheels 505
 Exterior 504
 Interior 507
 Seat Belts..... 509
 Vinyl 508
 Windows 508
 Climate Control System..... 233
 Clock 293
 Clutch Fluid..... 454, 455
 Coat Hook..... 218
 Cold Weather, Starting in 374, 375
 Collision Mitigation Braking
 System (CMBS) 391
 Indicator 95
 Off Switch..... 394
 Radar 396
 Compact Spare Tyre..... 512
 Console Compartment 217
 Controls, Instruments and..... 79
 Conversation Mirror 218





Index

Coolant
 Adding..... 446, 448
 Checking..... 360
 Proper Solution 446, 448
 Temperature Gauge..... 100
 Corrosion Protection..... 510
 Courtesy Light 223
 Cruise Control Indicator 93
 Cruise Control Operation 298
 Cup Holders..... 215
 Customized Settings..... 112

D

DANGER, Explanation of iii
 Dashboard 2, 80
 Daytime Running Lights..... 149
 Dead Battery 536
 Default Settings 112, 139
 Deflation Warning System 404
 Defrosting the Windows..... 232, 239
 Demister, Rear Window 156
 Detachable Anchor..... 194
 Diesel Fuel..... 353
 Ultra Low Sulfur 353

Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF).... 577
 Symbol 578, 579
 Dimensions..... 569
 Dimming the Headlights 149
 Dipstick
 Automatic Transmission..... 451
 Engine Oil..... 358
 Directional Signals..... 148
 Disc Brake Wear Indicators..... 388
 Disc Player..... 256
 Doors
 Auto Door Locking/
 Unlocking 168
 Locking and Unlocking 164
 Power Door Locks..... 164
 Downshifting
 Manual Transmission 377
 Driver and Passenger Safety..... 9
 Driving 371
 Economy 362
 In Bad Weather..... 409
 Off-Road Guidelines..... 421
 Dual Button 238
 Dual Deck Luggage Shelf 200
 Dust and Pollen Filter 480
 D3 Mode 383

E

Economy, Fuel 362
 Electric Power Steering (EPS)
 Indicator 91
 Emergencies..... 511
 Battery, Jump Starting 536
 Brake System Indicator 551
 Changing a Flat Tyre 513
 Charging System Indicator 547
 Checking the Fuses..... 554
 Hazard Warning Flashers 156
 Honda TRK 519
 Jump Starting 536
 Low Oil Pressure Indicator 544
 Malfunction Indicator
 Lamp 548, 549
 Oil Level Indicator 545
 Overheated Engine 540, 542
 PGM-FI Warning 550
 Towing 562
 Tyre Sealant Kit..... 519
 Emergency Brake..... 212
 Emergency Flashers 156

CONTINUED





Index

Emergency Towing 562

Engine

- Coolant Temperature Gauge ... 100
- If It Won't Start 534
- Malfunction Indicator
 - Lamp 86, 548, 549
- Oil Level Indicator
 - (Multi-Information) 545
- Oil Pressure Indicator 87, 544
- Oil, What Kind to Use 442, 444
- Overheating 540, 542
- Specifications 571
- Starting (Diesel models) 374
- Starting (Petrol models) 375

Engine Coolant 360, 446, 448

Engine Number 566, 567

e-Pretensioners 32

Event Data Recorders ii

Exhaust Fumes 76

Expansion Tank 360, 448

Exterior, Cleaning the 504

F

Fabric, Cleaning 508

Fan, Interior 229, 238

Features 225

Filling the Fuel Tank 354

Filters

- Air Cleaner 457, 460
- Dust and Pollen 480
- Fuel 462

Flashers, Hazard Warning 156

Flat Tyre, Changing a 513

Floor Mats 507

Fluids

- Automatic Transmission 451
- Brake 454
- Clutch 454
- Manual Transmission 453
- Power Steering 456
- Rear Differential 454
- Transfer 454
- Windscreen Washers 450

Folding Door Mirrors 211

Folding Rear Seat Down 190

Folding Rear Seat Forward 192

Four-way Flashers 156

Front Airbags 15, 35

Front Fog Lights 151

Front Seat 181

- Adjusting 181, 182

Airbags 15, 35

Heaters 196

Fuel 352

- Cutoff System 361
- Diesel 353
- Fill Door and Cap 354
- Filter 462
- Gauge 100
- Low Fuel Indicator 97
- Octane Requirement 352
- Tank, Refueling 354

Fuses, Checking the 554

G

Gauges

- Engine Coolant Temperature .. 100
- Fuel 100
- Speedometer 100
- Tachometer 100

Gearshift Lever Positions

- Automatic Transmission 381
- Manual Transmission 376

Glass Cleaning 508

Glove Box 214

Glow Plugs Indicator 88





Index

H

Halogen Headlight Bulbs 465, 475
 Hands-Free Telephone (HFT)
 System..... 325
 Hazard Warning Flashers..... 156
 Headlights
 Adjuster 158
 Aiming..... 465
 Daytime Running Lights 149
 High Beam Indicator 96
 Low Beams, Turning on 148
 Reminder Beeper..... 148
 Replacing Halogen
 Bulbs 465
 Turning on..... 148
 Washer 145
 Head Restraints 185
 Active 187
 Heated Mirrors 211
 Heater, Seat..... 196
 Heating and Cooling System..... 226
 High Altitude, Starting at 374, 375
 High-Low Beam Switch 148
 High-mount Brake Light..... 472
 Honda TRK 519

Horn 3, 6, 142, 143
 Hot Gas Heater 242
 Hydraulic Clutch..... 454

I

Identification Number,
 Vehicle 566, 568
 Ignition
 Keys..... 160
 Switch..... 163
 Immobilizer System..... 162
 Important Safety Precautions 10
 Indicators 86
 ABS (Anti-lock Brake) 89
 ACC 94
 AFS..... 94
 Brake (Parking and Brake
 System) 88, 551
 Charging System 87, 547
 CMBS..... 95
 Cruise Control..... 93
 Deflation Warning System
 Indicator..... 90
 EPS 91
 Front Fog Light Indicator..... 92

Glow Plugs..... 88
 High Beam..... 96
 Key (Immobilizer System) 91
 Light Control..... 149
 Lights On 96
 Low Fuel..... 97
 Low Oil Pressure 87, 544
 Malfunction Indicator
 Lamp 86, 548, 549
 Oil Level..... 545
 PGM-FI 550
 Rear Fog Light Indicator 92
 Seat Belt..... 86
 Security System Indicator 97
 Shift Up/Shift Down
 Indicators..... 98
 SRS 89
 System Message 89
 Trailer Stability Assist..... 419
 Turn Signal and Hazard
 Warning 96
 VSA..... 92, 402
 VSA Activation..... 93, 402
 Water in Fuel Filter 462

CONTINUED





Index

- Indicators, Instrument Panel.... 82, 86
- Infant Restraint 49
- Infant Seats..... 49
 - Lower Anchorages 58
 - Tether Anchor Points 68
- Inflation, Proper Tyre 486
- Inside Mirror 209
- Inspection, Tyre 488
- Instrument Panel 82-85
- Instrument Panel Brightness 155
- Interior Cleaning..... 507
- Interior Lights 221
- Introduction i
- iPod..... 272

J

- Jacking up the Vehicle 515
- Jack, Tyre 515
- Jump Starting 536

K

- Keys..... 160

L

- Lane Change, Signaling 148
- Language Selection 138
- Lap/Shoulder Belts 21, 29
- Lights
 - Bulb Replacement 463
 - Indicator..... 82, 86
 - Position 148
 - Turn Signal 148
- Load Limits..... 366
- LOCK (Ignition Key Position) 163
- Lockable Retractor 63
- Locks
 - Anti-theft Steering Column 163
 - Fuel Fill Door 354
 - Glove Box 214
 - Power Door 164
 - Tailgate 179
- Low Coolant Level..... 360
- Low Fuel Indicator 97
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator 87, 544
- Lower Anchorages 58
- Lower Gear, Downshifting to a... 376
- Lubricant Specifications
 - Chart 572

- Luggage Area Light 222
- Luggage Hooks..... 368
- Luggage, How to Carry..... 365
- Luggage Shelf 200
- Luggage, Storing 365

M

- Maintenance..... 425
 - Owner's Maintenance
 - Checks 428
 - Safety..... 426
 - Schedule 427
- Malfunction Indicator
 - Lamp 86, 548, 549
- Manual Transmission..... 376
- Manual Transmission Fluid 453
- Maximum Allowable Shift
 - Speeds 378
- Maximum Permissible Weight 570
- Meters, Gauges..... 82, 99
- Mirrors, Adjusting 209
- Modifying Your Vehicle..... 364
- MP3 258
- Multi-Information Display 101





Index

N

- Neutral (N) Position..... 383
- New Vehicle Break-in 352
- NOTICE, Explanation of..... i
- Numbers,
 - Identification 566, 567, 568

O

- Octane Requirement,
 - Petrol..... 352
- Odometer..... 105
- Odometer, Trip 105
- Off-Road Guidelines 421
- Oil
 - Change, When to 427
 - Checking Engine 357
 - Level Indicator 545
 - Pressure Indicator 87, 544
 - Selecting Proper Viscosity
 - Chart 443, 445
- Oil Level Indicator
 - (Multi-Information) 545
- ON (Ignition Key Position) 163
- One-push Turn Signal 148

- Outside Mirrors 210
- Outside Temperature
 - Indicator..... 106
- Overheating, Engine 540, 542
- Owner’s Maintenance Checks 428

P

- Paint Touch-up..... 506
- Panel Brightness Control 155
- Parking..... 387
- Parking Brake 212
- Parking Brake and Brake
 - System Indicator 88, 551
- Parking Over Things That
 - Burn..... 387
- Parking Sensor System..... 319
- Indicators..... 319
- Park (P) Position 382
- Petrol..... 352
- Filling the Fuel Tank..... 354
- Filter 462
- Fuel Economy 362
- Gauge 100
- Low Fuel Indicator 97
- Octane Requirement..... 352

- Refueling..... 354
- PGM-FI Warning 550
- Polishing and Waxing 504
- Pollen Filter 480
- Position Lights 148
- Power Door Locks..... 164
- Power Seat Adjustments..... 181
- Power Windows 203
- Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts..... 24
- Primary Display Selection 132
- Priming the Fuel System 501
- Proper Seat Belt Usage..... 21
- Protecting Adults and Teens..... 17
 - Additional Safety Precautions.... 24
 - Advice for Pregnant Women..... 24
- Protecting Children 42
- Protecting Infants 49
- Protecting Larger Children 71
- Protecting Small Children 51
- Using Child Restraint Systems
 - with Tethers..... 68
- Using Lower Anchorages..... 58

CONTINUED





Index

R

- Radiator Overheating..... 540, 542
- Radio/Disc Sound System..... 243
- RDS..... 248
- Rear Differential Fluid..... 454
- Rear Fog Light..... 150, 151
- Rear Lights, Bulb
 - Replacement..... 471
- Rear Seat Armrest 184
- Rear Seat, Folding 190, 192
- Rearview Mirror 209
- Rearview Camera..... 324
- Rear Window Demister 156
- Rear Wiper..... 147
- Reclining the Seat Backs..... 181, 182
- Reminder Indicators..... 86
- Remote Audio Controls..... 289
- Remote Transmitter 174
- Replacement Information
 - Air Cleaner Element 457, 460
 - Battery 497
 - Dust and Pollen Filter 480
 - Fuel Filter 462
 - Fuses 554
 - Light Bulbs..... 463

- Schedule 427
- Spark Plugs..... 571
- Tyres 491
- Wiper Blades 482
- Replacing Seat Belts After a
 - Crash 33
- Reserve Tank, Engine
 - Coolant..... 360, 446, 448
- Restraint, Child 42
- Reverse Lockout..... 380
- Reverse (R) Position 382
- Roof Rack 367
- Rotation, Tyre 489

S

- Safety Belts..... 13, 26
- Safety Features 12
 - Airbags..... 15
 - Seat Belts..... 13
- Safety Labels, Location of 77
- Safety Messages iii
- Seat Belts 13, 26
 - Additional Information..... 26
 - Automatic Seat Belt
 - Tensioners..... 31

- Cleaning 509
- Detachable Anchor..... 194
- e-Pretensioners 32
- Lap/Shoulder Belt..... 21, 29
- Locking Clip 67
- Maintenance..... 33
- Reminder Indicator and
 - Beeper..... 26, 86
 - System Components..... 26
 - Use During Pregnancy..... 24
- Seat Heaters 196
- Seats, Adjusting the..... 181-183
 - Driver's Power Seat..... 181
- Security System 295
- Service Intervals 427
- Service Station Procedures 354
- Setting the Clock 293
- Side Airbags 15, 38
 - How Your Side Airbags Work.... 38
 - Risks to Children 46
- Side Curtain Airbags 15, 38
- Signaling Turns..... 148
- Snow Tyres..... 492
- Solvent-type Cleaners..... 504
- Sound System..... 243





Index

- Transmission
 - Fluid Selection 451, 453
 - Identification Number..... 566, 567
 - Shifting the Automatic..... 381
 - Shifting the Manual..... 376
- Treadwear 488
- Trip Computer 104
- Trip Meter 105
- Turn Signals 148
- Tyre Chains..... 493, 494
- Tyre, How to Change a Flat 513
- Tyres 486
 - Air Pressure 486
 - Chains 493
 - Checking Wear 488
 - Compact Spare 512
 - Inflation..... 486
 - Inspection 488
 - Maintenance..... 489
 - Replacing 491
 - Rotating..... 489
 - Snow 492
 - Specifications 492, 574
 - TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) .. 519

U	
Ultrasonic Sensor	297
Underside, Cleaning	510
Unexpected, Taking Care of the	511
Upholstery Cleaning.....	507
USB Adapter Cable	274, 282
USB Flash Memory Device.....	279

V	
Vanity Mirror	219
Vehicle Capacity Load	366
Vehicle Dimensions.....	569
Vehicle Identification Number.....	566, 567, 568
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	402
Vehicle Storage	499
Ventilation	226, 233
VIN	568
Vinyl Cleaning.....	508
Viscosity, Oil	443, 445

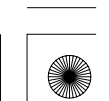
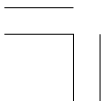
W	
WARNING, Explanation of	iii
Warning Labels, Location of	77
Washer, Headlight.....	145
Washer, Windscreen Checking the Fluid Level	450
Operation.....	144
Washing	504
Water Draining	462
Indicator.....	462
Waxing and Polishing	505
Wheels Adjusting the Steering	159
Alignment and Balance	489
Cleaning Aluminium Alloys.....	505
Compact Spare	512
Nut Wrench.....	515
Windows Auto Reverse	204
Cleaning	508
Operating the Power	203
Rear, Demister.....	156





Index

Windscreen	
Automatic Intermittent	
Wipers.....	146
Cleaning.....	145, 508
Washers.....	145
Winter Tyres.....	492
Wiper Blades	
Changing.....	482
Operation.....	144
WMA.....	258
Worn Tyres.....	488
Wrecker, Emergency Towing.....	562





“EC Declaration of Conformity” Content Outline

Declaration of Conformity

The Council Directive 2006/42/EC Machinery

Declare in sole responsibility that the equipment

Designation of Machinery: Pantograph Jack

Model: SNB, SJD, S2A, SAH

Type: Honda Type-A, Honda Type-B, Honda Type-C, Honda Type-D

Is herewith confirmed to comply with the requirements set out in the Council Directive 2006/42/EC.

For the evaluation of compliance with the directive, the following standards were applied:

EN1494:2000 + A1:2008 according to Annex I of 2006/42/EC.

Technical File Compiler: Honda Motor Europe Ltd. Aalst Office wijngaardveld1 (Noord V), 9300 Aalst, Belgium

This declaration is based on:

Third party testing performed by the Notified Body TUV Rheinland, Product Safety GmbH

Registration Number: AM50100492 0001/JAPAN (MODEL SNB, SJD, S2A).

AM50118203 0001/CHINA (MODEL SAH).

TUV Rheinland Technical Report No.: 1213870 001-002/JAPAN.

15025133 001/CHINA



Note: This declaration becomes invalid, if technical or operational modifications are introduced without the manufacturers consent.

Names and Signature:

Type; Honda Type-A, Honda Type-B, Honda Type-C

RIKENKAKI CO.,LTD.

5-6-12 Chiyoda Sakado-shi, Saitama 350-0214 JAPAN

Type; Honda Type-D

CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO MACHINERY CO.,LTD.

No.1903 Zhongwu Ave. Zhonglou Changzhou, Jiangsu CHINA

Date and Place:01.12.2009 Saitama/JAPAN



President

